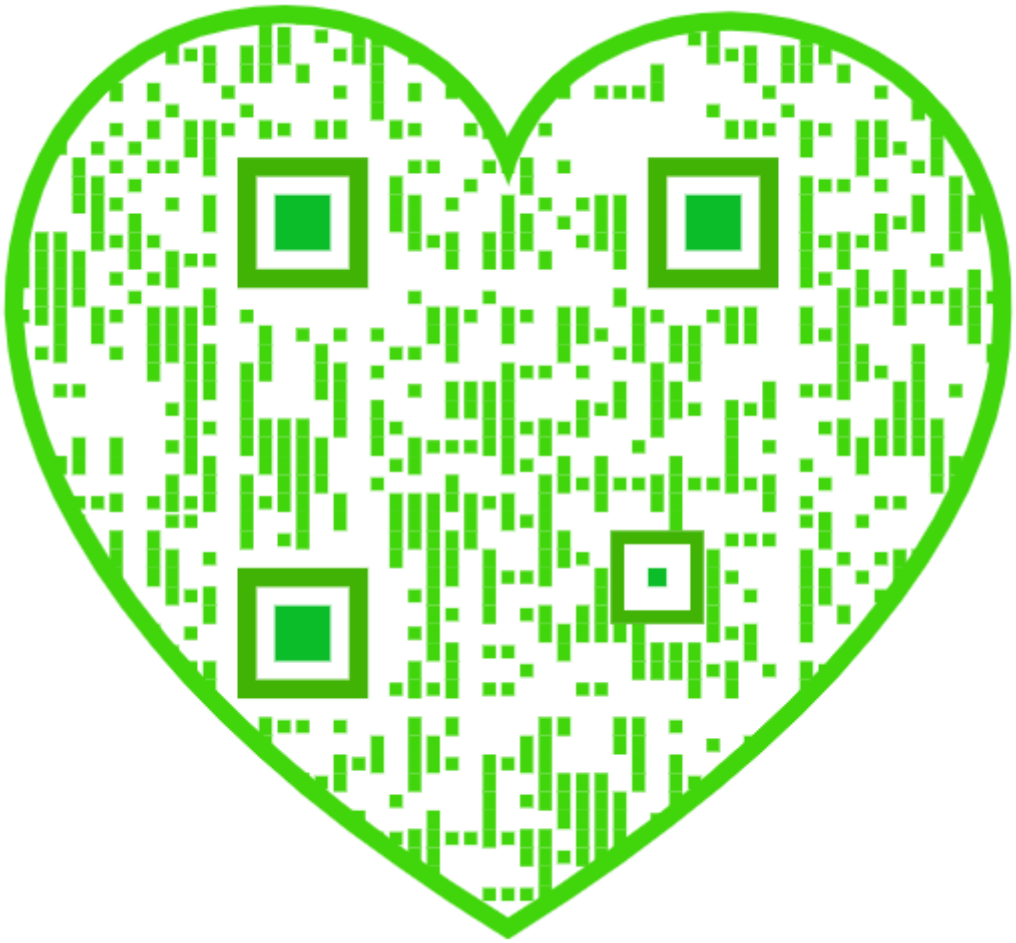
MAKERS OF AMERICAN HISTORY

★

J. A. C. CHANDLER
AND
O. P. CHITWOOD

SILVER, BURDETT & COMPANY



Class E176
Book C466
Copyright No. _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

From an old engraving.

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS AT YORKTOWN.

Makers of American History

A Beginner's Book in the History of Our Country

By

J. A. C. CHANDLER

Superintendent of Schools, Richmond, Virginia

and

O. P. CHITWOOD

Professor of History, University of West Virginia

REVISED EDITION

1916

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

NEW YORK ATLANTA BOSTON DALLAS CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1904, 1912, 1916, BY
SILVER, BURDETT & COMPANY

JUN -5 1916

©CI.A431355

Preface

This little book is an effort to sketch the lives of some of the makers of American history in such a way as to present the strong points of their characters, and at the same time to narrate the main events in our history. It is believed that the book has a place in the schools in that it may be used in at least three different ways: as a primary history, as a supplement to a more formal school history, and as a supplementary reader.

(1) *As a primary history.* It is universally conceded that the proper way to teach history to children is by means of biography, and for this purpose the book has been written. Children in the fourth, fifth and sixth grades of school should be given elementary work in United States history, and in our belief this book is adapted to these grades. In order that it may serve as a primary history, geography and review questions have been added at the end of each chapter.

(2) *As a supplement to a school history.* Many of our best text-books, in narrating the chief events of United States history, for want of space do not give much biography or many incidents in the lives of the principal participants in our history. In connection with such books this volume may easily be used, and thus the teacher can bring vividly before the pupil's mind the makers, as well as the facts, of our history.

(3) *As a supplementary reader.* The majority of the readers used in our schools are prepared as introductory books to the study of literature, and therefore contain chiefly selections from the best authors. Such readers should be supplemented in every grade by some historical matter, with a view to keeping before the children the greatness and importance of our country among the nations of the world. In the lower grades brief historical anecdotes of our great men should be given, but in the more advanced grades, beginning probably with the fourth reader, short con-

nected biographies can and ought to be read. As such a supplementary reader this book may be used.

In attempting to prepare a book to serve the above-mentioned purposes, the authors realize that the task is a difficult one, but believing that this book contains much which will interest and inspire children, they venture to hope that it will aid teachers in making easier and more pleasant the imparting of a knowledge of United States history to our boys and girls.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	— Columbus	13
II.	— Americus Vespucius	24
III.	— John and Sebastian Cabot	30
IV.	— Ponce de Leon. Balboa. De Soto	35
V.	— Walter Raleigh	44
VI.	— John Smith	51
VII.	— William Bradford and John Winthrop	60
VIII.	— Roger Williams and Thomas Hooker	67
IX.	— Henry Hudson and Peter Stuyvesant	75
X.	— Lord Baltimore	81
XI.	— William Penn	86
XII.	— Edward Moseley and James Moore	92
XIII.	— James Oglethorpe	97
XIV.	— Marquette and La Salle	103
XV.	— James Wolfe	112
XVI.	— Daniel Boone	121
XVII.	— James Otis	130
XVIII.	— Patrick Henry	135
XIX.	— George Washington	144
XIXa.	— Nathaniel Greene	157a
XX.	— George Rogers Clark	158

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXI.	— Benjamin Franklin	165
XXII.	— Thomas Jefferson	176
XXIII.	— Robert Fulton	187
XXIV.	— Stephen Decatur	192
XXV.	— Andrew Jackson	201
XXVI.	— Sam Houston	208
XXVII.	— Zachary Taylor	217
XXVIII.	— Henry Clay	225
XXIX.	— Daniel Webster	233
XXX.	— John C. Calhoun	241
XXXI.	— Morse and McCormick	247
XXXII.	— Jefferson Davis	255
XXXIII.	— Abraham Lincoln	265
XXXIV.	— Lee and Grant	274
XXXV.	— Graham and Vance	287a
XXXVI.	— Edison and Bell	288
XXXVII.	— Makers of the New Nation	297
	Appendix	308

ILLUSTRATIONS

The Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

Columbus and his Son Asking for Shelter 13
Christopher Columbus 15
Queen Isabella 17
An Indian Weapon 20
Vespucius Talking with Columbus 24
A Relic of the Aborigines . . . 26
Americus Vespucius 27
An Indian Bow and Arrow . . 29
John Cabot Discovering Land . 30
King Henry VII. 31
The Cabot Memorial Tower at Bristol, England 33
The Royal Arms of England . 34
De Soto in the Swamps of Florida 35
Ponce de Leon 37
Balboa's First Sight of the Pacific 39
De Soto Discovers the Mississippi River 42
A Spanish Sword and Helmet . 43
Sir Walter Raleigh 44
Sir Walter Raleigh Casting his Cloak before the Queen . . . 44
Queen Elizabeth 45

PAGE

The Stone Marking the Site of Old Fort Raleigh 47
On the Morning of Sir Walter Raleigh's Execution 49
Indian Pipes 50
Captain John Smith 51
Pocahontas Saving Captain Smith 51
James I. 52
The Landing of Settlers at Jamestown 54
Pocahontas 55
All that now Remains of the Settlement at Jamestown . . 57
Making a Clearing at Plymouth 60
The Landing of the Pilgrims . . 62
Governor Winthrop 64
A Log House 66
Roger Williams Going into Exile 67
The First Church at Salem . . 68
Roger Williams Befriended by the Narragansetts 70
On the March to Connecticut . 73
Governor Stuyvesant Refusing a Petition 75
The Landing of Henry Hudson . 77

PAGE

Peter Stuyvesant 78
Stuyvesant Destroys the Demand for Surrender 79
Lord Baltimore 81
Taking Possession of Maryland . 81
Queen Henrietta Maria . . . 83
The Seal of the Province of Maryland 85
William Penn 86
Penn's House in Philadelphia . 86
Admiral Penn 87
Penn Treating with the Indians . 90
Settlers Discussing the Constitution 92
The Earl of Shaftesbury . . . 93
John Locke 94

The Retreat from St. Augustine 97
James Oglethorpe 98
John Wesley Teaching the Indians 101
A Spanish Ship on the Florida Coast 102
Transporting Marquette's Canoe 103
Marquette's Grave 105
The Chevalier De La Salle . . 107
King Louis XIV. 108
A Birch-bark Canoe 111
James Wolfe 112
The Heights of Abraham and Quebec 112
William Pitt 113
The Citadel of Quebec 116
The Death of General Wolfe . . 118
Boone's Encounter with his Brother 121
Pioneers in the Forest Attacked by Indians 123

PAGE

Daniel Boone 125
The Defense of Boonesborough . 126
A Powder Horn 129
Otis Discovers the Receipted Bill 130
Faneuil Hall, "The Cradle of Liberty" 132
James Otis 133
Henry Pleading in Hanover Courthouse 135
Patrick Henry 137
Patrick Henry Making his Celebrated Speech to the Burgesses 139
Colonists Burning the Stamp Seller in Effigy 140
An Early Revolutionary Flag . 142
Taking Aim 143
Washington's Army in Winter Quarters 144
The Monument at Washington's Birthplace 145
Martha Washington. 148
St. Peter's Church 149
Washington and Lafayette at Valley Forge 151
George Washington 153
Federal Hall, New York . . . 154

Pioneers on the Ohio River . . 158
Pioneer Explorers Accosted by Indians 159
George Rogers Clark 161
A Revolutionary Musket . . . 164
Benjamin Franklin 165
Franklin Experimenting with Lightning 165
The Birthplace of Franklin . . 166

PAGE

An Early Printing Press . . . 167
Signing the Declaration of Independence 169
The Liberty Bell 171
Independence Hall 173
An Old Continental Bill . . . 175
Thomas Jefferson 176
At Work on the Declaration . . 176
Monticello, Jefferson's Home . 178
The Committee Drafting the Declaration of Independence . 179
The Statue of Jefferson . . . 181
The Grounds of the University of Virginia 185
Robert Fulton 187
The Statue of Fulton 189
The *Clermont* 190
A Modern Steamship 191
Decatur 192
Burning the *Philadelphia* . . 192
American Sailors Firing on a Hostile Vessel 194
The Battle between the *Macedonian* and the *United States* 197
A Chase on the High Seas . . 200
Andrew Jackson 201
The Capitol in 1825 201
The Hermitage 203
The Battle of New Orleans . . 205
The Charge at San Jacinto . . 208
General Houston 210
The Alamo 213
The Present Capitol of Texas . 214
The "Lone Star" Flag . . . 216
"Give Them a Little More Grape, Captain Bragg" . . 217
General Taylor 218
The Battle of Okeechobee . . 219

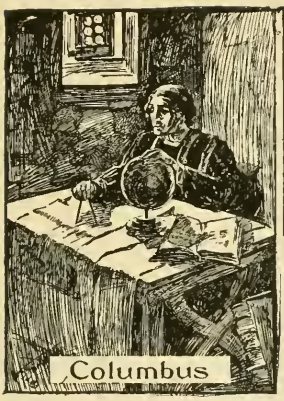
PAGE

General Taylor at the Battle of Monterey 220
Clay's Early Exercise in Oratory. 225
Henry Clay 227
Clay Making his Plea for Compromise 229
Daniel Webster at School . . 233
Daniel Webster 234
Senator Hayne 238
Webster's "Study" 240
Calhoun Studying Law . . . 241
John C. Calhoun 243
McCormick Working in the Blacksmith Shop 247
S. F. B. Morse 249
A Modern Reaping Machine . 251
Cyrus H. McCormick 252
Telegraph Wires 254
Beauvoir 255
Davis Taking the Oath of Office 255
Alexander H. Stephens . . . 256
"The White House of the Confederacy" 258
Jefferson Davis 260
The Davis Plot at Hollywood . 262
The Confederate "Stars and Bars" and the Battle Flag . . 264
Abraham Lincoln 265
The Hut where Lincoln was Born 266
Young Lincoln at Work on the River 268
The National Capitol at Washington 271
The Great Seal of the United States 273
General R. E. Lee 274
Arlington, the Home of Lee . . 274

	PAGE
The Attack on Fort Sumter	275
The Birthplace of General Lee	276
General Joseph E. Johnston	277
A Statue of "Stonewall" Jackson	278
General Lee	283
General Grant	285
Caring for the Wounded	287
Young Edison and the Rescued Child	288
Thomas A. Edison	290
An Electrical Display	293
Alexander Graham Bell	295
William McKinley	298
General Fitzhugh Lee	299
The Battle of Manila Bay	301
Admiral Dewey	302
Admiral Schley	303
Admiral Sampson	304
Lieutenant Hobson	305
General Joseph Wheeler	306
Theodore Roosevelt	307
President Taft	310
President Wilson	311

Maps.

	PAGE
The World as Known in the Time of Columbus	14
The Route of Columbus's First Voyage	19
The Lands Columbus Discovered	22
The Long March of De Soto	40
The Site of the First Colonies	46
Map of Chesapeake Bay	58
Where the Pilgrims and the Puritans Settled	65
The Explorations of La Salle and Hennepin	109
How our Country was Divided after the French War	120
The English Colonial Territory in 1750	146
The Territory of the Young Nation	155
The Old Northwest	162
The United States after the Purchase of Louisiana	183
The United States in 1846	223
The United States in 1848	223
The Oregon Cession	236
A Battle Map of the Virginia Campaigns	282
Map of Hawaiian Islands	308
Map of Philippine Islands	310



Columbus and His Son Asking for Shelter.

CHAPTER I.

Columbus.

1436(?)-1506.

FOUR hundred and fifty years ago, little was known about the world and its geography. Nearly every one thought that the earth was flat and had four corners, and that the sun moved daily through the skies across the earth's surface. The only known countries were Europe, northern Africa, and western and southern Asia. No one dreamed that there might be a great continent to the west of Europe.

Of all the peoples of Asia, only the Turks were well known to Europeans. The Turks conquered western Asia, passed into Europe, captured the great city of Constantinople, and made it the capital of their dominions. The Europeans carried on an extensive trade with India, from which country were brought silks, fine cloth and costly jewels. The Turks, on entering eastern Europe, interfered greatly with this trade by refusing to let the merchants of Europe go through their dominions. They would often seize the goods which Christian merchants were bringing in caravans across the deserts of Arabia. Venice and Genoa (Jen'ō-ah) in Italy, the chief commercial cities of Europe, had become rich and prosperous by trading with India. The loss of this trade was a matter of deep concern to their merchants, who were eagerly hoping that some new route to India might be discovered.

West of Europe lay the Atlantic ocean, which in those days was believed to contain terrible monsters and sea-dragons. No man had dared to sail far upon this deep and unknown ocean until 1492, when a bold sailor crossed it in search of India. Let me tell you of this daring seaman, Christopher Columbus.

His birthplace was the beautiful city of Genoa. His father was a wool comber,—a man who prepared wool so that it could be made into thread and cloth. Christopher was the oldest of four children, having two brothers and one sister. His father was a poor man, so Christopher's education was neglected. The boy, however, learned reading, writing, some arithmetic and geometry, and drawing. He also attended a university, but his father soon put him to work combing wool.

THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN THE TIME OF COLUMBUS.

Columbus was ambitious and had a great desire to be a sailor. When a boy, he would visit the docks of the city, and watch the ships as they came in from distant parts of the world. The old sailors used to tell him about the marvels of foreign lands. He was not frightened by the stories they told him of giants and monsters, but only wished to see the lands where they were found. When he was fourteen years of age, his father allowed him to join an expedition against Naples, which was at war with Genoa. In this expedition, the boy Columbus by his bravery won the respect of the old soldiers and sailors.

A few years later, not far from the coast of Portugal, there was fought a naval battle between the Venetians and the Genoese, in which Columbus commanded one of the Genoese ships. He ordered the grappling-hooks to be thrown upon a Venetian vessel and his men to engage in a hand-to-hand encounter with the enemy. In the conflict, his ship was set on fire. When he saw that it was lost, he plunged into the water, and, being a good swimmer, reached the shores of Portugal.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

While in Portugal, Columbus became greatly interested in the study of geography. He married the daughter of a Portuguese explorer, and from his wife he secured many maps and charts that her father had used in his explorations. The studies of Columbus caused him to believe that the world was round. He believed also that he could reach India by sailing west. Some to whom he made known his belief, laughed at him, but he was not to be discouraged by their ridicule. He became all the more determined to sail west into the Atlantic, if he could only get aid, for, being a poor man himself, he did not have the money to fit out ships for such a dangerous enterprise.

Columbus first applied for help to King John of Portugal, who had a passion for exploration. King John, though he loved adventure, feared that the expedition proposed by Columbus was too hazardous, so he called together the Portuguese geographers. They said that no man could sail west to India, as the world was flat. The geographers thought that Columbus was crazy; and the king refused to help him in such a scheme.

Disappointed, but full of courage, Columbus departed from Portugal. Like every true man who believes that he is right, he decided to continue in his efforts to prove that the earth is round, and that India could be reached by sailing across the Atlantic. How much we should admire Columbus for his perseverance and courage!

Columbus, on his departure from Portugal, went at once to Spain, hoping to get aid from King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella. From the queen he expected assistance, as she was always ready to help any enterprise which would bring good to her kingdom and increase the knowledge of her people. He had great difficulty, however, in getting permission to appear before the queen to tell of his plans, but at last she heard him. She called together the learned scholars of Spain to listen to the proposals of Columbus. They laughed at him and said that he was certainly a lunatic. "The earth cannot be round, as Columbus declares," said one man, "for, if it is, there will be people on the other side from us walking with their heels upward." Picture to yourself Columbus, the simple sailor, standing before these learned men. His clothes were ragged and he looked like a beggar. But he spoke with the power of a man inspired by a great cause. He grew eloquent as he stated and argued his views as to the shape of the earth, and the possibility of a voyage to India across the Atlantic. But he convinced only one man—a friar, who was a professor in one of the queen's colleges. This good man kept Queen Isabella from rejecting the plans proposed by Columbus, and finally persuaded her to help him, just as he was about to leave to seek aid in France.

A large sum of money was needed to equip ships for the voyage. How was it to be raised? The treasury of Spain was empty, but the queen came to the rescue and said, "I will sell my jewels to raise the necessary funds." A great American named Washington Irving, who wrote about three hundred and

fifty years afterwards. has said: "This was the proudest moment in the life of Isabella; it stamped her renown forever as the patroness of the discovery of the New World." But the good queen did not have to sell her jewels, for her offer to do so had the effect of making people believe that, after all, Columbus was not going upon a foolish voyage.

QUEEN ISABELLA.

As soon as Queen Isabella decided to help him, Columbus began at once to prepare for what was to be the most famous voyage in all history. When the ships were ready, few sailors were willing to go, because they believed that in the Atlantic there were great sea-monsters which would take the ships on their backs and toss them into the air, or sink them in the sea. At length two brothers, Martin and Vicente (Vē-sen'tā) Pinzon (Pēn-thōn'), who were rich citizens of Palos, joined Columbus. They were seamen of great renown and ability. The magistrates of Palos forced other seamen to join the expedition, and, all being now ready, the last farewells were said, and the three little ships, the *Pinta*, the *Santa Maria*, and the *Nina*, sailed out of the harbor of Palos on the 3d of August (1492). A deep gloom

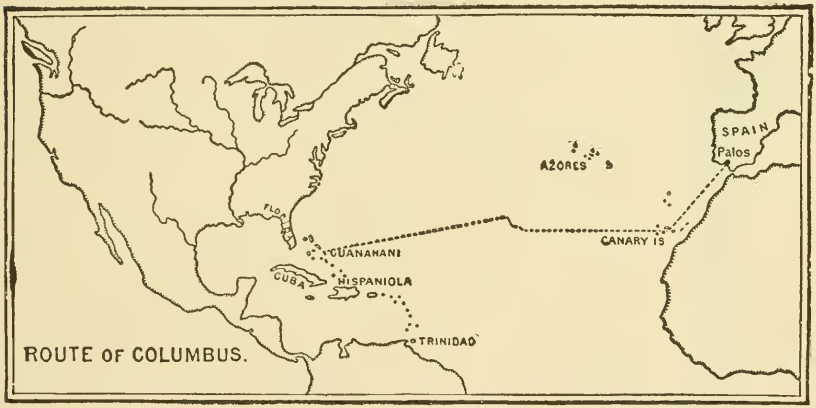
fell upon the city, for the people thought that the ships would never be seen again.

Columbus sailed in a southwestern direction. He had with him the mariner's compass and a map drawn by his friend Toscanelli. He carried also a letter of introduction from the King of Spain to the Emperor of China, which country he expected to find on the voyage. On the third day of the voyage the rudder of the *Pinta* was broken. The sailors were ready to turn back, but Columbus insisted on going on, and soon reached the Canary Islands, where repairs were made. He then sailed due west into the unexplored ocean. When the Canaries passed from their view, the hearts of the crew failed them. The rugged seamen shed tears when they thought of their country, their friends and their families behind them, and of the mystery and peril which lay before them.

After sailing for two weeks, they saw still no sign of land. Columbus had gone farther west than man had ever sailed before, so far that he was afraid to tell his men. The wind blew so constantly from the east that the sailors thought that they would never again see Spain, because there would be no winds from the west to carry them back. A month had passed since the Canaries had been left, and still no land came in view. The crew begged Columbus to return home, but he refused. They then openly defied him, believing that he was leading them to certain death on the unknown and mighty ocean. The sailors would probably have killed the brave man, had there not come signs of land.

They saw certain fish which lived close to land. A branch with red berries on it floated by one ship, and a carved stick was picked up. All gloom then disappeared, for the crew believed that land was near. This was the afternoon of October 11, 1492; evening approached, and land had not yet been reached. No one on the ships could sleep that night. Columbus stood on the highest deck of his vessel, and about one o'clock he saw a

bright light shining at a great distance. It disappeared, and then he saw it again. The *Pinta* was in the lead, and about two o'clock in the morning one of her guns was fired to announce that land had been discovered. Rodrigo de Triana (Rod're-go dā Trē'ah-nah) was the name of the sailor who first saw land in the New World. At the break of day, October 12, 1492, Columbus saw before him a beautiful green island. In spite of



THE ROUTE OF COLUMBUS'S FIRST VOYAGE.

all that the wise men of Spain had said, he had actually reached land by sailing west.

Going ashore, he fell upon his knees and gave thanks to God for having brought him safely across the great sea. He and his companions wept for joy, and there upon their knees thanked God for His goodness to them. When Columbus rose from his knees, he drew his sword and claimed the land in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella. The flag of Spain was raised, and all the crew swore to obey Columbus as the ruler for the sovereigns of Spain. They then crowded around Columbus, embracing him

and kissing his hands. Those who had resisted him on the voyage fell at his feet and begged him to forgive them.

While Columbus was taking possession of the island, the natives saw the ships, and numbers of them came to the shore. They were afraid, and stood at a great distance from Columbus and his companions. Finally they approached the Spaniards, bowing to the ground as they advanced. They took the Spaniards by the hands, and were amazed at their white skin. Never before had they seen a white man. The Spaniards were equally amazed at the naked savages, with their skins painted in many colors. The natural color of their skin was copper, and their black hair was straight, long and coarse. They had high foreheads and piercing eyes. Columbus did not know to what race they belonged; so he called them Indians, because he thought the land was India. But instead of India, he had reached an island in the Bahama group which lies to the east of Florida.

AN INDIAN WEAPON.

After a few days Columbus sailed away in search of other lands. He first explored the fertile islands of the Bahama group, and then, sailing southward, discovered Cuba and Haiti (Hay'te). In Haiti he found Indians living in towns containing as many as two thousand inhabitants. These Indians had many gold ornaments, and told Columbus that there was much gold in the mountains. With the hope of securing wealth for Spain, Columbus at once established a colony in Haiti. A fort was built, and thirty-nine Spaniards were left on the island.

Columbus now turned towards Spain, and after a stormy voyage reached Palos in safety. He was received in triumph. The whole city came out to meet him, and his name was honored in all Spain. The king and queen summoned him to Barcelona, and he at once set out on his journey to the court of

Spain. In every city through which he passed, he was received as a prince, and the people looked with awe upon the Indians whom he had brought with him.

When Columbus reached Barcelona, he was carried through the city with great pomp. As he entered the hall in which Ferdinand and Isabella awaited him, they rose from their seats, —an act of courtesy which, in those days, kings showed to princes only. They even ordered Columbus to be seated in their presence, which was permitted only to persons of royal rank. The king and queen heard the marvelous story of discovery, and then they offered prayers of thanksgiving to God. As long as Columbus stayed at Barcelona, he was treated as a prince, and was even invited to ride with the king. How changed now was his condition, for when he first entered Spain he was in rags, and was regarded as a poor dreamer who had probably lost his mind.

Columbus soon prepared for a second voyage to the newly discovered lands. He wished to look after the colony at Haiti, of which he had been made governor, and believed that he would find there great quantities of gold. In preparing for his first voyage, he found it difficult to get sailors to go; but now many persons, even the nobles of Spain, were anxious to join the expedition.

Columbus sailed the twenty-fifth of September, 1493, with seventeen ships and fifteen hundred men, all of whom had hopes of great wealth. When Haiti was reached, Columbus searched for the thirty-nine men whom he had left on the island, but not one could be found. It was learned that all of them had been killed by the Indians, for they had angered the natives by their deeds of cruelty.

Columbus placed another colony on the island and built a city, which he called Isabella, in honor of the Queen of Spain. The land was very fertile, and gold was seen glittering in some

of the streams. But in a short while the settlers became dissatisfied, because they did not find gold on every hand. Then they began to find fault with Columbus, as if he were to blame. Their murmurings caused the sovereigns of Spain to appoint another governor in his place. This new governor of Haiti was a cruel man, and by his order Columbus was sent back to Spain in chains, on the charge of having stolen money which belonged

THE LANDS COLUMBUS DISCOVERED.

(*The white spots show what Columbus discovered.*)

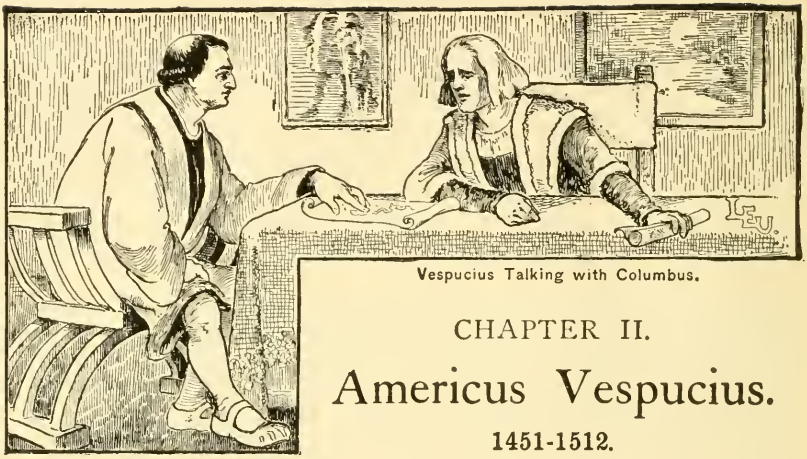
to the Spanish government. These false charges against Columbus angered the king and queen, who immediately released him and received him with much kindness.

Columbus made two other voyages across the Atlantic, and, in addition to Cuba, Haiti and many small islands, he discovered the northern part of South America and a part of Central America, which lands he thought were parts of Asia. The people of Spain were disappointed because these discoveries did not open to them the wealth of India, and therefore Columbus did not receive from the Spaniards the honor which was due him.

After his fourth voyage he returned to Spain, broken in health and feeble from age. Weighted down by disappointment, he was taken ill and died in 1506, being about seventy years of age. King Ferdinand realized, when Columbus was dead, what Spain had gained by his discoveries, and caused a monument to be erected to his memory. The honors which should have gone to Columbus, were given to his descendants, and they became nobles of Spain.

Geography Study. *Map of the World.* Find China, Japan, India, Arabia, Italy, Spain, Portugal, Turkey, Canary Islands, Bahama Islands, Cuba, Haiti, North and South America. Locate the following cities: Constantinople, Venice, Genoa, Naples, Palos and Barcelona.

Review Questions.—What were the known countries of the world 450 years ago? What did the Turks have to do with trade to India? What were the chief trading cities of Europe? Tell of Columbus as a boy. Tell of his part in the wars against Naples and Venice. Tell of his residence in Portugal. What were his views about the earth? How did he think India could be reached? Tell of his proposal to King John of Portugal. How did the King and Queen of Spain receive him? How did he manage to get aid for his enterprise? What did the queen say? Tell of the preparation for the voyage and why the sailors were afraid to go. Give an account of the voyage. In what way did Columbus take possession of the new lands? Tell of the natives who came to see Columbus. What land had been discovered? What large islands were discovered? What did Columbus do in Haiti? Tell of how he was received on his return to Spain by the people and by the king and queen. Tell of the second voyage. What ill-treatment did Columbus undergo? How many other voyages did Columbus make and what lands did he discover? Tell of his death. Write a composition telling what you think of Columbus.



Vespucius Talking with Columbus.

CHAPTER II.

Americus Vespucius.

1451-1512.

THOUGH Columbus was the first white man to touch the shore of the New World, he did not know that he had discovered two new continents. It was Americus Vespucius or Amerigo Vespucci (Ä-mer-e-go Ves-poo'chē), as the Italians called him, who first claimed that a new continent had been reached.

Americus Vespucius was born in Florence, Italy. His early education was intrusted to one of his uncles, who was a learned scholar and a priest. Since Americus was to be a merchant, he was taught geography, and was told of the different people with whom he would trade. He also learned some astronomy and some Latin, but his great ambition was to be a good geographer. In this desire he was encouraged by that same Toscanelli who had drawn a map of the world for Columbus. Toscanelli lived in Florence, and we can imagine young Americus listening to his views about the shape of the earth and the location of the different countries. When his school days were over, Americus became a merchant, an occupation which many of the Florentines followed. He still devoted much time to the study of geography, and bought many charts and maps, which were very expensive in those days.

While Columbus was on his first voyage of discovery, Americus went to Spain and became as excited as the Spaniards over the prospect of having a new route to India. When Columbus returned from his voyage, Americus met him and talked with him about the discoveries. Picture to yourself the two men as they sat together and talked about the wonderful voyage which Columbus had made. Columbus was a tall man with a dignified bearing. He had fair skin and light hair. By his side sat Americus, a thick-set, brawny man, with very black hair. Every expression of his face showed that he was a great thinker.

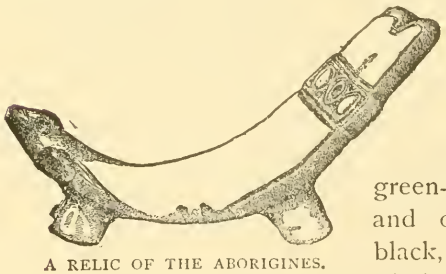
Columbus believed that Asia had been reached, but Americus thought otherwise, because he knew that the world was so large that one could not reach Asia by sailing westward without going at least three times as far to the west as Columbus had sailed. In 1497, Americus determined to become an explorer, and he entered the service of the King of Spain, who provided him with four ships in which he sailed from Cadiz. After sailing west for twenty-seven days, he touched land somewhere in the West Indies.

In some letters which he afterwards wrote to his friends in Florence, Americus told of the many wonderful things which he saw. According to his account, the Indians wore no clothes, were of middle size, and had skin of a reddish color, like that of a lion. They were good swimmers, the women even better than the men. For weapons they used only the bow and arrow, and had never heard a gun or a cannon. One day many natives came on board his ship, and in order to rid himself of them, he had a cannon fired into the air. This frightened them so badly that the men and women jumped overboard and swam to the shore. The Indians did not sleep in beds, but had nets (hammocks), which were suspended in the air. Their homes were made of logs, and were built in villages. They had no form of religion. When a person died, they buried him in a mound, in

which water and food were put for him. Some of these people never ate meat except the bodies of men and women taken in war. Others sometimes ate roasted snakes. They raised no grain, and their principal food was roots, worms, and fruits.

After a voyage of more than a year, during which time Americus visited that part of South America now known as Venezuela, he returned to Spain. There he married a lady of noble birth, and was received at court by the king and queen.

In 1499, at the request of the King of Spain, Americus went on his second voyage. He sailed southwestward, and in twenty-four days touched the northern part of South America. Here Americus saw birds of many colors. Some were crimson colored, some had variegated green-and-lemon colored plumage, and others were entirely green, black, or flesh colored. The songs of these birds so delighted him that he often lingered beneath the trees to listen to their music. The trees were beautiful in their foliage, and the blossoms as fragrant as balm. He almost imagined that they were the trees of paradise. One day as he was admiring the beautiful scenes about him, he came upon a huge and frightful serpent twenty-four feet long, and as large around its body as a man. How great must have been the interest with which his hearers listened to the wonderful tales which he told when he returned to Spain!



A RELIC OF THE ABORIGINES.

In the meanwhile some ships from Portugal, in trying to sail to Asia around the south of Africa, had been driven by the winds to the eastern coast of South America. This fact was reported at once to the King of Portugal, who sent a messenger to Spain asking Americus to command an expedition to the new-found

land. After much persuasion Americus agreed to sail under the flag of Portugal. An expedition was fitted out (1501), and Americus sailed to the southwest, finally reaching the shores of Brazil. He then passed south of the Equator along the coast of South America till he reached the Antarctic Sea, where he saw great icebergs. This voyage was the most important that Americus made, because it convinced him that the lands which he saw were not a part of Asia, but were in reality a New World. Not one of all the ancient geographers knew of these lands, so when Americus first reported in Europe that a new continent had been discovered, the people would not believe him. He told so many things, however, about this voyage that his account was soon accepted as true.

AMERICUS VESPUCIUS.

In 1503, he made a fourth voyage, for the King of Portugal. He again visited Brazil and determined its latitude and longitude. Upon this trip he became absolutely certain that a new continent had been found, and he convinced the European geographers of this fact, though Columbus claimed that the new lands were a part of Asia. Americus caused maps to be drawn showing to the southwest of Europe a new continent, which was not a part of Asia. Now, the ancient geographers had believed that there were four parts to the world:—

Europe was one; Asia, another; and Africa, another; so, when the European geographers saw the maps they said that he had found the fourth part of the world.

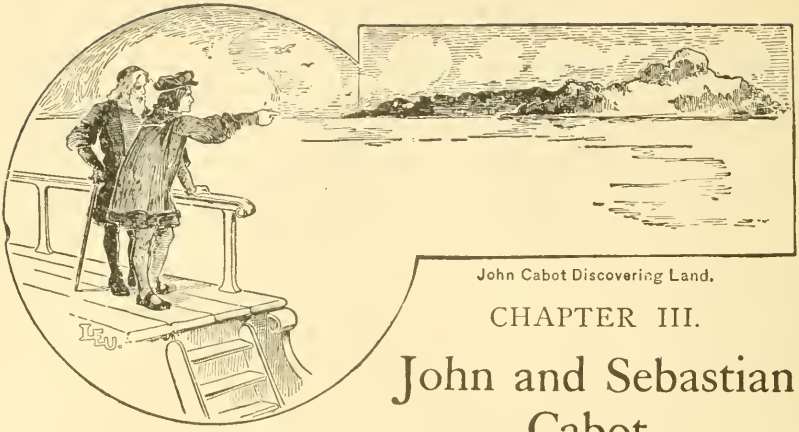
In 1507, a little geography was printed which told of this fourth part, and in this book the newly discovered lands were called *America* in honor of Americus Vespucius, because he had discovered a fourth continent. At first the name America was applied only to South America, but in a short while it was used for all the New World. Had our country been named after Columbus, we should now be living in Columbia. To Americus Vespucius properly belongs the honor of having given the name to the lands lying west of Europe, because he first proved that they were new continents. You will also be interested to know that America is the only continent named after a man, for the other continents take their names from women.

Shortly after his fourth voyage Americus left Portugal and went back to Spain, arriving just as Columbus, worn out and discouraged, returned from his last voyage. He talked to Columbus and tried to help and encourage him. In spite of the fact that Americus had left the service of Spain for that of Portugal, the Spanish king received him at court and made him the chief pilot of the kingdom. Again entering the service of Spain, Americus went on three other voyages. In 1512 he died, honored and respected as an explorer, astronomer and geographer.

Geography Study. *Map of Europe.* Locate Florence and Cadiz. *Map of North and South America.* Find the West Indies, Venezuela, Brazil, and the Antarctic Ocean.

Review Questions. Tell of the boyhood of Americus Vespucius. What astronomer did he know? How did he show his love for geography? How did Americus meet Columbus? Tell of their meeting. Compare the two men and their views. Why did Americus become an

explorer? How many voyages did he make for Spain? How many for Portugal? Tell of the Indians he saw. Tell of the birds, trees and the snake which he saw on his second voyage. Tell of his third and fourth voyages. How did our country come to be named America instead of Columbia?



John Cabot Discovering Land.

CHAPTER III.

John and Sebastian Cabot.

As soon as the discoveries of Columbus became known, many of the European kings sent out expeditions in search of Asia. In the service of the King of Portugal Vasco da Gama (Vahs'co dah Gah'mah) sailed around the south of Africa and reached India, being the first European to pass around the Cape of Good Hope and to sail across the Indian Ocean.

At this time the King of England was Henry VII. He was a very "stingy" king, and knew how to get and to save money. In order to add to his wealth he was anxious to acquire some of the riches of Asia, and determined to see if English ships could reach that wealthy land. The geographers claimed that there was a "northwest passage" around the islands which Columbus had discovered, so Henry VII. decided that an English expedition should look for this way to India and China.

At that time there lived in England a merchant named John Cabot, who, like Columbus, was a native of Italy. Little is known of the early life of John Cabot, but he resided for a long time in Venice, where he was probably born. He was a renowned sailor, and was a great traveler, having visited Jerusalem and Arabia. He was also a merchant and had traded with India

by means of the caravans which went through Arabia and western Asia. After many adventures he settled in Bristol, England, and became a wealthy merchant.

John Cabot had three sons, of whom the best known was Sebastian, a good seaman, a great student of geography and a lover of adventure. Sebastian was a Venetian by birth and was brought to England when a mere lad. Wherever his father went, Sebastian usually accompanied him. We are told that the father and son made many voyages on the Atlantic Ocean, which, they believed, contained many islands.

KING HENRY VII.

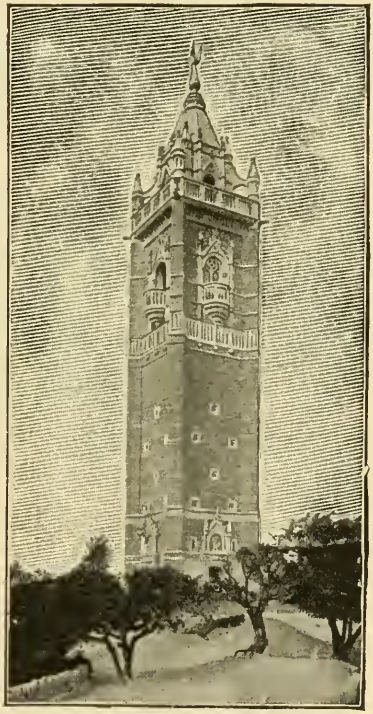
According to Sebastian's statement he and his father, as early as 1494, in a western voyage touched a new land, which was probably the island of Cape Breton in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Returning to England they told of their discovery, and when they heard of the many discoveries which Columbus and others were making they applied to King Henry for permission to search for the northwest passage to India. Henry was greatly pleased at the opportunity to send out such daring seamen as the Cabots, and he readily granted to John Cabot and his three sons, Lewis, Sebastian and Sanzio, the permission which they sought. The king likewise fitted out one ship, which was joined by three others furnished by the citizens of Bristol. With these four vessels, John Cabot, in 1497, sailed from Bristol, England, to explore the western seas. He had not gone far before three of the ships turned back; but the small vessel in which he sailed continued the journey. After about a month he discovered land, which he called Newfoundland. The new land was probably that part of North America

lying around the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Cabot went ashore and took possession in the name of the King of England. After planting there a cross to indicate that the land was held in the name of Christ, he planted by its side the banner of England, to mark that the land was the property of the English crown.

When Cabot got home he told of the new country, of the great icebergs which he had seen, of the white polar bears and of the deer larger than any in England. He announced that he had touched on the shores of China and that he had opened the treasures of all wealth to English ships and commerce. Cabot was called "High Admiral." The king promised him a fleet for a new expedition, and even gave him £10 ($50) for discovering the new lands.

The Cabots were anxious to find out more about the new land, and, with the consent of the king, prepared for another expedition. It seems that John Cabot died before he was able to set sail, and that the expedition was conducted by Sebastian. There were probably five ships in the voyage manned by three hundred men. Sebastian had two things in mind: one was to colonize the newly discovered land, and the other was to find the Emperor of China and to open up commercial relations between him and the King of England. He sailed in a northwestern direction and probably reached Greenland; then turning southward, he touched the shores of North America as far north as Labrador, and, may be, he entered what is now Hudson Bay. Sebastian then sailed south looking for China. Some historians tell us that he went as far south as Florida, but the most reliable accounts say that he sailed no farther than North Carolina. He then returned to England, greatly disappointed because he had not found China with its store of wealth. The English king was worried because his money had been spent and no good results had been produced, and it is said that he blamed Sebastian Cabot.

Sebastian lived many years longer, but, as Henry VII. did not appreciate his discoveries, he went into the service of the King of Spain, for whom he planned new expeditions to the West Indies and South America. Years afterwards (1543), when Edward VI. was king, Sebastian returned to England. Edward took him into his service, and thus acknowledged that England owed much to the Cabots.



THE CABOT MEMORIAL TOWER AT BRISTOL, ENGLAND.

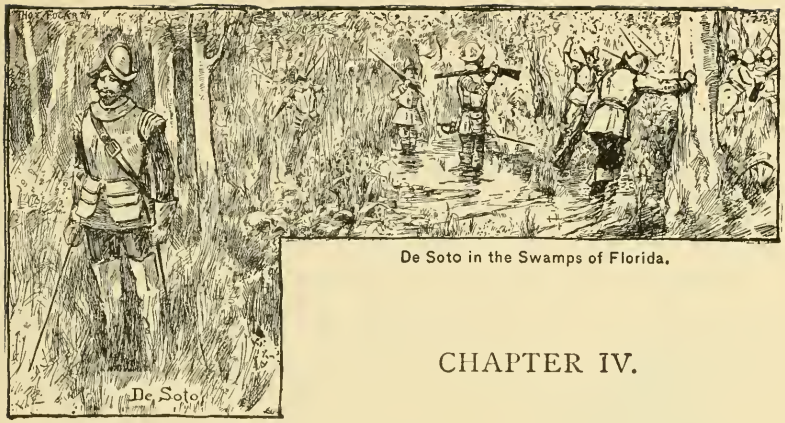
The Cabots were the first Europeans to sail along the coast of North America, so to them belongs the honor of having discovered this continent. As people of English descent, we are proud that the land in which we live was discovered by two brave seamen sailing under the flag of old England.

But for the fact that the Cabots, sailing under the English flag, discovered North America, the English would have had no claim on this great continent, and there might never have been an English colony in America. For this reason we should remember John Cabot and his son, Sebastian.

Geography Study. *Map of the World.* Find India, Arabia, England, Portugal, Cape of Good Hope, Labrador, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Cape Breton, Bristol, Jerusalem, Indian Ocean, North Carolina and Florida.

Review Questions. What did Vasco da Gama do? Tell of King Henry VII. What was the belief about a northwest passage? Who was John Cabot? Who was Sebastian Cabot? Tell of the first voyage of the Cabots. Tell of the second voyage. Tell of Sebastian Cabot's voyage in search of China. Why should we remember the Cabots?

THE ROYAL ARMS OF ENGLAND.



De Soto in the Swamps of Florida.

CHAPTER IV.

Ponce de Leon. Balboa. De Soto.

1460-1521. 1475-1517. 1496-1542.

ONE of the men who were with Columbus on his second voyage was Juan Ponce, usually known as Ponce de Leon (Pon'thā dā Lā-ōn'), because he was a native of the Province of Leon in Spain. In his boyhood he had been brought up as a page in a noble family where he heard many stories of adventure. The wonderful things which were reported by Columbus after his first voyage caused Ponce de Leon to join the second expedition of Columbus to the New World. In Haiti he distinguished himself as a great fighter of the Indians. He conquered the eastern part of Haiti, and was made governor of that province. Then he longed to conquer the island of Porto Rico from the Indians, because he believed that it was very fertile, and that its mountains were filled with an immense amount of gold.

One day Ponce de Leon made a visit to Porto Rico, where he was received in the most friendly way by an Indian ruler who took him into various parts of the island. From this ruler he heard wonderful stories of wealth, and was shown two rivers, the

bottoms of which contained pebbles that sparkled like pure gold. At once Ponce de Leon returned to Haiti, raised a small force of Spaniards, and invaded and conquered Porto Rico. It is interesting to note that this island remained in the hands of Spain until a few years ago when, at the close of the Spanish-American war, it was acquired by the United States.

Ponce de Leon was a cruel ruler, and he deceived the Indians in many ways. He seized their gold and silver, and for fear that they might rise up against him, he claimed that he and his followers were gods. For a while, the Indians were deceived, but when one of the Spaniards was killed, they learned that the Spaniards were only human like themselves. At once they rebelled against Ponce de Leon, but he soon subdued all the tribes of the island.

Ponce de Leon was a superstitious man. He heard many wonderful stories from the Indians, some of which he believed to be true. He was especially delighted to learn from them that not far west of Cuba was a rich land where there was a fountain, in which, if one bathed, even though aged, he might be restored to youth. Ponce de Leon determined to go in search of this "fountain of youth." Therefore he fitted out an expedition and sailed west. On Palm Sunday, 1513, just one week before Easter, he touched upon a land where the orange trees were blooming and the fields were gay with flowers. He called the land Florida, a word which in Spanish means "flowery." This is our present State of Florida. For nearly a year Ponce de Leon searched in this land of blossoms and orange groves for the wonderful fountain of youth; and when, at last, he lost hope of finding it, he returned to Porto Rico and afterwards went to Spain. At the Spanish court many laughed at the old soldier for being foolish enough to look for a fountain of youth, but the king treated him kindly, and sent him back to America to continue his discoveries.

Florida was first thought to be an island, but while leading an expedition against some Indians in the Caribbee (kar'i-bē) Islands, Ponce de Leon heard that it was a land of vast extent. He immediately went there again. When he touched upon the coast, he was met by hostile Indians. A battle ensued, in which Ponce de Leon was wounded by an arrow. He was at once carried to Cuba where he died (1521) from the effects of the wound. Upon his tomb was placed this curious inscription: "In this sepulchre rest the bones of a man who was a lion (Leon) by name and still more by nature."

PONCE DE LEON.

Ponce de Leon was the first Spaniard who reached any territory which lies within the present boundary of the United States.

The same year in which Ponce de Leon first visited Florida, the Pacific ocean was discovered by another Spaniard named Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (Vahs'co Noon'yāth dā Bahl-bō'ah).

Balboa was of noble birth. When a young man he joined the colony at Haiti, where he made many debts and became an outlaw. In order to escape punishment he concealed himself in a barrel which was placed upon a ship sailing to Darien, a Spanish settlement upon the Isthmus of Panama. After the ship had gotten to sea, Balboa broke out the head of the barrel and appeared before the sailors, who at once accepted him as a companion.

The vessel was wrecked in a storm, but Balboa reached Darien, where he soon became a leader. Filled with the desire for adventure, he made an expedition against some neighboring

Indians from whom he secured much gold. When this gold was being divided between Balboa and his followers, a dispute arose among some of the Spaniards as to the value of certain pieces of it. This so disgusted an Indian chief, who was standing by, that he struck the scales with his fists and told the Spaniards that they were quarreling over a mere trifle, and that, if they would climb the lofty mountains to the west, they would find a great sea, into which many small streams flowed. According to the Indian's account, all of these streams yielded gold in such abundance that it was more plentiful than iron among the Spaniards.

Balboa also heard that in this land there was a great temple, to which the Indians had for hundreds of years been bringing vast quantities of gold. So much treasure had been deposited there that the temple was said to be filled.

These stories aroused in the money-loving Spaniard a strong desire to secure the treasure, and he at once began to look for the temple of gold. The mountains were explored and great forests were crossed, but still the temple was undiscovered. Balboa then determined to climb the mountains in search of the great sea. After a perilous journey he reached their summit and—behold!—he saw to the west a vast ocean. He descended to it and claimed it and all the islands it contained for the King of Spain. Balboa called this great ocean the South Sea, but because its waters were so quiet and still, the new-found ocean was afterwards named the Pacific. Never before had a European stood upon American soil and viewed its vast expanse. Balboa's discovery showed to the Europeans that America was separated from Asia by a great ocean.

Balboa's fate was a sad one. Upon his return to Darien, he was accused of trying to overthrow the Spanish power in America. He was brought to trial, condemned as a traitor and put to death (1517).

The discoveries of Ponce de Leon and Balboa were of great importance in showing to the Europeans the extent of the New World; but the size of its rivers and the vastness of its forests

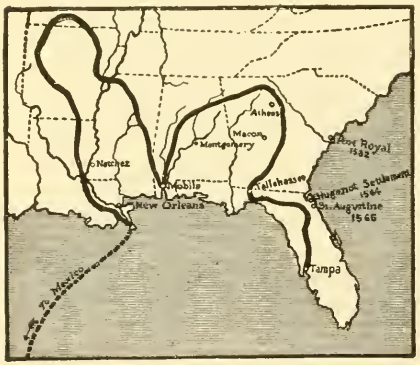
BALBOA'S FIRST SIGHT OF THE PACIFIC.

were for a long time unknown. It was another Spaniard who discovered the Mississippi and first explored much of the region now included in the United States. This was Fernando de Soto (Fėr-nan'dō dā Sō'tō).

De Soto was a Spaniard of noble birth, but his parents were very poor. When a young man, he became interested in the Spanish discoveries in the New World. He was so thrilled with the stories of Cortez in Mexico, and with the accounts of the discovery of the Pacific by Balboa, and of the exploration of

Florida by Ponce de Leon, that he too wanted to go on an expedition; but he was so poor that he could provide himself with only a sword and a shield. Finally an opportunity was offered him to gratify his ambition, and he went to Peru where he acquired much wealth from the Indians. Then the King of Spain made him governor of Cuba and afterwards of Florida.

After Ponce de Leon discovered Florida, many Spaniards visited that region and heard from the Indians stories of great gold and silver mines in the regions to the west. De Soto, hoping to find these mines and the famous "fountain of youth," for which Ponce de Leon had searched in vain, determined to explore this wonderful land. Six hundred men joined him, and, in 1539, they sailed for Florida, landing near Tampa Bay on the western coast of Florida. De Soto's plan was to go through the country wherever he heard there were gold and silver and precious jewels to be found. He met in Florida a Spaniard, John Ortez, who had been seized by the Indians some years before. Ortez had learned the Indian language, and De Soto took him as a guide to talk with the Indians and to hear their marvelous stories. The Indians spoke all the time of great gold mines in the north, so De Soto went in that direction. He crossed parts of Georgia, Alabama and Mississippi. The country was filled with marshes, and often his followers stuck fast in the mud. There were no roads, and he had to follow the paths made by the Indians. At times



THE LONG MARCH OF DE SOTO.

there was little food, but De Soto pushed on. Whenever he came upon an Indian settlement, he took from the Indians corn and other provisions.

At first the Indians were friendly, but De Soto treated them cruelly. He made many of them slaves, and often compelled Indian chiefs to bear upon their backs great sacks of corn for his men. The Indians would probably have killed De Soto and his followers; but, never having seen white men before, they feared the Spaniards, believing that they were gods.

After many months of weary travel, during which they found no treasure, De Soto and his followers finally reached a great, broad river. They inquired of the Indians its name, and they were told that it was the Mississippi, which is an Indian word for "Father of Waters." No white man had ever before seen this great river. De Soto first saw it near the present site of the city of Memphis in Tennessee.

De Soto still believed the Indian stories about gold, so he built boats, crossed the Mississippi and went farther west. He passed into Missouri and Arkansas, but not finding the riches for which he had so eagerly sought, he turned back and again reached the Mississippi near where the city of Natchez now stands.

De Soto was only forty-six years of age, but the long journey and the disappointment at not finding the great gold mines, had so preyed upon him that he fell sick and died (1542).

The Indians believed that De Soto was a god, and that he could not die; so his followers became frightened for fear that the Indians would learn of the death of their leader. If they learned of his death, they would know that the Spaniards were not gods and would kill them all. Therefore, De Soto's companions decided to bury him secretly. They were afraid to make a grave in the woods, because the Indians would discover it; so they tied rocks to the body, and then, in the dead of night, they

dropped it into the Mississippi River. Thus the discoverer of the great river was buried in its waters.

De Soto's followers built two small boats and descended the Mississippi River to its mouth. They crossed the gulf of Mexico

From a painting by Powell.

DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER.

and reached the Spanish settlement in Mexico. More than half of them perished on the journey.

Though De Soto's expedition failed in its purpose of securing gold, it taught the Spaniards that the New World was of great extent.

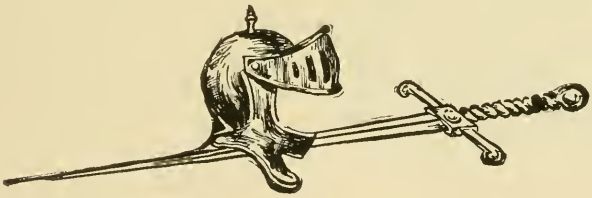
Geography Study. *Map of North America.* Find Porto Rico, Haiti, Florida, Caribbee Islands, Cuba, Isthmus of Panama, Darien and the Pacific Ocean. *Map of the United States.* Find Tampa Bay,

Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Tennessee, Arkansas, Missouri, Memphis and Natchez. Trace the course of the Mississippi River.

Review Questions. What was Ponce de Leon's connection with Columbus? How did he distinguish himself? What island did he want to conquer? Tell of his conduct in Porto Rico. What story did he hear in Porto Rico? Tell of his trip to Florida. How was he received in Spain? Tell of his death and the inscription on his tomb.

Tell of the early life of Balboa. How did he get to Darien? Why did he think of crossing the mountains and looking for a great ocean? Tell of the discovery of the Pacific. What was Balboa's fate?

Tell something of De Soto's early life. Why did De Soto go to Florida? Tell of his journey and the great river which he discovered. How did he treat the Indians? Tell of De Soto's death and burial. What became of his followers?



CHAPTER V.

Walter Raleigh.

1552-1618.

THE Spaniards continued the explorations begun by Balboa, Ponce de Leon and de Soto, and in 1565 built St. Augustine, Florida, which was the first town permanently established within the present limits of the United States. During this time the English had been inactive and had made no attempt to colonize North America; yet the English claimed the greater part of the continent, because of the discoveries of the Cabots. This claim, however, would have profited England little, if colonies had not been planted. To Sir Walter Raleigh (Râ'li) is due the credit of having aroused the English to the necessity of making settlements.

Raleigh was born about 1552, in southern England. His family was very prominent, being related to many of the English nobility. At fifteen, he attended the University of Oxford, and while there he was regarded as a brilliant young man and he took a high stand, both as a student and as an orator. As was the case with many of the English gentlemen of that day, Raleigh soon became a soldier. He assisted in putting down an Irish rebellion, and for his services he was granted large estates in Ireland. Raleigh hated Spain, and it grieved him to see how rich she was growing by her commerce with the New World. He

was therefore anxious to plant an English settlement in America, hoping by this means to increase the power of England and to prevent Spain from acquiring the whole of that continent.

When a young man, Raleigh was received at the court of Queen Elizabeth. He was commanding in appearance, tall and handsome, and elegant in his manners. His clothes were made of gorgeous velvets, silk and satins, and were embroidered with gold. He wore diamonds and precious stones, which were worth as much as twenty thousand dollars. Elizabeth's court was one of great magnificence. Raleigh was much admired by the queen because of his fine clothes and graceful manners, and he, in return for her favor, was ever ready to serve her. On one occasion, while walking in her garden, she came to a place which the rains had made muddy. Raleigh at once spread upon the ground his beautiful new plush cloak upon which the queen trod without soiling her dainty slippers. The queen did not forget this act of gallantry, and afterwards rewarded him with many gifts and honors. She made him a knight, and that is why he is called Sir Walter Raleigh.

QUEEN ELIZABETH.

Raleigh had a half brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, who was a great seaman. Sir Humphrey obtained from the queen permission to plant a settlement in North America, and made an unsuccessful attempt to colonize Newfoundland. As he was returning from Newfoundland to England, a great storm arose and all but one of the ships were destroyed. The vessel on which Gilbert

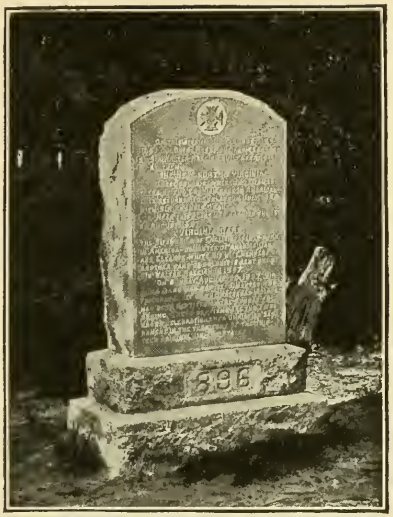
sailed was lost and Gilbert was drowned. The sailors of the ship that stood the storm reported that, just before Gilbert's ship went down, he was seen sitting on deck with a book in his hand, and above the roar of the storm, he was heard to say to the sailors, "Be of good cheer, my friends. We are as near to Heaven by sea as by land."

After the death of Gilbert, Raleigh took up the scheme of colonizing the New World. In 1584, he received a charter from the queen granting him the right to make a settlement, and he sent ships to explore the country. The sailors, on their return, reported that its soil was very fertile, the climate mild, and the Indians friendly. In honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen, all of the lands from Maine to Florida received the name Virginia.

THE SITE OF THE FIRST COLONIES.

In 1585, Raleigh sent over the first colony, consisting of one hundred persons, with Ralph Lane as governor, and a settlement was made at Roanoke (Rō-a̤-nōk') Island upon the coast of the present State of North Carolina. The colony did not prosper, as the men were lazy and by their cruelty made enemies of the Indians. It is probable that the colony would have perished from starvation but for the timely arrival of Sir Francis Drake. Drake had been plundering Spanish vessels in the West Indies, and came by Roanoke Island to see how Raleigh's colony was succeeding. The settlers were in such a pitiable condition that he took them back to England.

From these colonists the English became familiar with three things,—Indian corn, white potatoes and tobacco. Raleigh planted some of the white potatoes on his farm in Ireland; soon they came to be used by all the Irish, and to-day they are the principal food of the Irish people. For this reason, the white potatoes are usually called Irish potatoes. Raleigh learned to smoke tobacco and taught the English people how to use it. One day, when Raleigh was smoking, a servant entered his room with a pitcher of ale. The servant had never seen any one smoking before, and on seeing smoke coming from Raleigh's mouth, he at once thought that his master was on fire. To save his master from burning up he threw the ale on Raleigh, and rushed out of the room shouting that his master was afire.



THE STONE MARKING THE SITE OF OLD FORT RALEIGH.

INSCRIPTION.

On this site in July-August, 1585 (O. S.), colonists, sent out from England by Sir Walter Raleigh, built a fort, called by them "The New Fort in Virginia."

These colonists were the first settlers of the English race in America. They returned to England in July, 1586, with Sir Francis Drake.

Near this place was born, on the 18th of August, 1587, Virginia Dare, the first child of English parents born in America—daughter of Ananias Dare and Eleanor White, his wife, members of another band of colonists, sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh in 1587.

On Sunday, August 20, 1587, Virginia Dare was baptized. Manteo, the friendly chief of the Hatteras Indians, had been baptized on the Sunday preceding. These baptisms are the first known celebrations of a Christian sacrament in the territory of the thirteen original United States.

The failure of Raleigh's first colony did not discourage him. He knew that the English must occupy North America, so in 1587 he sent out a second colony. John White was appointed governor. White took with

him his daughter, who had married a Mr. Dare. The settlers landed at Roanoke Island, and set to work to rebuild the houses which had been occupied by the first colonists. Soon after they landed, a little girl was born to the Dares, the first English child born in America. In honor of the country the child was called Virginia.

After a short while Governor White returned to England to get supplies for the new colony. Hardly had he reached home before England and Spain were at war. To subdue the English, King Philip of Spain had sent a great fleet, called the Spanish Armada. The English were so aroused that they had no time to consider the little colony at Roanoke, and White was not able to go back until the war was over. When this fleet had been defeated, Raleigh sent supplies at once to the new colony; but when Roanoke Island was reached, not a trace of the settlement could be found. Where were the colonists? Some thought that they had all died there, but no graves were discovered. Others believed that they had moved away, but no trace of them could be found. Only the one word *Croatan* was written on a tree. Croatan was the name of an Indian tribe in North Carolina, so we now think that the few settlers who survived were carried off by these Indians. Nobody really knows what became of this settlement, which is known in history as "the lost colony of Roanoke."

Raleigh never tried again to colonize Virginia, but he always believed that the English ought to occupy the country, and he lived long enough to see a permanent English settlement at Jamestown.

Soon after the failure of Raleigh's colonies, he fell into disgrace. He secretly married one of the maids of Queen Elizabeth, and this so angered the queen that she never really forgave him, though she was ever afterwards kind to him. When James I. became king, Raleigh was accused of plotting with the Spaniards

to drive James from the throne. He was tried, and, though there was no clear proof that he was guilty, he was condemned to death. For fourteen years he was kept in prison, and was then finally executed.

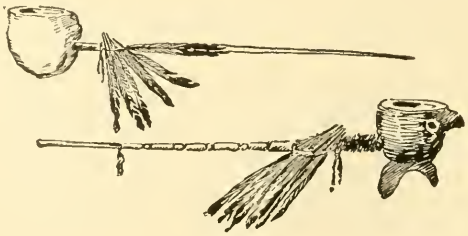
Raleigh's death was very touching. When Raleigh was led out to die, many of his friends were present. He turned to them, and in a speech of great feeling declared that he was not guilty of treason. As his friends were slow to leave him, Raleigh gently dismissed them by saying, "I have a long journey to make; therefore, I must take my leave of you." When they had departed, he turned to the headsman and asked to see the axe. The headsman hesitated, but Raleigh said, "Let me see it. Dost thou think that I am afraid of it?" He passed his fingers across the sharp blade and said, "'Tis a sharp medicine, but one that will cure all of my diseases." He then said to the executioner: "When I stretch forth my hands, dispatch me." Laying his head on the block with his face to the east, he stretched forth his hands, but the headsman was so un-

ON THE MORNING OF SIR WALTER RALEIGH'S EXECUTION.

nerved that he could not strike. Again Raleigh stretched out his hands, but the executioner did not move. Then Raleigh cried out, "What dost thou fear? Strike, man, strike." The executioner at last raised the axe, and at one blow struck the head from the body. Thus died Sir Walter Raleigh, at the age of sixty-six. He had done much for England. Here in America, we should never forget him, for it was he who first tried to plant an English colony on American soil. In the state where his efforts were chiefly made the people love to honor his memory, and the North Carolinians call their capital by his name, Raleigh.

Geography Study. *Map of North America.* Find Florida, St. Augustine, Newfoundland, Virginia, North Carolina and Roanoke Island. How far is it from England to North Carolina?

Review Questions. What was the first permanent settlement within the limits of the United States? Why did Raleigh want an English colony in America? Tell of Raleigh's early life. How did Raleigh gain the favor of Queen Elizabeth? What did Gilbert do? Tell of Gilbert's death. How did Virginia get its name? Tell of Raleigh's first colony. What was its fate? Tell of the planting of the second colony. Who was the first English child born in America? What was the Spanish Armada? Tell why the second colony was neglected. What became of the second colony? Why was Raleigh imprisoned? Tell of his execution. Write a composition telling what you think of Raleigh.



CAPTAIN · JOHN · SMITH·

POCAHONTAS SAVING CAPTAIN SMITH·

CHAPTER VI.

John Smith.

1579-1631.

TWENTY years after the failure of Raleigh's colony, the first permanent English settlement was made in Virginia. The soul of the enterprise was Captain John Smith. He was born in 1579 in the County of Lincoln in England. When a mere boy, he showed great love for adventure. At thirteen, he left school, and sold his satchel and books and what other property he had, with the idea of going to sea. But just at this time his parents died, and his guardian put him into a bank, hoping to make a business man of him. This life proved too quiet for Smith, so in a little while he gave up his work and went traveling in Europe.

Smith desired to be a soldier, and in order that he might prepare for such a life, he used daily to go into the woods, and practice shooting with his pistol. He also became very skillful with the sword and spear.

Anxious to have experience in war, Smith determined to go to fight the Turks, who at that time were engaged in war with

the German people living in Austria. On his way to join the German army he met with many adventures. In crossing the English Channel, he was robbed of his money. After other adventures in France he set sail for Italy. On board the vessel were a number of persons going on a pilgrimage to Rome, and when a violent storm came up, these pilgrims thought that it was sent by God because there was a wicked passenger on board. Smith, being a stranger, was selected as the cause of the storm, and was, therefore, thrown overboard into the Mediterranean Sea; but he swam to the shore, which was near by.

JAMES I.

He then went to Austria, joined the German army, and proved himself a brave and daring soldier. One day when the Germans were besieging a town held by the Turks, a Turkish lord challenged to single combat any warrior who would fight him. Smith was selected to meet the Turk. Both appeared on the field of battle on horseback, and at the sound of the trumpet they rushed swiftly together. Smith directed his lance so that the point entered the eye of his Turkish opponent, who fell dead from his horse, while Smith escaped without a wound. He cut off the head of his antagonist and bore it in triumph to the Christian army. He fought with two other Turks in single combat, and killed them also. Smith, in memory of this event, placed upon his coat of arms three Turks' heads.

Not long after this, in a battle between the Turks and the Christians, Smith was taken prisoner, and was sold into slavery.

He was bought by a Turkish woman of noble family, who fell in love with him. Fearing that some harm might befall him, she sent him to her brother, a nobleman who lived near the Sea of Azof. He treated Smith very cruelly. One day Smith was sent to thresh wheat in one of the nobleman's barns. While he was at work, the owner came in and cursed him, which so enraged Smith that he beat out the man's brains with his threshing flail. Then Smith put on the clothes of his dead master, and made his escape into Russia. He then determined to return home, and finally reached England in 1604.

On his return to his native land, Smith found that the merchants of England were anxious to plant a colony in Virginia, which was said to be a land of great fertility and wealth. Its beauty was unsurpassed, and in its forests were found birds of gorgeous plumage. According to report, gold and silver were so plentiful that all sorts of cooking utensils were made of them, and the native children, with strings of diamonds around their necks, were to be found playing in the great unexplored forests. The English people longed for this wealth, and they also thought that the Indians ought to be converted to Christianity. Therefore, some of the leading merchants of England organized a great trading company to make settlements in Virginia, and in 1606 applied to King James I. for a charter, which was granted to two companies, known as the London and Plymouth companies.

The London Company at once prepared to send out a colony. Three small vessels, the *Susan Constant*, the *God Speed* and the *Discovery*, were fitted out and a small band of men sent over. The adventurous spirit of Smith caused him to join the Company, and sail for Virginia. Hardly had the vessels left London and got to sea, before the settlers began to quarrel among themselves. Smith was accused of mutiny, arrested, and carried a prisoner to Virginia. In April, 1607, the mouth of Chesapeake Bay was reached, and the ships sailed up into a river which they

called the James. The colonists went ashore, and were pleased with the fertile soil, the beautiful flowers, and the trees of cedar and cypress. A writer of the times said: "We came to a little plot of ground full of beautiful strawberries four times bigger and better than ours in England."

Farther up the river, about forty miles from its mouth, the ships anchored at a small peninsula (now an island), where the

From a painting by Chapman.

THE LANDING OF SETTLERS AT JAMESTOWN.

men landed on the 13th of May, 1607, and began the first *permanent* English settlement in America. This settlement was called Jamestown in honor of James I., King of England. Here, not three hundred years ago, began the history of the United States, which is now one of the greatest nations of the world. Our great country to-day has eighty millions of people, but the first colony at Jamestown contained only one hundred and five settlers.

Edward Maria Wingfield was made president of the colony. He was a lazy man, who thought only of his own gains and his own comforts. According to the plan adopted, the settlers were to live together as one great family, putting into one common storehouse all they made, and receiving from it all that they ate. Wingfield, however, took for himself all the good flour and meat, and distributed among the colonists the grain which contained worms. The settlers had no houses at first, and Smith, who was a "happy-go-lucky" fellow, said that their homes were "castles in the air."

From an old print.

POCAHONTAS.

As you remember, when the colonists landed at Jamestown, Smith was a prisoner; but he at once demanded a trial, at which it was shown that he was not guilty. From this time Smith was the real ruler of the colony, and more than once he saved it from being destroyed by the Indians or by hunger. Through his boldness and resolution, the lazy were forced to work, and food was secured from the Indians.

Even in 1607 the people of England knew so little about the size of America that they thought Asia could be reached by sailing up one of our rivers. King James had instructed the colonists on leaving England to make a search for a northwest passage to Asia; so Smith with several companions went up the James River, looking for the outlet to the Pacific Ocean. They reached the Falls where Richmond now stands, and then turned back. On another occasion Smith went up the Chickahominy River and was taken prisoner by the Indians. They were about

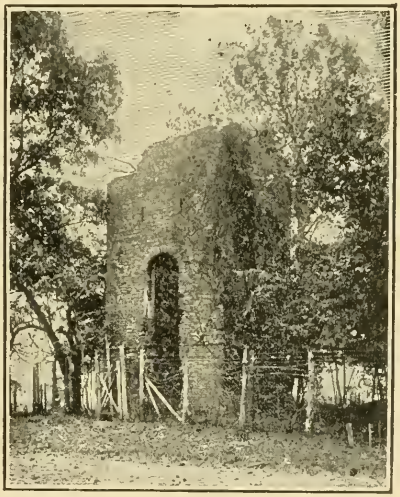
to kill him, when he showed them a pocket compass and called their attention to the needle which always pointed north and south. He was then taken to the Indian chief, who was called Powhatan. When Smith was brought into his presence, Powhatan was seated upon a throne, clothed in a garment of raccoon skins. Two of his daughters sat by his side. Their heads and shoulders were painted red, and around their necks were strings of white beads.

Powhatan consulted with his warriors, and it was decided that Smith should be put to death. Two large stones were brought in and placed before Powhatan. Smith was seized and his head was placed upon them, and a warrior advanced with a raised club ready to beat out his brains. Then it was that Pocahontas, a child thirteen years of age, the favorite daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward and, taking Smith's head in her arms, begged for his life. After much entreaty, Powhatan spared Smith's life on the condition that he was to make beads and toys for the little Pocahontas.

Soon after this, Smith returned to Jamestown. When he arrived, he found the colony almost on the point of perishing for want of food. At once he put the men to work, restored order, and secured food from the Indians. Little Pocahontas was always a friend to the whites, and time and again she sent Smith venison and corn. Some five years later she became a Christian and was married to John Rolfe, one of the English settlers.

Smith was the only man who had the right idea about colonizing Virginia. He wrote to the London Company to send over settlers who would work, and not men who had spent their money in "riotous living" and who would come to Virginia only with the hope of picking up gold along the river banks. The London Company would not listen to Smith, but ordered the colonists to search for gold, and soon it was reported that great quantities had been found. The colonists became crazed with

the thought of great wealth, and Smith said that there was "no talk, no hope, no work, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, load gold." Captain Newport had come over from England and brought gold refiners who said that the dirt contained gold, but Smith still insisted that it was worthless sand. A shipload of yellow dirt was actually sent to England, and it contained no gold, just as Smith had predicted.

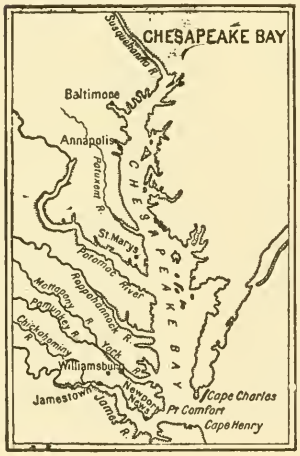


ALL THAT NOW REMAINS OF THE SETTLEMENT AT JAMESTOWN.

Smith explored the Chesapeake Bay, the York, Potomac and Rappahannock rivers, and made a map of the Bay and the surrounding country, which was very accurate. When he returned to Jamestown from this trip, he found that many of the settlers had rebelled. Even Ratcliffe, who at this time was president, was made a prisoner for mutiny. Smith was at once elected president by the settlers. For a year he served as ruler, and showed himself wise and capable. He forced all to work and he protected Jamestown from the Indians, who were constantly trying to destroy the place. New settlers came over, and Smith insisted that they should work crops, such as corn and wheat, and that the company should make its wealth, not by searching for gold, but by farming and by trading with the Indians. Along the James River several small settlements were made, one of them being near where Richmond now stands. The Indians made complaint against this settlement to Smith, claiming that

the whites had stolen their corn, and enslaved some of their people. Smith went up the river to quiet the disturbances, with the hope of keeping peace between the whites and the Indians, but his efforts were fruitless.

As he was returning in his boat to Jamestown, a bag of gunpowder exploded and burned him seriously. He leaped overboard to put out the flames, and came near being drowned before his companions could rescue him. Badly injured, he was taken to Jamestown. As soon as the settlers saw his helpless condition, they refused to obey his orders. He then gave up the government of the colony and returned to England in the autumn of 1609.



The colony of Virginia had now existed for two years. When Smith left it, there were four hundred and ninety settlers. Through his influence the colony had been put upon the road to prosperity, but as soon as he was gone everything went to rack and ruin. The settlement was about to be abandoned, but the London Company saw the necessity of strong government and sent over, as governor, Lord Delaware, who arrived just in time to save the colony.

As soon as Delaware took the reins of government, Virginia began to prosper, and in a few years the colonists were raising tobacco for shipment to England. From this time to the Revolution great quantities of tobacco were sent to England, and Virginia became the wealthiest and largest of the American colonies.

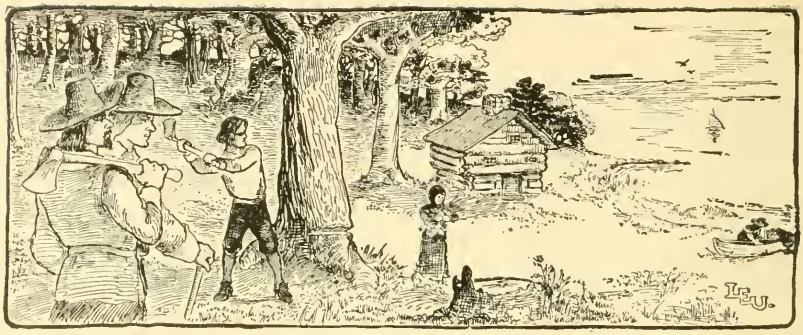
After Smith left Virginia, he was made "Admiral of New

England," and explored the shores of New England, but he never again visited the colony of Virginia. He spent the remainder of his life in England, dying at the age of fifty-two.

Smith was a brave and good man; but for him the first American colony would have been totally destroyed, and it may be that the whole of the history of our great nation would have been different. If the Jamestown colony had been abandoned in those early days, the English might never have settled permanently in America. Let us, then, honor Smith because he saved the colony of Virginia.

Geography Study. *Map of Europe.* Find Austria, the English Channel, Rome and the Sea of Azof. *Map of Virginia.* Find Chesapeake Bay, James River, Chickahominy River, Jamestown, Richmond, Potomac River, Rappahannock River and York River. How long is Chesapeake Bay? How far is it from Richmond to the mouth of James River?

Review Questions. What kind of boy was Smith? Tell of his adventures on his way to fight the Turks. Tell of his fight with the Turks. How did Smith become a slave? Tell of his escape and return to England. Why did the English want to plant a colony in Virginia? What was the London Company? What three ships were sent out? Tell of the arrival of Smith and the colonists in Virginia. Where was the first settlement made? Why did the colony get on so badly? How did Smith save the colony from dying of hunger? How did Smith come to find the falls in James River? Tell of Smith as a prisoner before Powhatan. Tell what you know of Pocahontas. Give an account of the search for gold. Tell of Smith's explorations. Why was Smith elected president? Tell of his rule. How was he injured? Tell of the Virginia colony after Smith left it. Why should we honor Smith? Write a composition telling what you think of Smith as a man.



Making a Clearing at Plymouth.

CHAPTER VII.

William Bradford and John Winthrop.

1588-1657. **1588-1649.**

THE settlement at Jamestown was the first English colony to be permanently established in America. The second English colony in America was at Plymouth. It was for seventy years a separate and distinct colony, but then it was joined to Massachusetts, and is to-day a part of that state. Virginia, as you remember, was settled by a company whose aim it was to acquire wealth. The Plymouth colony was planted, not by a company, but by a number of individuals who wished to live where they might worship God according to their own views.

In the days of Queen Elizabeth, England had an established church, just as it has to-day, which was upheld and supported by the government. The laws of the kingdom caused any one who refused to accept the religion of the established church to be imprisoned or otherwise punished. In the little town of Scrooby there lived a number of people who refused to worship God according to the doctrines of the state church, and they withdrew from it; hence they were called Separatists. By order of Queen Elizabeth, the Separatists of Scrooby were imprisoned,

but they were afterwards released on condition that they would live peaceably at their homes.

When James I. became King of England, he treated the Separatists very harshly, so they at once left England and went to Holland, where they would not be interfered with in their worship of God.

Among the Separatists was William Bradford, at that time only eighteen years old. He was well educated in Latin and Greek, and was a great student of the Bible. His learning soon made him a leader among the Separatists in Holland.

After living for some time in Holland, the Separatists desired to leave that country, because if they remained there, their children would learn the Dutch language and become foreigners. In spite of the fact that they had been so cruelly treated in England, they still loved their native land and their own language, and wished to be English subjects. Having heard of the new colony that had been planted in Virginia, they applied to the London Company for permission to settle there. After several refusals their request was granted. The Separatists, who now called themselves "The Pilgrims" because of their many wanderings, secured a small vessel, the *Speedwell*, to carry them to Virginia. This vessel was joined by the *Mayflower*, but hardly had the voyage begun, when the *Speedwell* began to leak, and had to be sent back; so the *Mayflower* undertook the voyage alone. There were on board one hundred men, women and children, and among the number was Bradford.

After a stormy voyage of two months, the coast of New England was reached. At times it had seemed that the little *Mayflower* would be swallowed up in the great waves of the ocean, but God watched over the Pilgrims and brought them safely to land.

Bradford was in many respects the leading man among the Pilgrims; but when they landed in America, they elected John

Carver as their governor, because they considered Bradford too young for such a responsible position. Before landing, they signed an agreement known as the Mayflower Compact. By this agreement a free government was established in which every man was to take part. On the twenty-first day of December, 1620, the landing was made at a place which the Pilgrims called Plymouth. Here the first colony in New England was planted.

From a painting by Lucey.

THE LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

It had been the purpose of the Pilgrims to settle in Virginia, but the terrible storms had driven them too far north.

The colony was begun under trying circumstances. Winter was coming on, food was scarce, and the Indians were not to be trusted. But the Pilgrims went to work with energy; they built houses, and felled the forests, so that crops could be planted in the spring. On account of the severe climate many died; one of these was Governor Carver. At once young Bradford was elected governor, and for thirty-one years he

continued to be reëlected. During his governorship he directed the colony wisely, and successfully avoided a war with the Indians. Among the Pilgrims was an old soldier, Miles Standish, and into his hands Bradford entrusted the little army of the colony. At first his army numbered only twelve men, but with their guns they frightened away the Indians, who had nothing but bows and arrows. Some of the neighboring Indians were hostile and sent a bundle of arrows tied with a snake's skin. This was a challenge to war. Captain Standish boldly received it, and sent back the snake's skin filled with bullets, and thus by his boldness prevented the Indians from attacking the Pilgrims.

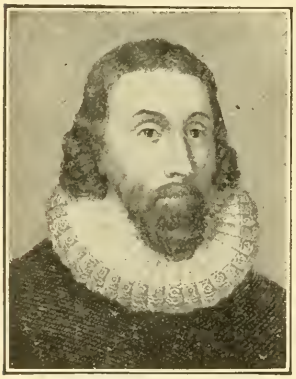
In 1657 Bradford died. The colony was then in a prosperous condition, and had a population of more than five thousand.

When the Pilgrims came to New England, there were then in England many members of the established church who were opposed to the ceremonies and services of that church. These people, however, had never separated themselves from the English church as the Pilgrims had done, but they were constantly trying to change the services—to purify them—and for that reason they were called Puritans. In a little while they were persecuted for their religious beliefs. Like the Pilgrims, the Puritans turned their eyes to America, where they also might secure homes, and worship God according to their own religious beliefs.

In 1628 John Endicott came from England, and made a settlement at Salem, not far north of Plymouth. In a few months other settlers came and established two more towns,—one called Charlestown, and another, Boston. In 1630 John Winthrop came to New England with a great number of settlers. At the time that he reached New England, he was about forty years old, and for the next nineteen years he was the leader of the colony that had Boston as its center. This colony was

then known as Massachusetts Bay, but after a short while it was called simply Massachusetts.

Winthrop had a good home in England, and, of course, he disliked to leave it; but he believed that he ought to be allowed to serve God in his own way. Therefore he was willing to give up his home and friends in England for the sake of his conscience. When he first came to Massachusetts, he left his wife in England until he could build a home for her. When he had everything in readiness, he sent for her, and she came over to join her beloved husband.



GOVERNOR WINTHROP.

In those days few articles could be bought in America. People wore the coarsest sort of clothes, made often from the skins of animals; so we find Winthrop writing to his wife telling her to come well furnished with linen and woolen goods, sheets, and pots and kettles for the kitchen. He wrote: "Be sure to be warm clothed and to have store of fresh provisions: meal, eggs, butter, oatmeal, peas and fruits. Thou must be sure to bring no more company than so many as shall have full provision for one year and a half, for, though the earth here be very fertile, there must be time and means to raise it."

In a little while Winthrop showed what could be made of Massachusetts. Under his directions the settlements of Charlestown, Newton, Roxbury and Boston were built up. The people caught fish and sent them to Europe to be sold. They raised their own food and made their own clothes and house furnishings. Massachusetts thus became one of the thriftiest of the American colonies, and at the time of Winthrop's death (1649) had a population of forty thousand.

Though Winthrop was an earnest and sincere man, and wanted to worship God according to his own belief, he was unwilling that persons holding different religious views from his own should settle in Massachusetts. All the settlers were required to worship as the Puritans did; and such as did not, were sent out of the colony.

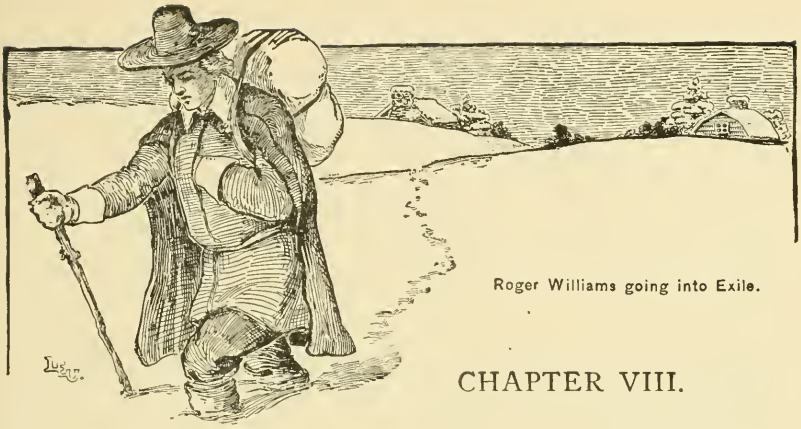
WHERE THE PILGRIMS AND THE PURITANS SETTLED.

Some Quakers came to Massachusetts and were sent away, but shortly afterwards some of them returned to Boston, and were at once seized, tried and hanged. The King of England was angry with the colony of Massachusetts on account of this cruelty, but the stern old Puritans paid little attention to the English king. In after years Massachusetts resisted the English government on questions of taxation and other things, and joined with Virginia and the other American colonies in the Revolutionary War which gave us our independence from England.

Geography Study. *Map of Europe.* Find England and Holland. How far is it from England to Holland? *Map of New England.* Find Plymouth, Salem, Boston, Charlestown and Roxbury. How far is it from Plymouth to Virginia?

Review Questions. What were the first and second English colonies in America? Who were the Separatists? Why were they called

Pilgrims? Tell of the Pilgrims in Holland. Where did they wish to settle? Tell of their experiences in coming to America. Why did they not settle in Virginia? Who was the first governor of Plymouth? Give some account of Bradford. Who was Miles Standish? Tell of his army and the Indian challenge. How did the Plymouth colony succeed under Bradford? Who were the Puritans? Who settled Salem? What other towns were settled? Tell of the coming of Winthrop. Why did Winthrop leave England? What did he write his wife? Tell of the growth of Massachusetts. How did the Puritans treat the Quakers? Write a composition on the Puritans.



Roger Williams going into Exile.

CHAPTER VIII.

Roger Williams and Thomas Hooker.

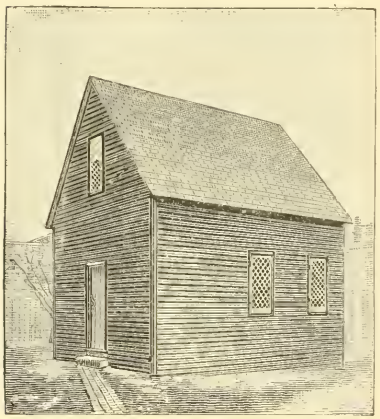
1599-1683. **1586-1647.**

WINTHROP and the Puritans did not wish to have any settlers in Massachusetts who did not agree with them. Into the colony came two preachers, good and conscientious men, but men who did not have the same ideas as Winthrop. One of these preachers, Roger Williams, was forced to leave the colony, and the other, Thomas Hooker, departed without waiting for Winthrop to drive him out.

Of the early life of Roger Williams, we know little. It is said that he was born in Wales. His parents belonged to the middle class, but they gave their boy an education and he was graduated from Oxford University. When a very young man, he became a Christian and decided to preach. He led a life of piety and virtue, and all who knew him respected him. At first he was a preacher in the established church of England, but soon joined the Puritans. Later he came to New England, where he thought that he could preach according to his own convictions, and where he hoped to convert the Indians.

A few weeks after reaching Massachusetts Roger Williams became the assistant pastor of the church at Salem. He soon

offended Winthrop and the officials of Massachusetts because he said that a man should not be punished for refusing to go to church on Sunday. According to the laws of the Puritans every citizen was to attend church on Sunday, and if he failed to do so, he was fined; and if he still refused to perform his religious duty, he was imprisoned. Williams believed that this was wrong, and that the question of going to church was to be decided by a man's own conscience. You know, this is what we believe to-day, but two hundred and fifty years ago people were not so liberal as they are now. Williams was far ahead of his day, and he was too broad and liberal to live in a Puritan community.



THE FIRST CHURCH AT SALEM, WHERE WILLIAMS PREACHED.

Built in 1634 and still standing.

After a little while Williams left Salem and went to Plymouth, to live with the Pilgrims, who were more liberal than their neighbors of Massachusetts. Governor Bradford of Plymouth said that Williams did great good among his people. After a short stay in Plymouth, Williams returned to Salem, where he became pastor of the church.

He continued to preach that a man ought to be allowed to worship God according to his own conscience, and to decide how he should conduct himself on Sunday without interference from the state. Moreover, he held that the colonists should not take the land from the Indians without buying it, and that, since America belonged to the Indians, King James had no right to grant it to anybody. The magistrates warned

Williams, but he still held to his views; then Winthrop called a general meeting of the people of Massachusetts to consider Williams's case. He was not even given a trial, and no witness appeared against him; but on the general report which was circulated about his preaching, it was decided that he should be sent out of the colony. It was a custom among the Puritans to send all objectionable persons back to England, and this they intended to do with Williams. Officers were sent to his house to seize him, and to put him on board a ship bound for England. At his home, however, they found only his wife and children, for he had already been gone three days. It was in the dead of winter when Williams went out from his home in exile. Knowing the purpose of the Puritans, he fled from Salem to avoid being sent back to England.

Think of this true and sincere man as he wandered south from Boston through the forests! He was without companions, and there was no place of refuge for him in the bitter cold weather. He afterwards said, "I was sorely tossed for fourteen weeks in the winter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean." Sometimes he hid in the hollow of a tree, where he could hear around him the howl of the wolves and panthers which at that time roamed through the forests of New England.

While at Salem, Williams had seen much of the Indians, had learned their language and had made many friends among them. As soon as he could, he went to the home of Massassoit, an Indian chief of the tribe of the Pokanokets, or Wompanoags. Massassoit received him with great kindness and granted him a tract of land. When spring came, Williams was joined by some friends from Salem, who held to the same religious beliefs that he did. The land that Williams secured from the Indians was on the borders of the Plymouth colony, and just as he was about to build a home for himself and his friends, he received a letter from the governor of Plymouth asking him to move farther

south. Williams felt that his own people were treating him cruelly, but at once he determined to go deeper into the wilderness, and to select a place for his settlement which neither the people of Massachusetts nor those of Plymouth could claim. He went to Narragansett Bay (1636), and there chose for his colony the site of the present city of Providence. This was the beginning of the State of Rhode Island, which was one of the

From a painting by Wray.

ROGER WILLIAMS BEFRIENDED BY THE NARRAGANSETTS.

thirteen original colonies. It was a beautiful spot, and to-day the hillside that was then covered with trees and beautiful grass is the location of a wealthy city. Where once reigned silence, now are heard the bustle of trade and the murmur of busy life.

At Providence, Williams did not forget to practice what he had preached in Massachusetts. He had taught that the land should be bought from the Indians; so he visited the Narragan-

setts who held sway over the greater part of what is now Rhode Island and bought from them a large tract of land. Providence was also made a place of refuge for those who might be driven from their homes on account of their religious beliefs, and no one was to be punished by the government for the way in which he worshipped God. In other words, Williams established religious freedom which, at that time, existed nowhere else in the world.

Other settlers quickly came to Rhode Island, and among them was Mrs. Ann Hutchinson, a woman of fine intellect, who was driven from Massachusetts, because she did not believe in the Puritan doctrines. Williams received her kindly, and assisted her in building the town of Portsmouth. Other settlements were formed, and some years after, in 1662, Williams secured from the king a charter which united all these settlements into the colony of Rhode Island. Rhode Island was never a large colony; but, from its beginning, under the direction of Williams, its government was pure and liberal, and for that reason it prospered and grew in wealth.

Williams was a good man and bore no ill feeling against the people of Massachusetts. Hardly had he settled Rhode Island before Massachusetts and the Pequot Indians were at war. The people of Massachusetts brought on the war by seizing the land of the Pequots. Williams saw that if all the Indians of New England combined against the whites, the result would be disastrous to the colonists. He therefore visited the Narragansetts and persuaded them not to join the Pequots, who, fighting alone, were easily overcome. Williams may be said to have saved New England. In spite of his services, the government of Massachusetts was so unforgiving that it never removed the sentence by which Williams was expelled from the colony.

Williams lived for nearly fifty years after the settlement of Rhode Island. During that time he worked earnestly to promote the welfare of New England. Not only did he aid in the Pequot

war, but just a few years before his death, when Philip, the chief of the Pokanokets, tried to destroy all the English in New England, Williams again secured the friendship of the Narragansetts. He likewise raised troops in Rhode Island to assist the other colonies, though they had refused to have anything to do with Rhode Island. Through the efforts of all the colonies Philip was defeated, and the Pokanoket tribe was almost destroyed (1676).

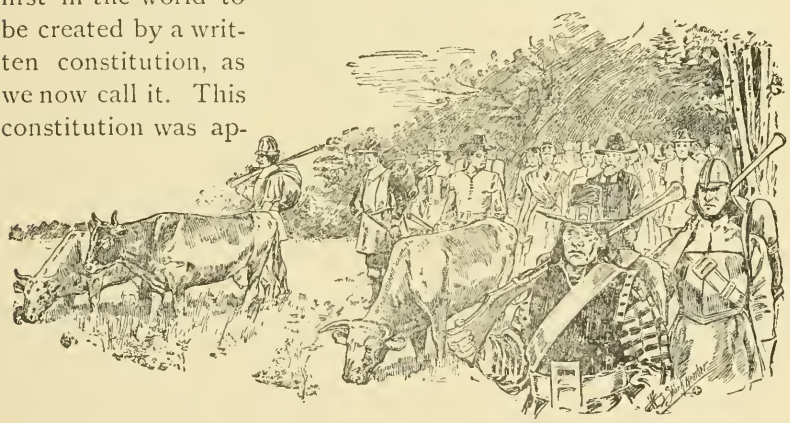
Williams lived long enough to see all of the colonies of New England in a prosperous condition. He was eighty-four years of age at the time of his death, and, though so old, was full of vigor to the last. He was buried at Providence, the city which he had built and which he greatly loved.

Thomas Hooker, though not so great a man as Williams, was, like him, the founder of a colony. Hooker came to Boston two years after Williams, and became pastor of the church at Cambridge. He was a very learned man and an eloquent speaker, and by his preaching he greatly aroused the people.

In those days no man had a voice in the government of Massachusetts unless he was a member of the church. Hooker said that all men should take part in the government, even though they might not be church members, but Governor Winthrop would not listen to such an idea. Then Hooker conceived the plan of establishing a colony where every man could have a voice in managing its affairs. So without quarreling with Winthrop, he left Massachusetts with a great company of people just a few months after Williams had been driven out, and went towards the valley of the Connecticut River. On the journey through the wilderness from Boston to the Connecticut River, he and his congregation traveled slowly, taking their wives and children and their cattle with them. They lived, as best they could, on such food as could be carried on a long journey, and on the milk of their cows.

In 1636 a town called Hartford was built on the Connecticut River, and soon after Windsor and Wethersfield were founded. Through the influence of Hooker, these towns were united into one colony (1639), under the name of Connecticut. The written agreement which brought these towns under the same government is known as the Body of Fundamental Laws, and was written by Hooker himself.

The government of Connecticut, as thus established, was the first in the world to be created by a written constitution, as we now call it. This constitution was approved by the people, and gave equal rights and privileges to all the settlers. When all the people living in a state have an equal voice in the government, the government is called a democracy; so Connecticut was the first democracy to be established with a written constitution.



ON THE MARCH TO CONNECTICUT.

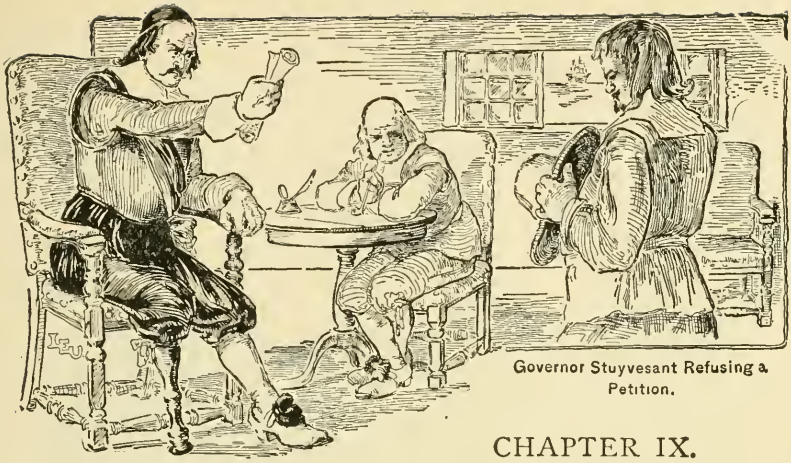
A few years after the settlement of Connecticut, a Puritan preacher named John Davenport came there from England with a body of settlers. Even the government of Massachusetts was too liberal for Davenport, because he wanted to form a colony with every law based upon the Bible For example, he was

opposed to trials by jury because he could find nothing about them in the Bible. Davenport went to the mouth of the Connecticut River and there planted the colony of New Haven. Some twenty years later it was joined to Connecticut.

New England was, in colonial days, composed of many colonies. You have learned of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut and New Haven. Plymouth was united to Massachusetts (1692), and New Haven to Connecticut (1662). There are now in New England two other states, New Hampshire and Maine. New Hampshire was settled almost as early as Massachusetts, and was for many years a part of it, but was finally made a distinct colony (1741). Maine was a part of Massachusetts until 1820, when it became a state in the Union. So at the time of the Revolution there were in New England only four distinct colonies: Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire including Vermont.

Geography Study. *Map of New England.* Find Salem, Plymouth, Providence, Portsmouth, R.I., Boston, Connecticut River, Hartford, New Haven and Narragansett Bay. Name the states of New England.

Review Questions. What two preachers did Winthrop drive from Massachusetts? Tell of the early life of Williams. Tell of his preaching in Massachusetts. What did the officials of Massachusetts do? Tell of the wanderings of Williams. How was he received by the Indians? Tell of his settlement at Providence. What were his views about religion? What is religious freedom? Tell of Mrs. Hutchinson. What Indian gave trouble to Massachusetts? How did Williams aid the people of New England? Who was Thomas Hooker? Why did he leave Massachusetts? Tell of his journey to the Connecticut River. What town did he build? What is the importance of the "Fundamental Laws"? Tell of John Davenport. What became of the New Haven colony? Name the colonies of New England at the time of the Revolution.



Governor Stuyvesant Refusing a Petition.

CHAPTER IX.

Henry Hudson and Peter Stuyvesant.

1580(?)-1611. **1602-1682.**

ALL the European nations turned with longing eyes to America. The Spaniards entered it first. The English at Jamestown made the second permanent settlement, and a year later the French settled in Canada.

At this time, one of the leading commercial nations of Europe was little Holland. It had a splendid navy and many merchant vessels, and its people had grown wealthy by trading with the East India islands. They likewise sent expeditions to explore the western seas with the hope of finding a passage west to India, China and Japan. These explorations led to certain discoveries in America, and were followed by a Dutch settlement in New York. The way to America was pointed out to the Dutch by Henry Hudson.

Hudson was an Englishman and lived in London. Of his birth and early life we know nothing. We are told, however, that he was a friend of Captain John Smith. He began his

explorations under the London Company, and was sent to look for the northwest passage, which so many English sailors, after the Cabots, had tried in vain to find. He made several voyages for the English in the neighborhood of Greenland and Labrador, but without success. These unsuccessful attempts caused the London Company to give up hope of finding a northwest passage, so Hudson went to Holland and entered the service of the Dutch East India Company.

In 1609 he sailed from Holland in his little vessel, the *Half Moon*, with a crew of twenty. He first touched at Newfoundland. Then he went southwest to the Chesapeake Bay and even farther south, it is thought, looking for the way to the Pacific. Becoming discouraged, he sailed north along the coast, and, after several months, entered what is now New York Bay. He saw that there was a great stream flowing into this bay, and at once determined to explore it. He probably thought that this stream was the northwest passage. He sailed up the beautiful river which is now called Hudson, till he came to the mountains and to the shallow waters which are near the present location of Albany. He traded with a number of the Indians, and secured much fur and tobacco. On one occasion some Indians went on board the *Half Moon*. Hudson and his men were so mean as to give one old Indian a big drink of whisky, which none of the natives had ever tasted. To the great surprise of his companions, he soon went fast asleep, and they thought that he had been poisoned; so they hastily left the boat and went ashore. When they returned the next day and found the old man well, they thought that he had been bewitched; and it was a long time before they came to understand the effect of whisky. In after years the Dutch gave these Indians whisky in return for furs, and they were so fond of the white man's drink, that numbers of them became drunkards.

When Hudson left the river which now bears his name, he

was delighted with the beautiful country he had found, and sailed back to Europe to report his discovery. The Dutch were much pleased, and the next year they sent out vessels to trade with the Indians along the Hudson River.

Hudson never again sailed under the Dutch flag. He returned to the employ of the London Company, and once more went in search of the northwest passage. On this voyage he dis-

From the painting by Weir.

THE LANDING OF HENRY HUDSON.

covered Hudson Bay, where he was forced to spend the winter. His ship became frozen in the ice, and his crew nearly perished for want of food. At the approach of spring, the sailors rebelled against him, and seizing him and some of his companions, put them into a small boat and left them to die among the icebergs of the northern seas.

The experiences of the Dutch with the Indians along the Hudson River encouraged them to believe that the fur trade

would be profitable, and that it would be well to establish a colony in the New World. They, therefore, built a trading post on Manhattan Island, where New York now stands, and another on the Hudson River near the site of Albany. The country was called New Netherland, and the settlement on Manhattan Island was called New Amsterdam. In a little while, the number of settlers greatly increased. The lands along the Hudson were granted to great land owners called patroons, who became prosperous and wealthy. While the Dutch rule lasted in New Netherland, there were three governors, the last of whom was Peter Stuyvesant (Sti've-sant).

PETER STUYVESANT.

Peter Stuyvesant was born in Holland about 1602. When a young man, he became a soldier, and while fighting bravely, lost one leg. Ever after that he wore a wooden leg, and when the people heard him come hobbling along the streets of New Amsterdam, they made way for their brave governor. Stuyvesant was cross and peevish, and when he was governor he would scold the people severely if they did not do as he said. He ruled them well, however. He made friends with the Indians, and would not let the Dutch sell them any whisky. He believed in education and established good schools for the children of New Amsterdam. All the people of the colony had to attend church, but every man was allowed to worship God according to his own convictions.

While Stuyvesant was governor, the people of Sweden sent a

colony to America, which settled on the Delaware River, and built a fort called Christiana (1638). This fort was located in the present State of Delaware, near where Wilmington stands. Stuyvesant objected to a Swedish settlement so near him, so he raised an army, took Fort Christiana, and made New Sweden a part of New Netherland (1655).

From a painting by Powell.

STUYVESANT DESTROYS THE DEMAND FOR SURRENDER.

Hardly had the Swedes been conquered, before New Netherland was invaded by the English. England claimed all of North America and regarded the Dutch settlers as intruders, so a fleet was sent over to conquer New Netherland. Governor Stuyvesant was taken by surprise; but he was a brave man, and when the fleet appeared before New Amsterdam, he prepared to make a defense of the town. The English demanded that he should surrender, but he promptly refused. The people, however, would not fight, so he was forced to yield, and thus New Netherland passed into the hands of England.

The whole territory was granted to James, Duke of York, who

called it New York. Part of the territory was later granted by the Duke of York to two favorites, Berkeley and Carteret, who established the colony of New Jersey (1665). New York prospered under the rule of the English, and at the time of the Revolution was one of the richest colonies in America.

After Stuyvesant surrendered to the English, he did not return to Holland. He had a farm on Manhattan Island called the "Bowerie." Here he lived the rest of his life, giving no trouble to the English. He died at the age of eighty.

Geography Study. *Map of the World.* Find China, Japan, India, Greenland, Labrador and Hudson Bay. *Map of the United States.* Locate the Chesapeake Bay, New York City, Albany, the Hudson River, Delaware, Wilmington and New Jersey. Which is the largest city in the United States?

Review Questions. What caused the Dutch to turn to America? Who was Henry Hudson? Tell what he did for the London Company. Tell of his voyage for the Dutch East India Company. Describe his voyage up the Hudson River. Why did the Dutch decide to settle New York? What became of Hudson? What towns did the Dutch build in New York? What kind of man was Governor Stuyvesant? Tell why he was a good governor. Tell of the Swedes in Delaware. Why did the English attack New York? Why did Stuyvesant surrender? What other colony was soon made from the territory of New York? Tell of Stuyvesant's last years.

LORD BALTIMORE

Taking Possession of Maryland.

CHAPTER X.

Lord Baltimore.

1582-1632.

TO-DAY we enjoy so many blessings of freedom that we cannot realize how little liberty there was three hundred years ago. You have learned how the Puritans were forced to leave England because they could not worship God in their own way; but there were other people in England who were persecuted even more than were the Puritans. These were the Catholics, who were allowed no religious rights by the laws of England. In other words, their religion was not tolerated.

There lived in England a good and pious Catholic, George Calvert, better known as Lord Baltimore, who thought that it would be a good plan to establish a colony in America where the Catholic religion might exist without interference.

Lord Baltimore belonged to an English family whose ancestors had come from France. He was born in 1582. When a mere boy, he entered Trinity College at Oxford University and graduated with the degree of Bachelor of Arts, at the age of fourteen. He then traveled in Europe, and, returning to England, entered the employment of the government. He was made a clerk of the King's Council, and in this way was brought into close relation with King James I., who honored and loved him. Because he was so able and diligent the king made him one of his chief officers.

George Calvert was then a Protestant, but a little later he decided that the Catholic Church was the true one. He had everything to lose by becoming a Catholic, but like a true man he followed his conscience. As no Catholic could hold office, he gave up his position at the king's court. Almost any other officer would have been harshly treated for changing his religion, but the king, believing in the sincerity of Calvert, not only continued to love him, but even made him Lord Baltimore. This, at that time, was a high honor to be conferred upon a Catholic.

Lord Baltimore had always taken a great interest in America, and had been a member of the London Company which established the colony of Virginia. He became anxious to send out a colony under his own direction, so the king, to gratify this wish, granted him a part of the island of Newfoundland. Here Lord Baltimore planted a colony, but the climate was so cold that after a few years the colony was abandoned.

In the meantime, King James had died, and his son Charles had come to the throne. The latter's wife, Henrietta Maria, was a French princess and a Catholic, so of course she was willing to help those who believed as she did. Thus Lord Baltimore continued to enjoy the favor of the Crown.

With the idea of finding a place suitable for his colony, Lord Baltimore visited Virginia, but, as you know, the Virginians were very loyal to the English Church, so when Lord Baltimore landed in Virginia he was asked to take the oath of supremacy. By taking this oath he would acknowledge the King of England as the head of the Catholic Church. This Lord Baltimore could not do, because every Catholic believes that the Pope is the head of the Church. So he declined to take the oath, and the Virginians sent him out of the colony. He was pleased, however, with this part of America, and, on his return to England, he persuaded the king to grant him some land just north of the Potomac River. The grant included the present states of

Maryland and Delaware. Before Lord Baltimore completed his plans for the settlement, he died, and was greatly mourned in England.

His son, Cecil Calvert, became Lord Baltimore and determined to carry out his father's plan of planting a Catholic colony in America, so King Charles renewed for him the grant which had been promised to the first Lord Baltimore. The country was called Maryland (Maria land), in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria. The whole territory was put into the hands of Lord Baltimore, with the power to manage it just as he wished, provided he did not violate the charter which the king had granted. Lord Baltimore, being the sole owner of Maryland, was called the proprietor, and Maryland was known as a proprietary colony.

QUEEN HENRIETTA MARIA.

The terms on which the charter was granted were very liberal. No one would ever have known that the King of England was over the proprietor but for the fact that Lord Baltimore was required to give yearly to the king, at Easter time, two Indian arrows. The ceremony of presenting to the king the tax of two Indian arrows was only to show that Lord Baltimore acknowledged the king as his master.

Two vessels, the *Dove* and the *Ark*, set sail for America, with some two hundred colonists. Most of these were Catholics, but some Protestants were in the band. There came also with them a number of Catholic priests, who hoped to convert the Indians. Lord Baltimore did not come himself, but appointed his brother,

Leonard Calvert, as governor, to whom is really due the honor of establishing the colony of Maryland. The settlers landed at St. Mary's in 1634. At once they set to work to build a little town. The Indians were kindly treated, and many of them were converted to Christianity.

The Virginians were very violently opposed to this settlement. They claimed that Maryland belonged to them, as it had been included in their charter. A Virginian, William Clayborne, had settled on Kent Island, which is now a part of Maryland, and he resisted the coming of Catholic settlers. He went to war with the Marylanders, and at one time actually overcame them. The English government afterwards forced Clayborne to give up Kent Island.

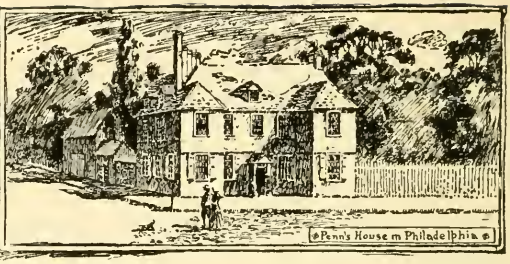
Although Maryland was settled by Catholics, in a little while the colony contained more Protestants than Catholics. This was due to the fact that it was the first English colony in America that established religious toleration. Because his views were not tolerated by the Puritans, Roger Williams left Massachusetts and established religious freedom in Rhode Island; but this was two years after the settlement of Maryland. The governor of Maryland was required to take an oath that all Christians should be treated alike in the colony. Later (1649) a law was passed providing that all people who believed in God and Jesus should have equal rights in the colony. This was the first toleration law ever passed in the Christian world.

Leonard Calvert was governor of Maryland for thirteen years. He did all that he could for the people, and when he died the colony was in a prosperous condition. From his death to the Revolution, with the exception of a period of twenty-five years, Maryland was under the control of the Lords Baltimore. After 1715 they were Protestants; and, strange to say, the Catholics who had settled Maryland and tolerated other denominations, were not tolerated there until the Revolution.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Maryland and Delaware. What states touch them? What river separates Maryland from Virginia? What body of water divides Maryland into two parts? Find St. Mary's, Annapolis and Baltimore.

Review Questions. What religious rights do we enjoy now that the people did not have three hundred years ago? How were the Catholics treated in England? What was Lord Baltimore's plan? Tell something of Lord Baltimore's early life. Why did he leave his office as a king's councillor? How did James treat George Calvert after he became a Catholic? Tell of Lord Baltimore's colony in Newfoundland. Tell of his trip to Virginia. What territory did the king promise him? On his death, who succeeded him? How did King Charles treat Cecil Calvert? What is a proprietary colony? How did Maryland get its name? Tell of the terms of the charter. Tell of the first settlement at St. Mary's. Tell of Clayborne and the opposition of the Virginians. What is religious toleration? Tell of Maryland's toleration law. What was the condition of Maryland at the death of Leonard Calvert? Tell of the way the Catholics were treated after 1715.

THE SEAL OF THE PROVINCE OF MARYLAND.
(In use from 1658 to 1776.)



CHAPTER XI.

William Penn.

1644-1718.

As you remember, the Puritans settled in New England in order that they might worship God according to their own beliefs, and the Catholics established the colony of Maryland for a like reason. In the meanwhile, still another religious body had been organized in England. The members of this sect believed that no special honor should be paid to any man, and they even refused to take off their hats in the presence of the king. They called themselves the Society of Friends, but they are better known as Quakers. The people of England despised the Quakers, forbade them to hold religious meetings, and imprisoned many of them. Some of them came to Massachusetts, but were sent away, and those who persisted in returning were tried and hanged. Just think of men being hanged for their religious belief! Under these conditions it was not strange that the Quakers wished for a home where they might be at peace. Such a home was promised for them by their great leader, William Penn.

William Penn belonged to a distinguished family. His father was an admiral in the English navy, and a great friend of Charles II., and of James, Duke of York, who was afterwards King James II. of England. William Penn was born in 1644.

He received a good education, and was sent to Oxford University at the age of fifteen. As a boy he had shown a deep religious spirit, and while at the university he met a Quaker preacher named Thomas Loe, and was greatly influenced by his preaching.

Years ago, the university students used to wear long black gowns, as they do to-day at some schools and colleges. When Penn was at Oxford many of the students who were Puritans had put aside their gowns, because they made the boys look like Catholic priests. But Charles II. thought the wearing of gowns was a good custom, and so he ordered all the university students to put them on again. Penn and some other young men refused to dress in this way, and even went so far as to seize and to tear off the gowns of some other students who obeyed the king's orders. For this offense Penn and his friends were expelled from the university.

ADMIRAL PENN.

Penn's father was very angry with him because of his conduct, and was also greatly troubled for fear that his son would become a Quaker. He wanted William to enter into the fashionable society of London; and he knew that if he became a Friend, he would refuse to do so. He thought that a trip abroad would drive away the religious spirit of the boy; so William was sent to Paris. Here young Penn conducted himself as a good and pious man, and did not enter into the gay life of the city. When he returned to London, he began the study of law at his father's request; but, much to the sorrow of his father, he outwardly became a Quaker. This made the old Admiral so angry that he drove his son away from home. Penn then became a Quaker preacher, and wrote many religious books.

There was a law in England that no religious body other than

the established church could hold meetings within five miles of a town under penalty of fine and imprisonment. This was called the Conventicle Act. Penn preached several times in violation of this law, and on refusing to pay the fine was sent to prison. His father paid the fine and had his son released, but would not speak to him. Still William held to his religion.

Admiral Penn, though pained to see his son a member of the despised band of Quakers, never lost love for him. Just before his death, the Admiral sent for the king and the Duke of York, and begged them to be kind to his son. They were moved by the plea of the dying admiral, and they never forgot to befriend his son whenever an occasion was offered.

Soon after the death of his father, Penn turned his attention to America, and determined to establish a colony of Quakers in the New World.

You remember how the English conquered from the Dutch the territory which included the present states of New York, New Jersey and Delaware. New Jersey was granted to two of the king's favorites, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. It was settled rapidly, and was soon divided by the owners into East New Jersey and West New Jersey. Penn bought the controlling interest in West New Jersey, and through his influence a number of Quakers came to that province. Some years later he became interested also in East New Jersey. Many troubles arose in the Jerseys, which were not settled until the two provinces were reunited and given back to the king. New Jersey thus became a royal province (1722). It is interesting to remember, however, that Penn had much to do with its early growth.

After Penn became interested in New Jersey, he applied to the king to give him a charter for the land lying west of the Delaware River. He asked that this land be given to him as proprietor, in the same way in which Maryland had been granted to Lord Baltimore.

The King of England owed about $80,000 to the estate of Admiral Penn, which his son, William, inherited. Charles II. did not have the money to pay this debt, so Penn offered to take the tract of land in America instead of the money. The king consented to this (1681) and, in honor of Admiral Penn, named the province Pennsylvania, which means Penn's woodland or forest.

In this region there were already nearly three thousand Dutch, Swedish and English settlers. Penn allowed them to remain and sent over other settlers to Pennsylvania. He established a very liberal form of government, and he allowed everybody to worship God according to his conscience.

Penn believed that the Indians should be treated fairly; so, as soon as he came to America, he met them under a large elm tree at Kensington, and there made a treaty of peace with them. He built a new city and called it Philadelphia, the city of brotherly love. It was laid off with broad and wide streets, and has ever since been one of the prettiest cities in America.

Penn was instrumental in the establishment of another distinct colony, Delaware, which became one of the thirteen states. Delaware was a part of the New York territory and was consequently the property of the Duke of York. Penn wanted it because it was near the ocean, so he bought it from the Duke in 1682. At that time it was inhabited by Swedes, Dutch and a few English. It was at first annexed to Pennsylvania, and was called the "Territories" or the "Lower Counties." These lower counties refused to take part in the government of Pennsylvania, so Penn gave them a separate government (1701), though they continued until the Revolution to have the same governor as Pennsylvania.

Delaware was included also in the Maryland grant to Lord Baltimore, and for years there was a dispute as to the boundary between Pennsylvania and Maryland. Finally the line was run

by two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, and to this day the boundary line between Maryland and Pennsylvania is known as Mason and Dixon's line.

Pennsylvania grew rapidly under Penn and his descendants,

PENN TREATING WITH THE INDIANS.

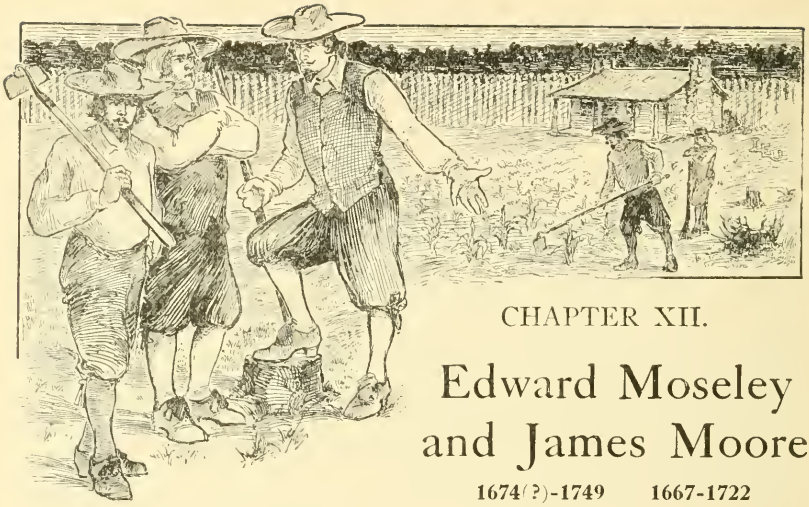
and by the time of the Revolution was one of the most important colonies in America.

Penn lived thirty-seven years after the establishment of the Pennsylvania colony. Most of that time he spent in England, where he exerted himself greatly in the interest of the Quakers. He was imprisoned several times in the latter part of his life, and was even accused of being a traitor to the English government;

but whenever he was brought to trial, no proof could be shown of his guilt. Finally he was allowed to live in England in peace. He was in every way an honest and upright man, one of the most moral men of his age, and was never known to be drunk, to swear or to use bad words. He spent his life in serving God and in doing good to his fellow-men. Pennsylvania indeed has every reason to be proud of its founder. No man who figured in our colonial history deserves more praise than William Penn, the Quaker leader and preacher. Long may his name be honored!

Geography Study. *Map of the Middle Atlantic States.* Find Pennsylvania, New Jersey and Delaware. How is Pennsylvania separated from New Jersey? How large is Delaware? Locate Wilmington, Philadelphia and Kensington. How large is Philadelphia? Name the states that touch Pennsylvania.

Review Questions. Who were the Quakers? How were they treated in England? How in Massachusetts? Tell of Penn's boyhood and his life at Oxford University. Why was Penn sent on a trip abroad? What did he do when he returned to England? How did his father treat him when he became a Quaker? Why was Penn imprisoned? What did Admiral Penn ask of the king and the Duke of York? Tell of William Penn and New Jersey. How did Penn acquire Pennsylvania? How did Pennsylvania get its name? Tell of Penn's government of Pennsylvania. What city did he build? Tell of Penn's connection with Delaware. Tell of Mason and Dixon's line. Give an account of Penn's life in England after the establishment of Pennsylvania. Why should we honor him? Write a composition on the character of William Penn.



CHAPTER XII.

Edward Moseley and James Moore

1674(?)-1749 1667-1722

The territory lying between Virginia and Florida was largely unknown country. No nation had ever formally taken possession of it. But the King of England claimed it, as he thought it might be valuable at some future time. For nearly fifty years after the founding of Jamestown no settlers entered that region, and it remained a vast wilderness inhabited only by Indians and wild beasts. About the year 1653 a few bold adventurers from Virginia, under Roger Green, took possession of some of the fertile land along the shores of Albemarle Sound. Others followed, and by 1663 a number of settlers had built homes in the Albemarle region on land which they had bought from the Indians.

Virginia claimed this region because it was first settled by Virginians, but the King of England, Charles II, would not allow the claim because he had other plans for the territory. In 1663 he gave to eight powerful noblemen of his kingdom, who had rendered him important services, all the territory lying between Virginia and Florida and between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans.

This immense region was called "Carolina," the noblemen were constituted "The Lords Proprietors,"[1] and Carolina was to be under their control just as Maryland was under the control of its proprietor, Lord Baltimore.

The Lords Proprietors found that there was already a colony in Carolina — the one planted on Albemarle Sound by settlers from Virginia. So, in 1665, they organized this colony into a county, called it Albemarle, and had William Drummond appointed governor. The Albemarle colony prospered and from it has grown the state of North Carolina.

CHARLES II.

In 1669 the Proprietors sent out from England a second colony which was joined on its way across the Atlantic by some English settlers from the islands of Bermuda and Barbadoes. The following year (1670) this colony landed at Port Royal, in what is now South Carolina. But Port Royal was too near the Spanish colony in Florida to be a safe place for an English colony. So settlers soon left there, sailed farther northward, and selected a new location on the Ashley River. There they began a town which they called Charles Town. Colonel William Sayle was appointed governor. Later, other settlers from Barbadoes arrived under the command of Sir John Yeamans, who then became governor. In 1672 the settlers moved Charles Town to a better location,

[1] They were: George Monk, Duke of Albemarle; Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon; Anthony Ashley Cooper, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury; John, Lord Berkeley; Sir George Carteret; Sir John Colleton; William, Lord Craven; and Sir William Berkeley.

on the peninsula formed by the Ashley and the Cooper Rivers. There it grew and prospered until it became one of the most important cities in the colonies. From this settlement has grown the present state of South Carolina.

Settlers from Virginia, New England, England and Scotland came to the colonies on Albemarle Sound and the Ashley River. From France also came Protestant settlers, called Huguenots: some of them settled on the Pamlico River in the northern colony, and others joined the southern colony. Many of the early settlers came to Carolina in search of religious freedom. Those from New England were trying to get away from the stern, harsh rule of the Puritans. The Huguenóts were fleeing from religious persecutions in France. The Virginians came because they were opposed to the Church of England, which was the established church in that colony. But all the new colonists were not fleeing from religious persecutions; large numbers came because the lands in Carolina were plentiful, fertile, and cheap.

JOHN LOCKE.

During the first few years the government of Carolina was very simple and the people were orderly and law-abiding. The proprietors selected the governor and a council which assisted him. Laws were made by an assembly composed of the governor, the council, and certain members chosen by the people. The people liked this form of government because they had a voice in it, but for that reason the Lords Proprietors wanted to change it. In 1669 they had John Locke, a learned English scholar, prepare another plan of government which was called "The Fundamental Constitutions."

According to this plan there was to be no more government

by the people, and the very freedom for which they had come to America was to be taken away from them. The Lords Proprietors were very proud of their Fundamental Constitutions, but the people would not submit to the new plan. It caused nothing but trouble; and finally the proprietors were compelled to give it up and to adopt a simpler plan, more like the first government of Albemarle.

For several years each one of the two colonies on the Albemarle and the Ashley were spoken of as Carolina, but about 1690 the custom arose of calling the former North Carolina, the latter South Carolina. Until 1710 there was only one governor. He resided in South Carolina, at Charles Town, and conducted his business in North Carolina through a deputy governor. Finally, in 1710, Edward Hyde, a cousin of Queen Anne, was appointed governor of North Carolina with his residence in Chowan County, near Edenton. From that time on the governments of North Carolina and South Carolina were always distinct.

Many of the governors appointed by the proprietors turned out to be bad men and the people frequently rebelled against them and drove them out of office. Troubles were also caused by certain laws, called "Navigation Laws." These laws, which were passed by the British Parliament, interfered with the trade of the colonies. The people declared these laws to be unjust and refused to obey them. When the governor of North Carolina tried to enforce the navigation laws the people in the counties along Albemarle Sound revolted, overthrew him, set up John Culpepper as governor, and ruled according to their own wishes. This is known as Culpepper's Rebellion.

In both colonies the people were often compelled to fight the pirates who swarmed on the coast and the Indians who swarmed the interior. In these contests the two colonies helped each other. South Carolina had also to defend herself against the Spaniards of Florida, who were anxious to destroy the English settlement at Charles Town. The Lords Proprietors gave the colonists no

aid in these struggles, but left them to fight their battles alone. Because of their frequent revolts against bad governors and unjust laws, the early Carolinians have been denounced as a lawless people; but this is unjust to them. Their resistance was not against just and lawful rule, but against tyranny and oppression. In their battles for liberty two of their best leaders were Edward Moseley of North Carolina, and James Moore of South Carolina.

Edward Moseley came to North Carolina about the year 1704 and began at once to take part in public affairs. He soon became the most trusted leader of the people, and during the next forty years served them in nearly every important office. He was frequently a member of the Assembly, of which he was elected speaker four times, and served also as chief justice, and as a member of the governor's council. He was the leader in demanding the punishment of the pirates, was one of the commissioners who ran the boundary line between North Carolina and Virginia, and was one of the leaders in planting the settlement on the Cape Fear River. He believed in the right of the people to govern themselves and led them in many of their contests for self-government.

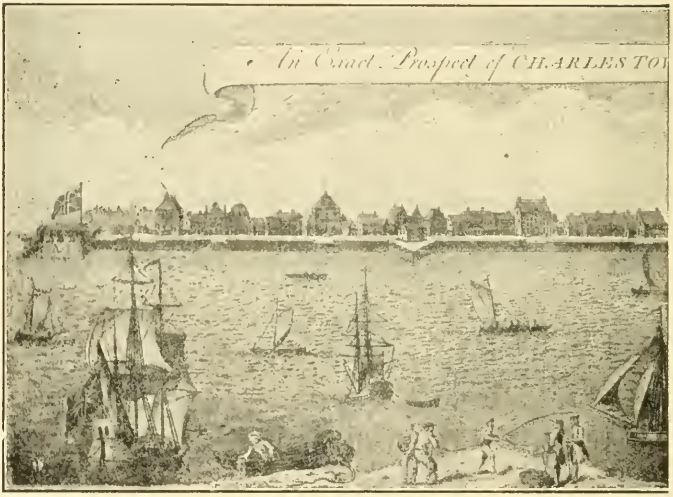
A QUAKER.

In 1708 Moseley made a strong stand for the liberties of the people. A powerful party in the colony was making an effort to deprive the Quakers, who formed a considerable portion of the population, of their right to hold office. Moseley was not a Quaker, but he believed in keeping religious affairs out of politics, and in the right of the people to govern themselves. In this contest he became the leader of the Quaker party. His party set up Thomas Cary for governor; the other party set up William Glover. The contest grew so bitter that for a time it seemed as if there would be civil war over it.

Finally both parties agreed to let the Assembly decide the dispute. An election was held for members of the Assembly and Moseley led his party to victory. Under Moseley's leadership the affairs of the colony prospered, but when Edward Hyde came as governor in 1710, he took sides against Moseley and Cary. Then trouble again broke out. Moseley's enemies were eager to punish him for the part he had taken against them, and Governor Hyde was ready to help them. Then Moseley and Cary flew to arms to defend their rights, but the governor of Virginia sent aid to Governor Hyde, and rather than cause civil war in the province, Moseley gave up the contest and Cary fled from the province. Each side was now anxious for peace, so the rebels were pardoned, and Cary's Rebellion came to an end. Moseley was never punished, as the people loved and trusted him.

The whites stopped their quarrels none too soon. The Tuscarora Indians who lived by the Neuse River had seen the division among the whites and had decided to strike a blow that would destroy the colony. Under their chief, Hancock, they fell upon the settlers, September 22, 1711, and slew many men, women, and children. Governor Hyde appealed to South Carolina for aid, and that colony sent an army, under Colonel John Barnwell, against the Tuscaroras. Barnwell defeated the Indians in two great battles near New Bern and Snow Hill. The Tuscaroras then begged for peace and Barnwell granted it in order to save the lives of some whites whom the Indians had captured. Some of the North Carolina leaders criticised Barnwell severely, saying that he ought to have destroyed the Indians before bringing the war to a close. But Edward Moseley declared that Barnwell was right and defended his action. Barnwell then returned to South Carolina, where on account of his victories he was afterwards called "Tuscarora John."

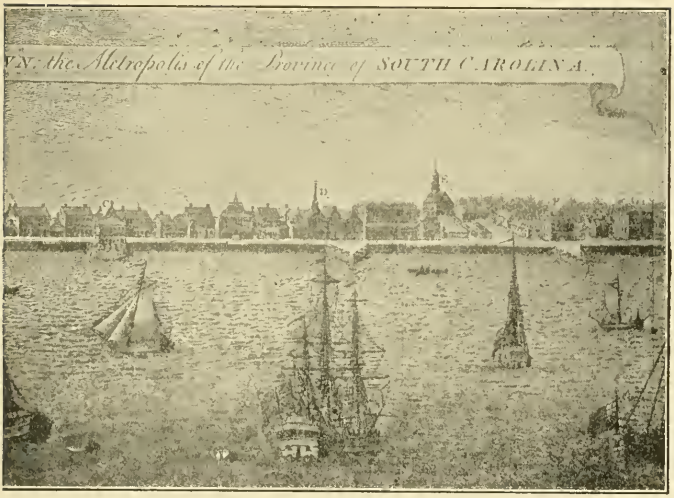
In 1713 the Tuscaroras renewed the war, and North Carolina again appealed to South Carolina for aid. This time Colonel James Moore from South Carolina led an army of forty whites



A VIEW OF CHARLES TOWN, FROM AN

and eight hundred Indians against the Tuscaroras. Moore was joined by the North Carolina forces, and the troops of the two colonies attacked the Indian leader, Hancock, in his fort at Nohoroco, near where Snow Hill is now. It was the greatest battle that had ever been fought in the colony against Indians. Hancock was badly defeated, and he was forced to surrender. Many of his warriors were killed, eight hundred of them were captured. This blow broke the power of the Tuscaroras in North Carolina and compelled them to leave the province. They joined their kinsmen, the Five Nations, in New York. The Indians were never again strong enough to trouble the settlers in Eastern Carolina.

Two years later (1715) North Carolina had a chance to return the aid she had received from South Carolina. The troops of the two colonies fought together under Colonel James Moore to save South Carolina. This was with the Yemassee, a powerful



ENGRAVING MADE IN LONDON ABOUT 1765.

tribe of Indians who dwelt along the Savannah River. The Spaniards of Florida supplied them with arms and persuaded them to make war on the English. All the other Indian tribes in South Carolina promised to aid them. The attack was made early in the morning, April 15, 1715, and in a short time many men, women, and children were slain. As quickly as possible Governor Craven of South Carolina led his soldiers against the Indians, and defeated them in a bloody battle.

But this did not end the war, and both sides got ready for a still fiercer struggle. Governor Craven raised an army of about 1,000 men, appointed Colonel James Moore lieutenant general, and sent messengers into North Carolina asking for aid. North Carolina promptly responded, sending a small force under the command of Colonel Maurice Moore, a brother of General James Moore. Near the close of the year 1715 these two forces met the Indians near the Edisto River, defeated them, drove them across the Savannah

River into the Spanish territory, and thus cleared South Carolina of the enemy. The South Carolina legislature sent for Colonel Maurice Moore, and thanked him and his brave North Carolinians for their timely aid.

James Moore and Maurice Moore were the sons of James Moore, who had been governor of South Carolina in 1700. When James Moore led the South Carolina troops against the Tuscaroras in North Carolina in 1713, Maurice Moore was an officer in his army. After the victory over Hancock, Maurice Moore decided to stay in North Carolina, where he soon became one of the leading men of the province. But James Moore returned to South Carolina, where his services against the Yemassee Indians (1715) made him so popular that four years later the people turned to him to lead them in one of the most important events in their history.

The people of South Carolina had long been dissatisfied with the rule of the Lords Proprietors. In their terrible struggles against the Spaniards and the Indians the proprietors had left them to fight their battles alone. Yet after the Indians had been driven out the proprietors demanded higher rents and required the people to pay for the land which they themselves had gained by conquering the savages. The proprietors also attempted to make laws for the colony without the consent of the people. Aroused by these oppressive measures the people, in 1719, determined to throw off the rule of the proprietors.

A great meeting, called the Convention of the People, was held at Charles Town, December 21, 1719. This convention declared the rule of the proprietors at an end, displaced the proprietors' governor, Robert Johnson, and elected James Moore governor. At the same time a messenger was sent to England to request the king to take the colony under his protection. While waiting for his reply to this request, James Moore was elected governor by the convention. He served from 1719 to 1721, and under his rule South Carolina was a self-governing colony. Finally the king approved the action of the people, declared that the proprietors

had lost their right to rule the colony, and sent out Sir Francis Nicholson to govern in the name of the king. It was soon after the arrival of the new governor that James Moore died, February 17, 1722, after having served his colony ably in many of her most important crises.

The people of North Carolina also were tired of the rule of the proprietors and were anxious that the king should take them under his protection. So they watched the affairs in South Carolina with great interest and were delighted when the king decided against the proprietors. The proprietors themselves had not received the wealth from their colonies which they expected, so they were willing to sell their rights, and in 1728 the king agreed to buy both colonies from them.

THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

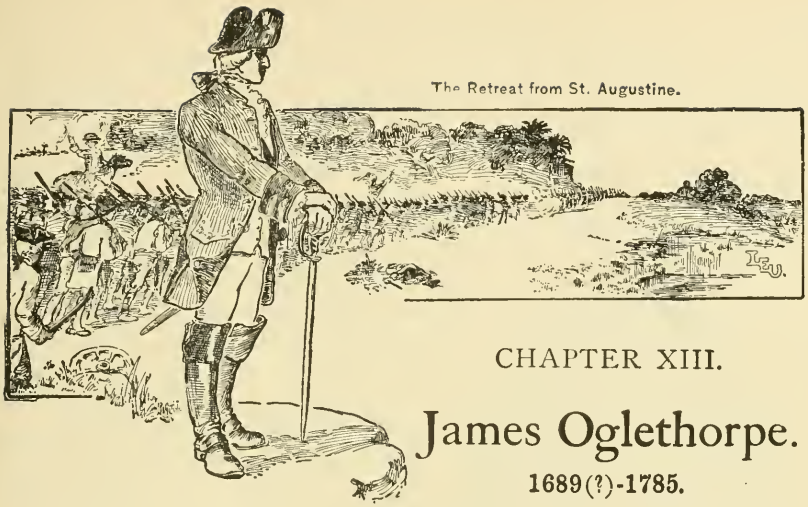
One of the first acts of the king, after buying North Carolina, was to order the boundary line to be run between that colony and Virginia. Each colony selected commissioners for this diffi-

cult task. The leading commissioner of North Carolina was Edward Moseley. The line which he and the other commissioners ran in 1728 still remains the line between North Carolina and Virginia. Moseley continued to be the leading man in North Carolina affairs until his death in 1749.

The two Carolinas after becoming royal colonies entered upon an era of prosperity. Each increased rapidly in wealth and population. Charles Town became the wealthiest and largest city in the South; and North Carolina became the fourth most populous English colony in America. When the Revolution came North Carolina and South Carolina were among the first to form themselves into free and independent States.

Geography Study. *Map of North and South Carolina.* Find Albemarle Sound and Pamlico Sound. Find the Neuse River; the Cape Fear River. Locate Edenton, N. C., New Bern, N. C., Wilmington, N. C. Find Port Royal, S. C., Charleston, S. C.

Review Questions. Where and by whom were the first settlements made in North Carolina? What state grew out of the Albemarle settlement? Who was its first governor? When and where was the next colony planted in Carolina? Give an account of the founding of Charles Town. What state has grown from that settlement? What plan did the Lords Proprietors prepare? How did the people like it, and why? When did Carolina become separated into North Carolina and South Carolina? What early troubles did the people have? What was Culpepper's Rebellion? Give an account of Moseley's services. Give an account of Cary's Rebellion. What aid did that colony receive from South Carolina? How did North Carolina return the aid given her? Give an account of the Yemassee war. What causes of dissatisfaction did South Carolina have against the Lords Proprietors? Whom did they elect governor? What effect did their action have in North Carolina?



The Retreat from St. Augustine.

CHAPTER XIII.

James Oglethorpe.

1689(?)-1785.

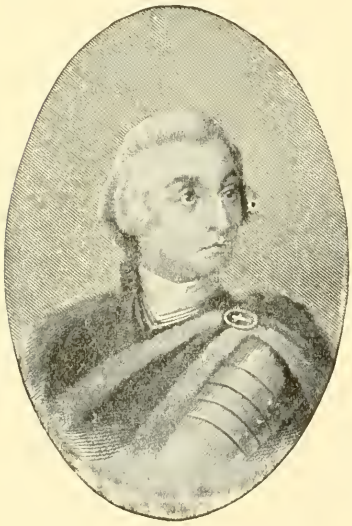
GEORGIA was the last of the thirteen colonies to be settled. Its settlement was due to the noble impulses of James Oglethorpe (Ōgl'thôrp).

Oglethorpe was an English gentleman of noble birth, and of great wealth, having inherited a large estate. After receiving a good education, at Corpus Christi College, Oxford, he entered the English army and fought in some bloody wars on the continent of Europe. As a soldier he was brave, courageous and daring, and always did his duty. When his military life was over, he returned to England and was elected a member of Parliament, in which body he sat for thirty-two years.

Oglethorpe wished to be a useful man. As a member of Parliament he was constantly thinking how he could do something to help the poor and the afflicted. In those days a man who could not pay his debts was thrown into a prison. Oglethorpe conceived the plan of releasing from prison the most deserving of these debtors and of settling them in America. The colony was to be just north of Florida, and would be a barrier between the

people of South Carolina and the Spaniards in Florida, who did not wish the English to settle in America.

He made known his plan to the people of England, and aroused sentiment in favor of it, securing the support of some of the most distinguished men in that country. Parliament granted a large strip of land lying between South Carolina and Florida, and chartered a company to make a settlement. The House of Commons voted £10,000 ($50,000) for the undertaking, and about £25,000 ($125,000) was raised by subscription. The enterprise being a benevolent one, it was provided that no officer should receive a salary. The new colony was to be called Georgia in honor of King George II.



JAMES OGLETHORPE.

Oglethorpe was so interested in the plan that he determined to go to America himself, and was elected by the trustees as governor of the colony. In November, 1732, he sailed from England in a little vessel known as the *Ann*. There were on board thirty-five families who were provided with all sorts of tools for work. In January, 1733, they sailed up the Savannah River and landed where the city of Savannah now stands. On the following Sunday the people met in a body to return thanks to God for their safe arrival. At once the settlers went to work to cut down trees, to clear the forests, and to build houses. Realizing that the colonists needed friends, Oglethorpe made a treaty of peace with the Indians.

At first the colony prospered; but the debtors who came

over were, in many respects, a lazy set. Many of them had been imprisoned in England because they were too lazy to work to pay their debts, or had spent their money in drinking. The trustees, in establishing the colony, had hoped to prevent the debtors from resuming their former habits of life. To prevent drinking, the sale of whisky and other strong drinks was prohibited in the colony. In order that industry might be encouraged it was thought best that each settler should do his own work, and therefore slavery was not to exist in the colony. In spite of these wholesome prohibitions we find that in a little while the colonists were bringing slaves and whisky into Georgia.

Although the debtors did not prove to be good settlers, Georgia received excellent colonists in the German Protestants who came and settled the town of Ebenezer. In the same year Augusta was founded, and two years later some Scotch Highlanders settled Frederica. The Germans and the Highlanders greatly aided the growth of the colony.

Every effort was made to promote religion in the colony. At that time the three great preachers of England were George Whitefield, Charles Wesley, and his brother, John Wesley, who was the founder of the Methodist Church. The Wesley brothers came to Georgia and preached the gospel, not only to the settlers, but also to the Indians. Upon their return to England, Whitefield came over and established an orphan asylum at Savannah, and converted many of the people.

While Oglethorpe was working to build up his colony, the Spaniards in Florida were viewing with much fear the English settlement upon the Savannah River. Oglethorpe soon found out that they were preparing to destroy the English colony. He, therefore, determined to invade Florida, and to cripple the Spaniards before they could attack Georgia. He laid siege to St. Augustine, the main city of Florida, but was unsuccessful in his attempt. Seeing that he could not capture the city, he sent

the soldiers off ahead of him and was the last to retreat. He was advised to go with the soldiers, but answered, "No, I will not stir a foot till I see every one of my men marched off before me." The Spaniards in return made an attempt to conquer Georgia, but they were defeated by Oglethorpe and forced back to Florida.

Shortly after this Oglethorpe was called to England to answer the charge of bad management of the war against Spain in Florida. He was tried by court martial, and was honorably acquitted. There was not one word of truth in the charges against him.

General Oglethorpe's connection with Georgia came to an end at this time. He had made the colony, and for its sake he had sacrificed all of his own personal interests. His love for humanity had led him to do what he could for the poor and oppressed. Those whom he had helped never showed proper gratitude for his services, but to-day, as we look back upon his undertaking, we are bound to commend him. He was a man of broad and liberal views, and a real lover of his fellow-men.

Oglethorpe lived forty years longer, dying at the ripe old age of ninety-six. Georgia had become a state before his death; the American Revolution had been fought, and the United States had been formed.

It is very interesting to know that at the outbreak of the Revolutionary War, Oglethorpe was one of the leading generals in the English army, and that he was asked by the king to take charge of the army to subdue the American colonies. Oglethorpe knew the Americans well, so he told the king that their obedience could not be secured by arms, but only by giving them justice, and that he could not take command of the English forces unless the king would authorize him to assure the colonies that their rights would be recognized. The king refused to agree to this, and Oglethorpe promptly declined

to lead the English armies in the war against the American colonies.

When the Revolutionary War had closed, and peace had been made with the mother country, John Adams of Mas-

JOHN WESLEY TEACHING THE INDIANS.

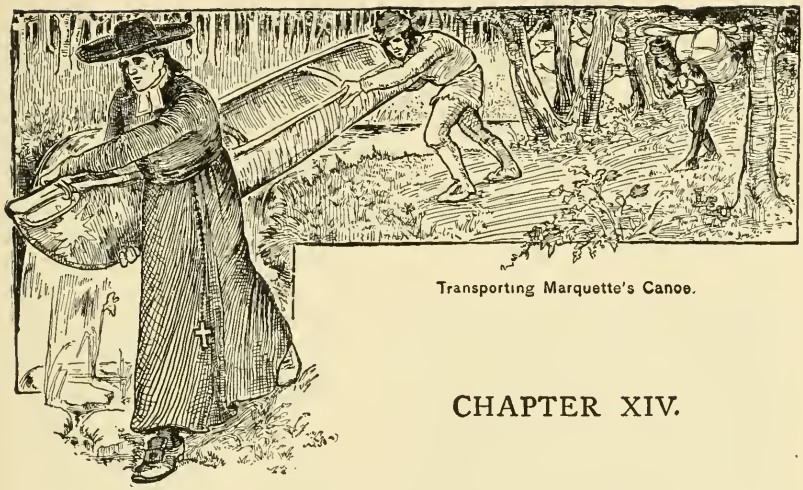
sachusetts was sent as our first minister to England. He had scarcely arrived in London before General Oglethorpe called upon him. The noble old general expressed his regard for America, and his regret that there had been any misunderstanding between England and her colonies. He assured Adams of his delight that the war was over, and expressed the hope that the two countries would live in peace ever afterwards.

We should never cease to honor the name of Oglethorpe, the founder of Georgia, the friend of the poor and oppressed, and the advocate of American rights.

Geography Study. *Map of the South Atlantic States.* Find Georgia. What are its chief rivers and towns? Find Savannah, Augusta, Ebenezer and Frederica. What is the capital of Georgia? Which is the larger state, Georgia or Florida?

Review Questions. Which was the last of the thirteen colonies to be founded? Give an account of Oglethorpe's early life. How long was he in Parliament? What plan did he conceive for the debtors? How were debtors treated in those days? Why was it a good thing to have a colony between South Carolina and Florida? Tell of the grant for the new colony. Tell of the first settlement in Georgia. How did Oglethorpe exert himself for the good of the colony? What two things were prohibited in Georgia? What good settlers came to Georgia, and what towns were built? Tell of the preachers who visited Georgia. Tell of the war between Oglethorpe and the Spaniards. Why did Oglethorpe return to England? Tell of his life in England. What stand did he take with regard to the American Revolution? What did he say to John Adams after the war was over? Why should we honor Oglethorpe? Write a composition on the character of Oglethorpe.

A SPANISH SHIP ON THE FLORIDA COAST.



Transporting Marquette's Canoe.

CHAPTER XIV.

Marquette and La Salle.

1637-1675. **1643-1687.**

WE have now heard how the thirteen colonies along the Atlantic shores were established by the English. While England was obtaining the whole Atlantic coast, France had not been inactive beyond the Alleghany Mountains. The region of the Great Lakes and the Mississippi River had been explored by two men who saw that a great French empire could be built up in North America. These men were Marquette (Mär-kĕt') and La Salle (Lä Säl), and they prepared the way for the French claim to the valleys of the Mississippi and St. Lawrence rivers.

As early as 1608, Champlain had sailed up the St. Lawrence and had established a French colony at Quebec. From this as a center, the French had pushed into the woods of Canada, had gone to the Great Lakes, and had engaged in a large fur trade with the Indians. They exchanged whisky and firearms for furs.

Many French priests came to Canada, or New France, as it was then called. They lived among the native tribes, learn-

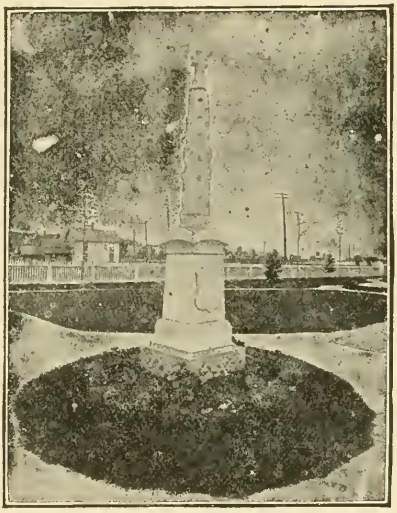
ing to speak their language, and tried to convert them to Christianity.

One of the best known of these priests was Father Marquette, who took up his abode near the Great Lakes. From the Indians he had many accounts of the great river which the Indians called the Mississippi, and he decided to find and explore it. In May, 1673, Marquette, with Joliet (Zhō-lyā′) and five other Frenchmen, started in two canoes on a journey of exploration. They took with them a small quantity of Indian corn and some smoked venison. Passing through the Lakes, they entered what is now known as Fox River, which they explored to its source. There they came to an Indian village, where Marquette preached to the Indians, many of whom were converted. The Indians were kind to Marquette, and told him of the great dangers of the Mississippi River, but still Marquette insisted on entering that river. Then the Indians assisted him in transporting his boat from the Fox River across some marshes and small lakes until he reached the Wisconsin River, which flows into the Mississippi. Marquette pursued his journey down the Wisconsin into the Mississippi and then down the Mississippi beyond the Missouri, as far south as the mouth of the Arkansas River. He then turned back, and, after many months of absence, reached his home on the Great Lakes. In this journey Marquette had traveled twenty-five hundred miles. He concluded that the Mississippi emptied into the Gulf of Mexico.

Marquette was greatly pleased with the fertility of the country through which the Mississippi flowed. The breadth and depth of the river were a great surprise to him, and its length seemed marvelous. The forests and prairies which he saw in his journey were beautiful, and the Indians were peaceful and kind. At once he advised the French to occupy this fertile territory.

Two years later Marquette suddenly died while he was on a missionary journey to some Indians in the present State of

Illinois. As he was traveling one day up a small stream in his canoe, he suddenly went ashore, built an altar and said mass. He then requested his two companions, who remained in the canoe, to leave him alone for half an hour, while he meditated in the woods at a short distance from the river. When the time had passed and he did not return, the men went to seek him, and found him dead. The river on whose banks his death occurred is to this day known as the Marquette.



MARQUETTE'S GRAVE.

Though Marquette never reached the mouth of the Mississippi, the report of his voyage was spread abroad in Canada. One man then residing in Canada saw what the possession of the Mississippi Valley would mean to France, and determined to secure it for his country. This was Robert, Cavalier de La Salle, usually known as La Salle.

La Salle came to Canada about the year 1667. He was born in the Province of Normandy in France, and was probably a man of noble birth. For twelve years he was in a Jesuit Seminary, and it was expected that he would become a priest. He preferred, however, to come to America as an explorer and trader.

In Canada, he acquired much wealth by his trade with the Indians, from whom he bought beaver skins and other furs in exchange for clothing and firearms. His trade carried him to the shores of the Great Lakes, because around these lakes lived

the Indians who had collected the best furs. While trading among the Indians along the Great Lakes, it occurred to La Salle that the great Mississippi, a part of which Marquette had explored, might be the longed-for western route to China and Japan. At the same time he conceived the plan of seizing for France the Mississippi with all the lands drained by it. He applied to the King of France for permission to explore the river, and to make settlements along its banks. The permission was gladly granted, and the king even made him a nobleman. He was likewise made governor of all the lands lying around Fort Frontenac on Lake Ontario, and was instructed to encourage settlements in that region.

La Salle's first explorations were made along the Great Lakes. He prepared for his undertaking by building a vessel on the shores of Lake Erie. There were no shipyards in those days, and it was, therefore, a difficult task for La Salle and those who helped him, to build a ship. But after months of hard labor, they launched a boat of sixty tons burden. This was the first real vessel to sail upon the Great Lakes. With hope and confidence La Salle sailed through Lake Erie and entered Lake Huron. A tempest arose and his vessel was nearly destroyed, but he succeeded in reaching the Island of Mackinac. When La Salle landed, the Indians looked upon him with wonder. They had never seen such a ship before, and they called it the great wooden canoe. The ship had been fitted out with cannon, which the Indians, seeing for the first time, looked upon with amazement. La Salle wished to show the Indians how great he was, so he clothed himself in a scarlet cloak embroidered in gold and lace, and, with some of his followers, paid a visit to them. They received him kindly, and from them he procured provisions for the continuance of his journey.

La Salle passed through Lake Michigan, and reached the Miami River, on the banks of which he built a fort. In the meantime his ship had been destroyed by a storm on Lake

Michigan, and for some time La Salle suffered from want of food; but finally he succeeded in getting supplies, and continued his journey down the Illinois River until he reached Lake Peoria.

Wherever he went, the Indians stood in fear of him. They thought that he came to seize and to destroy their hunting grounds. La Salle explained to them that he was only trying to find the mouth of the great river, and that he had come to preach the gospel to them, and to furnish them with the comforts of life. He built a fort on Lake Peoria, but he offered to pay the Indians for the land with such things as he had in his possession. This satisfied the Indians, and they swore that they would be friends of the French.

THE CHEVALIER DE LA SALLE.

Finally La Salle started on his journey down the Mississippi. Hennepin, who was one of his companions, was sent up the river to find its source, while La Salle was to go down the river to find its mouth. Hennepin went up the river, passed the present site of Minneapolis at the mouth of the Wisconsin, where Father Marquette's voyage down the Mississippi had been begun, discovered the falls which he called St. Anthony, and returned to Canada.

La Salle was unable to complete his journey, because of lack of supplies. Many people in Canada were jealous of him. His followers deserted him, and he had to return to Canada; but his perseverance never forsook him, and in a short while he returned to the Mississippi with the determination to sail down that great river with a number of small canoes. After six weeks spent in making the necessary arrangements, he set forth with fifty-four select men, twenty-three Frenchmen and thirty-one Indians.

With them were ten Indian women to do the cooking and other work.

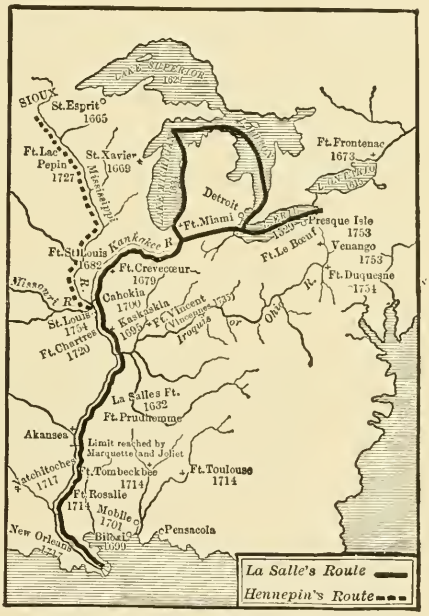
The voyage was a dangerous one. As they passed down the river exploring its banks, they met with many Indian tribes, some of whom were friendly, while others were hostile. After several months of hardships the mouth of the Mississippi was reached. La Salle set up a cross on which he placed the arms of France and these words, "Louis the Great, King of France and Navarre, reigns; the 9th of April, 1682." All the men were under arms. After singing a hymn of thanksgiving they fired their muskets and shouted, "Long live the King!" These ceremonies concluded, La Salle took possession for France of all the territory drained by the Mississippi River. This country was called Louisiana in honor of King Louis XIV. of France.

KING LOUIS XIV.

La Salle returned to Canada as quickly as possible and sailed for France. He was received at the French court with great respect. He told the king of his explorations down the Mississippi, and urged that the Mississippi valley be settled by the French before the English claimed it. La Salle wanted the French to occupy the vast territory from the mouth of the Mississippi to the mouth of the St. Lawrence. Had this been done, France would have controlled more than half of North America, and the English would have been confined to the seacoast east of the Appalachian Mountains.

The French king saw that La Salle's plan, if carried out, would greatly increase the power of France in the New World, so he gave to La Salle a commission to return to Louisiana, and to establish a French colony at the mouth of the Mississippi.

In 1686 La Salle sailed from France with four vessels. When he reached the Gulf of Mexico he lost his way, passed the Mississippi, and touched upon the coast of Texas. Here he planted a colony, thinking that he was not far from the mouth of the Mississippi. He undertook several expeditions to find the Mississippi, but failed in all. The Indians were very hostile and killed many of the colonists. Then the French colonists murmured against La Salle, and claimed that he had led them into a wilderness to die. They became very desperate, for they were without food supplies, and many of them died from a terrible fever, worse than that which had killed the early settlers at Jamestown.



THE EXPLORATIONS OF LA SALLE AND HENNEPIN.

La Salle, realizing the perils of the situation, determined to seek the mouth of the Mississippi and to go to Canada for help. He started on his journey accompanied by a few men. A portion of the party was jealous of him and a plan was formed to kill him. One of the conspirators hid in high grass and, as La Salle was passing by, he discharged his gun and shot him through the head. In less than an hour La Salle died, pressing the hand of his friend, Father Anastace, who was standing by his side when he was shot. This good Catholic dug a grave and buried the explorer, erecting a cross over the spot

"Thus perished," said he, "our wise conductor, constant in adversities, intrepid, generous, engaging, adroit, skillful, and capable of anything. He who, during a period of twenty years, had softened the fierce temper of a vast number of savage nations, was massacred by his own people, whom he had loaded with benefits. He died in the vigor of his life, in the midst of his career and labors without the consolation of having seen their results."

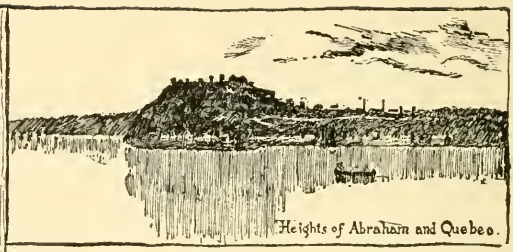
La Salle's death was a great blow to France. In a few years the French people realized that he had planned well, and, carrying out his ideas, they built (1699) a town called Biloxi in what is now the southern part of the state of Mississippi, and a little later (1718) they settled New Orleans, now the largest city in the South.

The English east of the Alleghanies were jealous of the growing power of the French in the Mississippi valley. La Salle had been wise enough to see that some day the English would want this territory, and he had hoped to plant the French in that region in such numbers that the English would not be able to dislodge them. Had La Salle's plan been fully carried out, the history of the United States might have been quite different, but too few of the French went into the Mississippi valley to get full control of it. La Salle had planned well, but the French profited too slowly by his advice. France has never honored him according to his worth.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States and Canada.* Trace the Alleghany Mountains. Name the states drained by the Mississippi River. What territory is drained by the St. Lawrence River? Find the Great Lakes, Fox River, Wisconsin River, Illinois River, Marquette River, St. Anthony's Falls, Arkansas River, Lake Peoria, Miami River and New Orleans. Tell what states touch the Mississippi River.

Review Questions. What was the work of Champlain? What did many Catholic priests do in New France? Tell of Father Marquette

among the Indians. Describe his voyage down the Mississippi. What did Marquette think of the country? Tell of his death. Who was La Salle? Tell of his life among the Indians. What did he think about the Mississippi River? What permission did he get from the king? Tell of La Salle on the Great Lakes. How did La Salle try to impress the Indians? Why was he so long starting on his journey down the Mississippi? Describe the voyage to the mouth of the Mississippi. Where did Hennepin go? Tell of the ceremonies at the mouth of the Mississippi River. What did La Salle do in France? Tell of his colony. What was the fate of La Salle? What did Father Anastace say of La Salle? Tell of the settlements in the Mississippi valley. Write a composition telling what you think of La Salle.



CHAPTER XV.

James Wolfe.

1727-1759.

SHORTLY after the death of La Salle, it was evident to any farseeing Frenchman or Englishman that at some day a conflict would come between France and England for the possession of North America. England and France entered upon a series of wars in Europe which lasted for more than a hundred years, and soon the colonies became involved. The last of these wars was known in this country as the French and Indian war, and continued from 1754 to 1763.

The French had built forts along the Mississippi and Ohio rivers, with the view of connecting the Mississippi valley with the St. Lawrence valley. Where Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, now stands, they built Fort Duquesne (Dü-kān'). The English determined to drive them from this position, and sent General Braddock to America at the head of a strong body of troops, with which he was to take this fort. Braddock set out from Alexandria, Virginia, on his march, and with him was George Washington, then a very young man. Washington explained to Braddock the way in which the French and their Indian allies fought, but Braddock would take no advice. As a result of his ignorance and conduct, when Braddock was nearing Fort Duquesne, his army was sur-

prised and defeated, and he himself was killed. The English met with like defeats in New York and at other points.

Just at this time, the great William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, became prime minister of England. Pitt determined to drive the French out of North America. He knew that this could be done only by taking the stronghold of the French, the great city of Quebec in Canada. For this daring undertaking, he selected as leader of the English army a young man only thirty-two years of age. This was James Wolfe.

WILLIAM PITT.

Wolfe was born in 1727. His father was Lieutenant General Edward Wolfe of the English army. He was carefully trained at home by his loving mother, and was then sent to a private school. Hardly had Wolfe begun his studies, when war broke out between England and France. Wolfe was only thirteen years of age, but he asked permission to join the army. His request was granted, and two years later he was made second lieutenant in his father's regiment. He was then a boy of only fifteen years, but his manly bearing, tall figure and powdered hair made him appear much older. He was assigned to service in the English army which was stationed on the continent of Europe, and there gave promise of being a great soldier.

Step by step he rose in the army. He was made major, then lieutenant colonel, then colonel, and when only thirty-one years of age, was raised to the rank of brigadier general. While he was thus gaining honor as a soldier, he remained a loving son, and never forgot his mother. He wrote to her

frequently, telling her of his experiences in the army, and ever declaring his love and devotion for her. There is no example in history of an active and busy soldier who treated his mother with greater respect and love. He always thought of her happiness, and on one occasion wrote her, "My greatest ambition is to deserve your esteem."

Wolfe was always brave and daring, and would never stoop to do a mean thing. He fought in the battle of Culloden against the Highlanders of Scotland, who had rebelled against the English government. There is a beautiful story told of an occurrence at the close of the battle, as Wolfe was riding over the field with the Duke of Cumberland, the commander-in-chief of the English army. They observed a Highlander who, though severely wounded, was able to sit up and, while leaning on his arm, seemed to smile defiance on the English victors. "Wolfe," said the Duke, "shoot me that Highland scoundrel, who thus dares to look on us with such contempt and insolence." Wolfe is said to have replied, "My commission is at your royal highness's disposal, but I never can consent to kill a defenceless, wounded soldier." This story indicates the noble character of James Wolfe.

Several years after this, the English tried to capture the town of Rochefort in France. The attempt was unsuccessful. The English government investigated the failure, and found out that the town could easily have been taken, if the English general in charge had followed the advice given by Wolfe. This at once made Wolfe prominent in the eyes of William Pitt, the prime minister.

Shortly after this, Pitt began his operations in America against the French. Major General Amherst was appointed to command the forces in America, and Wolfe was made brigadier general under him. According to the plan of the campaign, the English were to seize Louisburg on the island of Cape Breton. When

the English troops attempted to land on the island, they found the shores so well defended that it seemed as if the attempt would have to be abandoned. Wolfe, however, was determined to succeed. He ran his boat towards the shore, sprang into the water and scrambled over rocks until he reached the land. This so encouraged his men, that they followed him and climbed a height of about twenty feet, attacked the French with their bayonets and put them to flight. Shortly after this Louisburg was taken mainly through the efforts of Wolfe. For this he is often spoken of as the Hero of Louisburg. He advised Amherst to pass up the St. Lawrence River, and to attack Quebec, but Amherst thought that this would be too hazardous, and decided to return to England.

Soon after Wolfe had reached England, he received a letter from the great William Pitt asking him to come to London. Much to his surprise, Pitt informed him of a proposed attack on Quebec, and asked him to take charge of the army. Wolfe was only thirty-two years old, but Pitt raised him to the rank of major general. This was a great honor for so young a man. Wolfe was in very delicate health. A sea voyage always made him desperately ill, and he feared that he could not endure the hardships of a campaign in America. In addition to his ill-health, there were other reasons why he did not wish to undertake this campaign. His father was old and feeble and could live but a short while. His mother was also growing old. Moreover, Wolfe was engaged to a young lady, Miss Lowther, and he had hoped, on returning from Louisburg, that he might be allowed to remain in England long enough to make her his bride. But to Wolfe, the call of his country was more than love of ease, health, parents or sweetheart; and when Pitt told him that England needed his services, he felt compelled to undertake the capture of Quebec.

After a difficult voyage, Quebec was reached. The city is

situated on a hill about three hundred feet above the river. Opposed to Wolfe was the great French general, the Marquis de Montcalm. The lower town and the walls could probably be taken by assault, but it seemed almost impossible to capture the city upon the heights. Scarcely had Wolfe begun the siege, before he found that to take Quebec, defended by such a general as Montcalm, would be a terrible task. To add to the difficulties, Wolfe was taken seriously ill with a slow fever. But he was

THE CITADEL OF QUEBEC.

a man of wonderful perseverance and industry, and, though ill, he directed every attack and movement. For two months and a half the siege continued and seemed no nearer the end than at the beginning. Even Wolfe became discouraged and thought that he would have to give up all hope of taking the city. Then it was that a desperate plan was conceived.

To the west of Quebec are the Heights of Abraham, two hundred and fifty feet above the river. Believing that no one could climb these steep and rocky cliffs, Montcalm had not fortified them. Only a few pickets had been placed on their edge. Wolfe

determined to try a night attack against these heights with the hope of reaching their summit and of drawing up his army upon the Plains of Abraham.

On the day before the attack was made, Wolfe was very ill; but he continued his preparations, saying: "While a man is able to do his duty, and can stand and hold his arms, it is infamous to retire." So in spite of his weakness, he persevered. Feeling that the struggle would cost him his life, he made his will and sent for his friend, Jervis. He took from his bosom the picture of his sweetheart, and gave it to his friend with the request that, in case of his death, it should be returned to her.

On the night of the twelfth of September, 1759, the boats of the English were lowered from the ships and the soldiers entered them. Silently they glided up the river and passed the batteries of Quebec, without being discovered. The night was calm and dark. There was a deathlike stillness in the boats. Wolfe sat in the foremost one; and, as they moved along, he softly repeated Gray's Elegy to his friend, Jervis. After he had repeated the lines:

> "The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
> And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
> Await alike the inevitable hour:
> The paths of glory lead but to the grave,"

he stopped and said, "I would rather be the author of that poem than take Quebec."

The little boats, lighted by a few stars, went on till a cove in the river, now known as Wolfe's Cove, was reached. Here the troops silently landed. The precipice was steep, and two men could hardly ascend it abreast. The troops began to climb the cliffs as cautiously as possible. When they were about half way up, a picket challenged them in French, asking, "Who goes there?" An English captain who spoke French instantly re-

plied, "The French." The sentinel then inquired, "What regiment?" and the captain replied, "The Queen's." The Frenchman was deceived, and the English passed on, and reached the top of the heights. Imagine Wolfe's joy, when, in the morning, he found himself with his army on the Plains of Abraham.

THE DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE.

When Montcalm, the French general, was informed that the English were on the heights, he refused to believe it, but when the report came that it was certainly true, he at once attacked the English forces. At about eight o'clock the battle began. The French rushed upon the English, who advanced to meet the charge. Wolfe led his men and forbade them to fire until the French were within forty yards. His bright uniform rendered him very con-

spicuous. One of the French soldiers singled him out and shot him. Though dangerously wounded, he ordered his soldiers to charge, and everywhere the French were driven back. Again Wolfe was shot and was no longer able to stand. To an officer near him he said, "Support me. Let not my brave soldiers see me drop. The day is ours. Keep it." Wolfe was then borne from the field. One of the officers proposed to send for the surgeon, but Wolfe replied, "It is needless. It's all over with me." As he lay upon the ground almost lifeless, the cry was heard, "They run! They run!" Like one aroused from a heavy sleep, Wolfe said, "Who, who run?" An officer answered, "The enemy, sir—they give way everywhere." Wolfe then turned upon his side, and his dying words were, "Now God be praised. I die in peace."

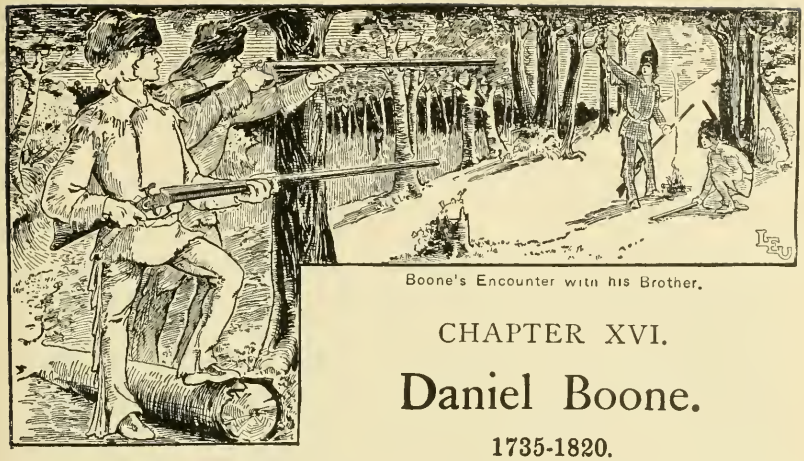
No man ever had a more glorious death. When Wolfe's great victory and death were known in England, the people, though thrilled with joy at the fall of Quebec, were bowed with sorrow because of the death of Wolfe who had fallen in the hour of triumph. The English did not forget him, but raised monuments in his memory in various parts of England. And well might they honor their great general, for he was also a true and noble man. To his mother he was ever dutiful and affectionate; to his sweetheart, constant; to his friends, sincere; and to his country, faithful even unto death.

The victory of Quebec marked the destruction of the power of France in America. Four years later peace was signed between England and France. France gave to England Canada and all her possessions east of the Mississippi; to Spain, her possessions west of that river. Spain yielded Florida to England. Thus England came into possession of two-thirds of the continent of North America.

Geography Study. *Maps of the United States and Canada.* Find Pittsburg (Pa.) and Louisburg (Cape Breton). How far is it from Cape

Breton to Quebec? How far from Alexandria (Va.) to Pittsburg? What states lie between the Alleghany Mountains and the Mississippi River?

Review Questions. What great war did England have with France? Tell of Braddock's defeat. Who was William Pitt? What was his plan? Tell of Wolfe's early life and his promotions in the army. What did he write his mother? Tell of Wolfe at the Battle of Culloden. Why did the English fail to take Rochefort in France? Tell of Wolfe at Louisburg. When Wolfe returned to England, why did Pitt send for him? Why did Wolfe want to remain in England? Tell of Wolfe's difficult task in trying to capture Quebec. How did he succeed in getting to the Plains of Abraham? What did Wolfe say about Gray's Elegy? Tell of Wolfe's death. How did the English honor Wolfe? Why should they honor him? What territory did England acquire by the victory at Quebec? Write a composition on the character of Wolfe.



Boone's Encounter with his Brother.

CHAPTER XVI.

Daniel Boone.

1735-1820.

THE dispute between the English and the French over the great Mississippi valley was settled by the French and Indian War, which ended with the fall of Quebec. The treaty which followed granted to England all the land west of the Alleghanies and east of the Mississippi River. At this time these lands were great, unexplored forests and prairies, many parts of which no white man had ever seen. Scarcely had the war with France ended, however, before the pioneers were pushing west to settle in the unknown forests of the present states of Tennessee and Kentucky.

In 1769 James Robertson, John Sevier and others made settlements which grew into the State of Tennessee. At first Tennessee was a part of North Carolina, but North Carolina ceded its claims to the Union, and Tennessee became a state in 1796.

The honor of having settled Kentucky belongs chiefly to Daniel Boone, one of the greatest and most adventurous of our western pioneers. His bravery made him the hero of the West.

Boone was born in a rude log cabin in Pennsylvania in 1735. He received very little education in the schoolroom, but in the woods he learned much, for they were both his book and his

teacher. No Indian could handle a rifle, or find his way through the vast forest, or search out the retreat of game more readily than young Boone.

When Daniel was about eighteen, his father moved to North Carolina and settled on the Yadkin River. Here Boone met Rebecca Bryan and married her. When he was not busy on his farm, he spent his spare time in hunting, which was his favorite pursuit. In 1769, in company with several friends, he explored the valleys of the Holston and Clinch Rivers, entered the present State of Kentucky and reached the valley of the Kentucky River. Adventure was his ruling passion; and this trip made him anxious to learn more of the great unexplored lands west of the Alleghanies.

But Boone was influenced by other things than mere love of adventure. He was a plain man and was satisfied with his log cabin and his deerskin clothes. At this time the English governor of North Carolina had introduced the fashionable ways of living which prevailed in England, and the people were being heavily taxed to support the governor in his extravagances. These conditions in North Carolina encouraged Boone to explore Kentucky with the view of taking his family into that great wilderness.

So in 1769, with five companions, he started upon his journey of exploration. Think of these daring men as they crossed the mountains into the wilderness! They wore hunting-shirts made of deerskin. Their trousers were made of the same material. Their undergarments were of coarse cotton, and around their bodies were leather belts. Each one carried a tomahawk on his right side, and a hunting knife, powder horn and bullet pouch on his left. But above all, each man bore upon his shoulder his trusty rifle. As they traveled, their garments became soiled and torn. The weather was stormy; and if they had not been hearty and robust, they would have died from fatigue and exertion.

After six months, during which time they explored much of eastern Kentucky, they were suddenly surprised by some Indians and taken prisoners. Boone understood the Indian character well. He knew that the best way to win the favor of the Indians was to appear satisfied. So he pretended to be greatly

PIONEERS IN THE FOREST ATTACKED BY INDIANS.

interested in whatever they did, and was always ready to help them. After a few days the Indians ceased to guard him carefully; and while they were fast asleep one night, Boone quietly got up and whispered to one of his companions named Stewart to follow him. They ran rapidly through the wilderness, and when the Indians awoke, they were far away.

After thus escaping from their captors, Boone and Stewart went wandering through the woods hoping to avoid the Indians,

and to get back to North Carolina. One day they saw in the forest the forms of two men. Not doubting that they were Indians, they grasped their rifles to shoot; but, before firing, Boone called out, "Hello! strangers; who are you?" The answer came back, "White men and friends," and to his great delight Boone beheld his brother and another adventurer, from North Carolina, who had come to look for him.

Boone returned to North Carolina, but he was not satisfied to live there; so, in 1773, he started for Kentucky with his family. Their beds, clothes and provisions were strapped on pack horses, while they drove their cattle before them. On the journey they were joined by five families, making in all a party of forty. Hardly had they touched the borders of Kentucky when they were attacked by a party of Indians. In the battle which ensued six of the men with Boone were killed, one of them being his eldest son, James, a boy of seventeen. For a while Boone was so disheartened that he turned back, and settled on the Clinch river, which flows from Virginia into Tennessee.

While he was here, a messenger came to Boone from Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, asking him to enter the service of Virginia. He did so and was made captain of a company in the army of General Andrew Lewis. Lewis led his troops across the Alleghanies and defeated the Indians at Point Pleasant, where the Ohio and the Kanawha rivers join.

Boone then returned to his family, and, in 1775, entered Kentucky and built the town of Boonesborough. He says that his wife and daughters were the first white women that ever stood on the banks of the Kentucky River. Soon other families arrived, and the settlement grew. Many settlers came from Virginia, and among them was George Rogers Clark. Hardly had Boone reached Kentucky when news came that the colonies east of the Alleghanies were at war with England. The Indians, urged by the English in Canada to fight the Americans

along the Ohio River, were constantly raiding the settlements of the whites. The early settlers of Kentucky were, therefore, subject to great danger of being surprised by the Indians and put to death. Their little towns were built like forts so that they could more easily defend themselves. But in spite of all precautions, many settlers were captured by the Indians and often the captives were scalped.

DANIEL BOONE.

Living as we do in these modern days with all the conveniences of life, it is hard for us to realize what the pioneers had to suffer. One thing greatly needed by the settlers in Kentucky was salt. There was a place on the Licking River where it could be gotten, and Boone was sent with thirty men to get a supply for the settlement. While he was boiling water to extract the salt, he was surprised by Indians and taken prisoner. They took him across the Ohio River towards the Great Lakes. The Indians soon began to admire Boone because he could shoot a rifle so well, and Blackfish, a Shawnese chief, adopted him as his son. The adoption was according to the Indian ceremony. His hair was pulled out by a slow process, except a tuft on the crown of his head, which was dressed up with ribbon and feathers. He was next taken to the river and washed and rubbed in order that his white blood might be removed. His head and face were then painted with various colors, and the ceremony of adoption was closed with a grand feast and the usual pipe-smoking.

While living among the Indians, Boone was constantly hoping to escape. One day he heard the Indians planning a raid on Boonesborough, so he determined if possible to save the little

town and his family. He escaped from the Indians, and reached Boonesborough in five days, traveling more than one hundred and sixty miles. During that time he ate but one meal, which was a turkey he shot after crossing the Ohio River. Until he crossed that river, he was not safe, for he knew that the Indians would follow him. Shortly after he reached home, Boonesborough was attacked by the Indians; but Boone had arrived in time to have the place fortified, and the Indians were driven back. Thus

THE DEFENSE OF BOONESBOROUGH.

Boone had saved one of the chief settlements in Kentucky from destruction.

Boone had many other adventures, and many stories are told of him. It is said that, on one occassion, he was in his tobacco house hanging up some tobacco, which was quite dry. He was in the top of the barn, when four stout Indians with guns entered the door and called out: "Now, Boone, we got you. You no get away more. We carry you off this time. You no cheat us any more." Boone looked down, and he

saw four guns pointed at his breast. He recognized the Indians as the same who had taken him prisoner when he was making salt. He very calmly and pleasantly replied, " Ah, old friends, glad to see you." He was told to come down. To this he readily consented, but asked the Indians to wait until he finished moving his tobacco. While moving his tobacco, he talked with them about the Indians whom he had known near the Great Lakes and promised to give them his tobacco when it was cured. While carrying on this conversation he was getting together a number of sticks of very dry tobacco. Suddenly he jumped upon the Indians with the dry tobacco, which crumbled and filled their mouths and eyes, so blinding them that they could not see to shoot him as he ran out and hastened to his cabin, thus making his escape.

For his services in fighting the Indians, Boone received large grants of land, but he neglected to record the deeds for the lands which he held, so he finally lost them all. When he lost his lands in Kentucky, he decided to go to the wild West, which embraced, in those days, all of the territory west of the Mississippi River, known as Louisiana. Boone had heard of the great fertility of Louisiana; so, in 1795, he crossed the Mississippi River and settled in what is now the State of Missouri, not far from St. Louis. At that time, all of that region was under the control of Spain. The Spanish government, hearing of the bravery of Boone, made him the commandant of St. Louis, and granted him about nine thousand acres of land on the Missouri River. In a few years Louisiana was transferred by Spain to the French, from whom the United States bought it in 1803.

Into this great territory soon came all of Boone's family and many other American settlers. Again Boone lost his lands, because he failed to get the proper legal papers. He was now an old man. He had wandered through the wildernesses of Kentucky,

crossed the Mississippi, and was probably about the first citizen of the United States to settle on the Missouri River. He had left Kentucky owing debts, and, being an honest man, his desire was to pay all he owed. He returned to his old-time occupation of hunting, and one winter was so successful that he was able to go to Kentucky and pay all his bills; but on his return to St. Louis he had only fifty cents. To some friends he said, "Now I am ready and willing to die. I am relieved from the burden which has so long oppressed me. I have paid all of my debts and no one will say when I am gone: 'Boone was a dishonest man.' I am perfectly willing to die."

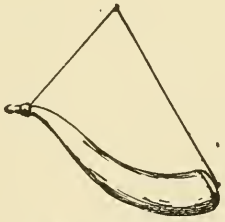
A little later he asked the legislature of Kentucky to restore his lands, and to appeal to Congress in his favor. The Kentucky legislature at once presented his claim to Congress, and, in 1814, Congress passed an act giving Boone about one thousand acres of land in Missouri. Boone was then seventy-nine years old, but his mind was still vigorous. He lived six years longer. During that time Missouri had grown rapidly, and, when he died in 1820, that territory was applying to the United States for admission as a state into the Union.

The Western states will always remember Boone. He pointed the way through the wilderness into Kentucky and then crossed the Mississippi into the far West. Boone was honest, brave and courageous. He loved his family, his children and his grandchildren. The greatest pleasure of his old age was to make for his grandchildren powder horns, and to teach them how to handle the rifle.

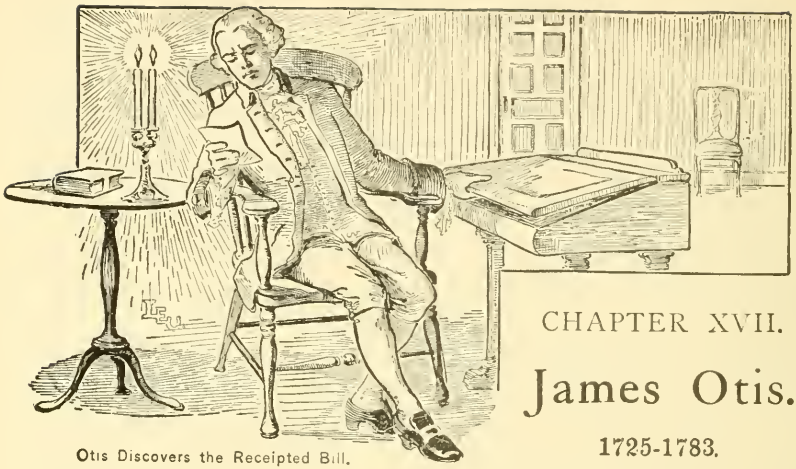
Twenty-five years after his death, his remains were taken from the banks of the Missouri and brought to Frankfort, Kentucky. Here they were re-interred with imposing ceremonies. Every county in Kentucky sent representatives, and many people from the West were present to honor the pioneer of the great Mississippi valley.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Tennessee, Kentucky and Missouri. Locate the following rivers: Yadkin, Clinch, Holston, Kentucky, Ohio, Kanawha and Missouri. Find Boonesborough, Frankfort and St. Louis. How far is it from Boonesborough to St. Louis? How far is it from the Yadkin River to Boonesborough?

Review Questions. How was the Mississippi valley acquired from the French? Who settled in Tennessee? Who led the way to Kentucky? Tell of Boone's early life. Tell of his residence in North Carolina. What led Boone to explore Kentucky? Describe his trip of exploration. Tell of his capture by the Indians and his escape. Who came to look for him? Tell of his trip towards Kentucky to form a settlement. Why did he go back? Tell of his service with General Andrew Lewis. What town did Boone build in Kentucky? Tell of the troubles with Indians. Why was Boone sent to Licking River, and what happened to him? Describe his experiences among the Indians, and his adoption by Blackfish. Tell of his escape and return to Boonesborough. Describe his escape from the tobacco barn. How did Boone come to lose all his land? Tell of his life in Missouri. Tell why you think Boone was an honest man. What did Congress do for Boone? Tell of his old age and death. How did Kentucky honor his memory?



A POWDER HORN.



Otis Discovers the Receipted Bill.

CHAPTER XVII.

James Otis.

1725-1783.

ENGLAND made herself supreme in North America by driving France from Canada. She knew that America was a great country and would soon contain a large population. She hoped that her merchants would grow rich by trading with the American colonies; she also wanted to tax the colonies to pay the expenses of English soldiers and office-holders who were to control the colonial governments.

In the days of Oliver Cromwell, the government of England (to enrich her merchants) passed laws known as Navigation Acts. These laws prohibited the people of America from buying goods unless they were brought to the colonies in English vessels. Moreover, American merchants who wanted to ship tobacco, fish, or other articles abroad, had to send them in English vessels; and, if they brought sugar from the West Indies or cloth from Europe, only English vessels must be used. The colonies regarded these laws as harsh, and they often disobeyed them, claiming that England had no right to make them. The colonists, especially the New Englanders, built vessels of their own, and often violated the English laws of trade, which greatly angered the English government.

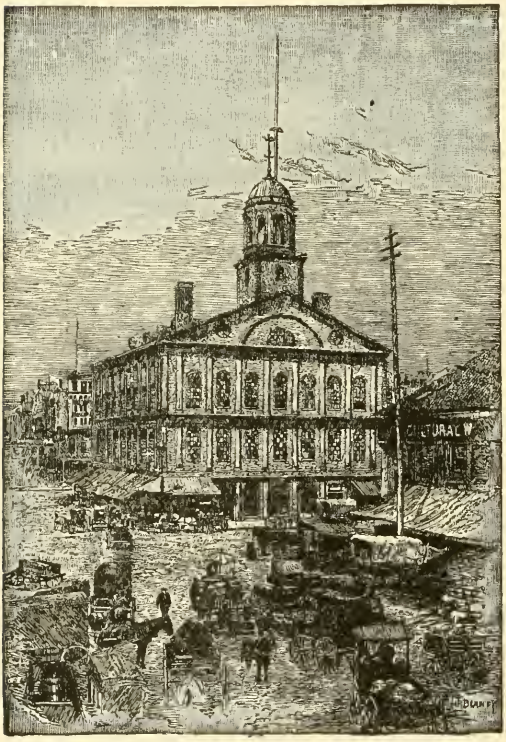
England also made the colonists pay a tax on certain articles, like sugar or tea, which were brought to America. The tax which gave most trouble was on sugar and molasses. Every gallon of molasses brought into the colonies was taxed about ten cents. The New England merchants frequently escaped this tax by secretly bringing molasses into the country—in other words, they became smugglers.

The English officers, in their efforts to prevent smuggling, set to work to find where the smuggled molasses was hid. To do this, they had to search the houses of the best citizens of Boston. The officers therefore applied to the law courts for permission to search from house to house for smuggled goods, and frequently they entered the homes of persons upon whom no suspicion rested. The court allowed this to be done on a sort of general search warrant, or "writ of assistance," as it was called. This, of course, was regarded by the people of Boston as an insult to their honesty, and they determined not to submit tamely to such treatment. So they went into the courts to prevent the officers from searching everywhere for smuggled goods. The man who argued the case for the citizens of Boston was James Otis.

James Otis was born in Massachusetts in 1725. His father was a prominent lawyer, of a sturdy New England family. He gave James a good education at Harvard College, at which institution he was a diligent student. He received the Master of Arts degree, and soon afterwards began the study of law in the office of Jeremiah Gridley, one of the best-known lawyers in all New England. Gridley was afterwards made Attorney General of Massachusetts; and, in the case which made Otis famous, he represented the English government against young Otis. Otis was a splendid speaker, and soon made a great reputation as a lawyer. On one occasion he went to Nova Scotia to defend three men who were accused of being pirates. He pleaded so

eloquently that they were acquitted. For this case Otis is said to have received the largest fee ever given a lawyer in those days.

Because he defended alleged pirates, you are not to imagine that he was ready to take the side of a guilty man. The story is told that once a client of his had him bring suit against a man for a certain sum of money. The man claimed that he had paid the money, but had failed to get a receipt for it. Otis was about to win the case, when he saw among the papers of his client a receipt for the money in question, showing that it had been paid. Otis at once went into court and asked that the case be dismissed, saying that he was satisfied that his client had already gotten what was due him.



FANEUIL HALL, "THE CRADLE OF LIBERTY."
(This building was dedicated by Otis in 1763.)

In 1761, because of his great reputation as a lawyer, the people of Boston asked him to make the fight against the general search system then prevailing in that city. On this occasion Otis made the greatest speech of his life, and defeated

his old law teacher, Jeremiah Gridley; but Gridley was a noble-hearted man, and he was really delighted to see the success of his pupil. In his famous speech Otis argued that it was tyranny on the part of the English government to enter and search the houses of upright and honest citizens, and that England had no right to tax the colonies, unless they should have representation in the English Parliament that made the laws. This cry of "Taxation without Representation" afterwards became the keynote of the American Revolution. The Revolution had not yet begun, but Otis had laid down the principle on which it was to be fought. For five hours Otis pleaded for the rights of the people. His speech was so earnest that the court was afraid to decide against him. It rendered no decision, which was equivalent to a victory for Otis. English officers did not again search the houses of Boston citizens for smuggled goods.

JAMES OTIS.

The rest of the life of Otis was very sad. His defense of the people of Boston made him the most prominent man in Massachusetts. He was offered many positions, and was several times elected to the legislature, in which body he served with distinction. During the Revolution he fell into delicate health, and after a while lost his mind. For this reason, he did not take a prominent part in the Revolution.

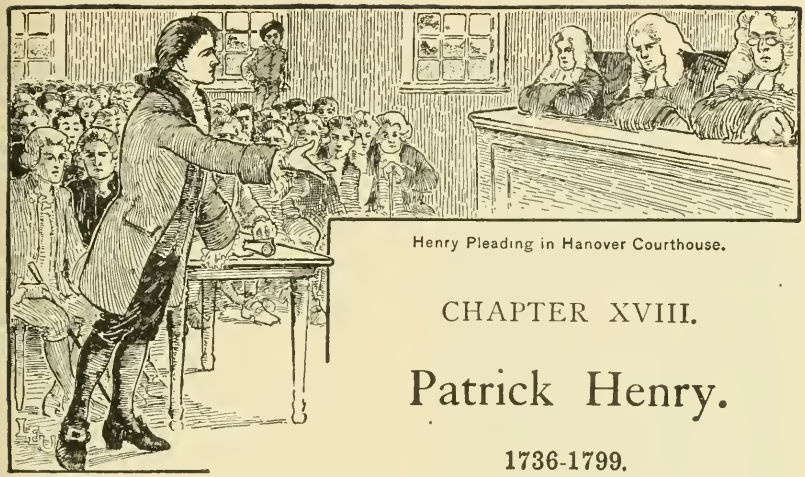
Gradually his condition grew worse, and he seemed to be laboring under a great load. One day he said to Mrs. Warren, his sister, "My dear sister, I hope that, when God Almighty in

his righteous providence shall take me out of time into eternity, it will be by a flash of lightning." Not very long after that a heavy cloud suddenly arose, and the greater part of the family was seated in a room waiting for the storm to pass. Otis, with his cane in one hand, stood against the post of the door which led from this room into the hall. He was just about to tell the company a story, when an explosion took place which shook the very earth. Without a struggle, he fell dead. The flash of lightning that killed him was the first that came from the clouds, and, wonderful to say, no other member of the family was injured. In his death the wish of Otis had been gratified.

America will never forget the name of Otis. He it was who first laid down the principle that the English should not tax the American colonies without giving them representation in the English Parliament. He showed us what was our duty and our right.

Geography Study. *Map of New England.* Where is Boston? How large is Boston? What seaport towns are situated near Boston? *Map of North America.* How far is it from Boston to the West Indies? How would you make the trip? Find Nova Scotia. How far is it from Boston?

Review Questions. What possibilities did England see in America? What two things did she want to do? What were the navigation acts? What tax did England put on molasses brought to America? Explain a "writ of assistance." What is smuggling? Tell of Otis and his education. What case did he have in Nova Scotia? Tell a story which shows that he was an honest man. What famous case did he undertake for the citizens of Boston? Tell of his argument. What did the court do? What great misfortune befell Otis? Tell of his death. Why will the name of Otis be remembered?



Henry Pleading in Hanover Courthouse.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Patrick Henry.

1736-1799.

In 1765 England undertook to impose a new tax upon the American people. The law fixing this tax was called the Stamp Act, because it required that stamps should be bought from the government, and be placed upon all newspapers, published books and legal documents. The passage of this law aroused the colonies from Maine to Georgia. The people cried out that they would not stand it, and that England must repeal the law, as she had no right to raise a tax within the colonies. One of the strongest opponents of the Stamp Act was Patrick Henry, who, Jefferson declared, was the greatest orator that ever lived.

Patrick Henry was born in Hanover County, Virginia. He never received a college education, but was taught by his father, from whom he learned some Latin and mathematics. Young Henry was not an apt student, so at an early age he stopped school and became a merchant; but he had such little fitness for business that he failed. As a merchant, he began to discuss politics and the affairs of his country with the persons who came to his store. By these discussions he learned much about the condition of Virginia. When only nineteen, he married, and his

father and father-in-law placed him on a small farm with two slaves. As a farmer Henry was also unsuccessful; so he again became a merchant, and again failed.

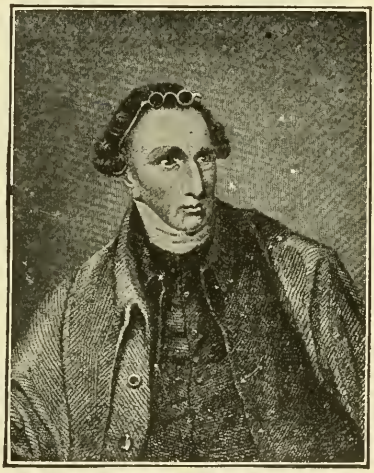
Henry was at this time an awkward, ungainly young man. His manners were poor, and his dress neglected. He had every appearance of a lazy man. His repeated failures caused his friends to fear that he would never succeed; but these failures had been due to the fact that he had not yet turned his attention to that for which he was suited.

At last Henry decided to be a lawyer. Many of his friends believed that in so deciding he had made a great mistake; for the idea of a married man, with little education, studying law seemed ridiculous to them. At this time Thomas Jefferson, a boy seventeen years of age and a student at William and Mary College in Williamsburg, went to spend his Christmas holidays with a friend, Colonel Dandridge, in Hanover County. There he met Patrick Henry, with whom he had several conversations, and for whom he formed a strong attachment.

After reading law for a short time, Henry went to Williamsburg to stand his examination before the judges of Virginia. Several of the judges did not believe that Henry had studied enough law to practice; but though he had but a slight knowledge of law, he had such good practical ideas, and could reason so well on a law point, that they consented to sign his license, and he was admitted to the bar.

Hardly had he begun to practice when the famous Parsons' Case came up in Hanover County. In those days the Church was supported by the State, and the salaries of the preachers were paid out of the taxes collected from the people. These salaries were at first paid in tobacco, but as tobacco increased in value the people wanted to pay the preachers in money. The amount of money to be paid was to equal the value of the tobacco before it increased in price, in other words the preachers were to receive

their usual salaries. This demand of the people was passed as a law by the Virginia House of Burgesses, but no act of the Burgesses became a binding law in Virginia until it had been sent to England and approved by the king. The king disapproved of this law, because he said that the preachers should have all the tobacco. In the meantime the Virginians had gone on as if their law was binding, and had not paid the tobacco to the preachers.



PATRICK HENRY.

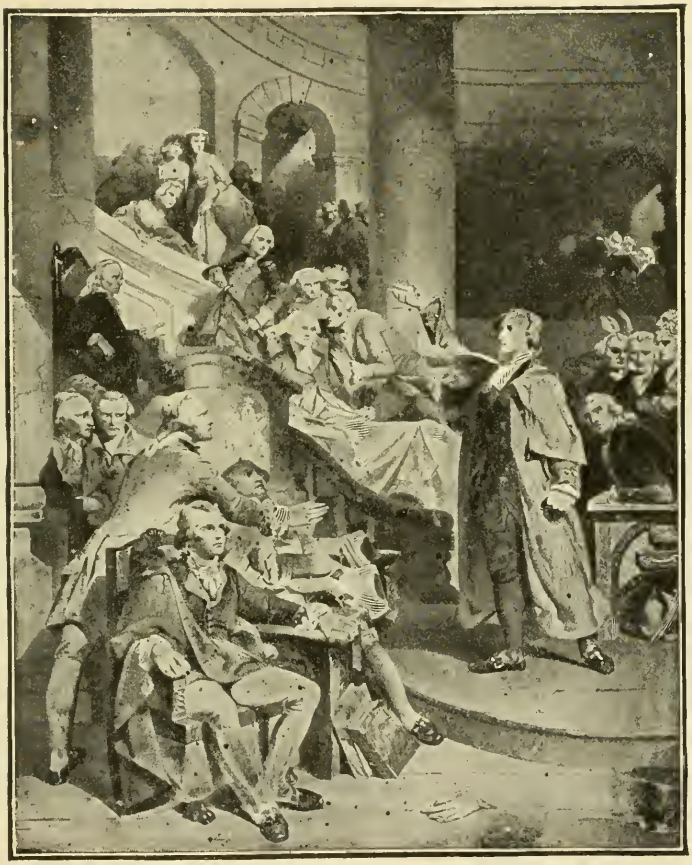
Since the king would not approve of the law, it was clear that the preachers were entitled to all their pay, and they therefore brought suit in Hanover County for the rest of their salaries. The people determined to oppose the ministers, so, when the case came up, Patrick Henry was secured to appear as the people's champion. The case was tried at Hanover Courthouse (1763), and Henry's father was one of the judges. Young Henry had never made a speech; and, when he rose to speak against the preachers, he was so very awkward that the people hung their heads in shame, and his father dared not look up. Soon Henry straightened up, and his countenance began to glow. His action became graceful and bold, and in his voice there was a peculiar charm. The words that fell from his lips were so eloquent and startling that his hearers stood unnerved. It is said that he made their blood run cold, and their hair stand on end. Henry's plea was so forcible, that, when the jury brought in a verdict of damages, they gave the parsons only one penny. This decision

of the jury was in one sense against the law, and it meant that the Virginians were unwilling for England to interfere with them in the making of their laws. Patrick Henry had asserted that the king had no right to set aside a law of the Virginia House of Burgesses, and that the Church ought not be supported by the State.

Two years later came the Stamp Act (1765). The whole country was aroused. Henry was a member of the House of Burgesses from the County of Louisa. He was angry because the English Parliament had undertaken to levy a tax within the colonies. For a while he sat quietly in the House of Burgesses, and wondered what Virginia should say about the Stamp Act. Before him was an old law book. He opened it and upon one of the blank pages he wrote five resolutions. In them he declared that the right to tax Virginia did not belong to England, but to Virginia's own legislative body, the House of Burgesses.

As soon as these resolutions were introduced, many of the members felt that their passage would anger the English government, and for that reason opposed them. Then Henry rose to his feet, and words of sublime eloquence fell from his lips. Thomas Jefferson was then studying law in Williamsburg, and on that day, when Mr. Henry rose to speak, he leaned against the door post which led into the hall of the House of Burgesses. Jefferson was held spell-bound by Henry's speech.

Henry's argument was that England should repeal the Stamp Act at once, as it would endanger the English government and might produce a revolution. At the close of his speech he said, "Cæsar had his Brutus; Charles I., his Cromwell; and George III. . . . . ." Many of the members rose to their feet at this point and cried, "Treason, Treason," but Henry only paused and said: "George III. may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." The resolutions were passed by a majority of just one vote.



From a painting by Rothermel.

PATRICK HENRY MAKING HIS CELEBRATED SPEECH TO THE BURGESSES.

Patrick Henry was a far-seeing man, and he knew that England was going to force a war upon the colonies. His protest against the Stamp Act was the beginning of the Revolution which ended in our independence.

In other colonies protests were made, and England repealed the Stamp Act, but still insisted on the right to tax the colonies. The colonies as firmly insisted that they should not be taxed by Parliament. In order that the colonies might be made to grant the right of taxation, England placed a small tax upon all tea brought to America. The colonies determined that

COLONISTS BURNING THE STAMP SELLER IN EFFIGY.

this taxed tea should not be landed, and in several harbors they seized cargoes of it and threw it overboard. At Boston many of the citizens, disguised as Indians, boarded a ship laden with tea and threw it all into the harbor. This is the famous "Boston Tea Party." England passed an act saying that the Boston Harbor should be closed, and that no vessels should enter it. At once the people of New England prepared for war. All the colonies

felt that England's laws were oppressive; so they held a Congress to protest against the action of the English government. To this Congress Virginia sent Patrick Henry as one of her members. England paid no attention to the protests of the colonies, and Henry saw that war was coming.

In March, 1775, the Virginia Convention met in old St. John's Church, Richmond. Their purpose was to decide what action Virginia had better take, since Lord Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, was determined to act the part of a tyrant toward the people of the colony. Henry was a member of this convention. He moved that the colony of Virginia should at once raise troops to defend itself against England. His resolutions were opposed by some members on the ground that there was no war with England. Henry spoke in defence of his resolutions and closed his speech by saying: "Our brethren are already in the field Why stand we here idle? What is it that the gentlemen wish? What would they have? Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God; I know not what course others may take, but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death." His speech carried all before him. The resolutions were passed, troops were at once raised, and Henry was made commander-in-chief of the Virginia forces.

He, indeed, spoke as a prophet when he said: "The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms." Hardly had Virginia begun to raise troops when the news came that the first battle of the Revolution had been fought at Lexington and Concord in Massachusetts.

When Virginia threw off the yoke of England in 1776, Patrick Henry became her first governor. For three years he held this responsible position and showed that he was a man of power and ability. After the Revolutionary War was over, he was again (1784) called to the governor's chair and served for two years.

At the close of the Revolutionary War, the thirteen states were united under a very weak form of government. To strengthen this government, a convention was called in 1787, and it drew up a new plan of government, which is the present Constitution of the United States. When Virginia's Convention met in 1788 to pass upon the Constitution, Henry was a member of the body. He opposed the adoption of the Constitution of the United States, claiming that the day would come when many of the states would regret that they had ever entered the Union, because the United States government would override the state governments. He prophesied the Revolution, and we know now that he was equally a prophet, when he claimed that the Constitution of the United States would give trouble; for the failure to understand the Constitution produced the terrible War between the States.

AN EARLY REVOLUTIONARY FLAG.

For the last four years of his life, Henry lived on his farm near Charlotte Courthouse.* In 1799 our country was in a critical condition, and it looked as if the union might be broken up. The Virginia legislature had passed some resolutions complaining of Congress. Henry thought that the times called for the best men to enter public life; and though he had declined many important positions, he now felt that his state needed his services in the legislature. So in the spring of 1799 he stood for election to the legislature from the County of Charlotte. He was elected; but before the time came for the legislature to meet he died.

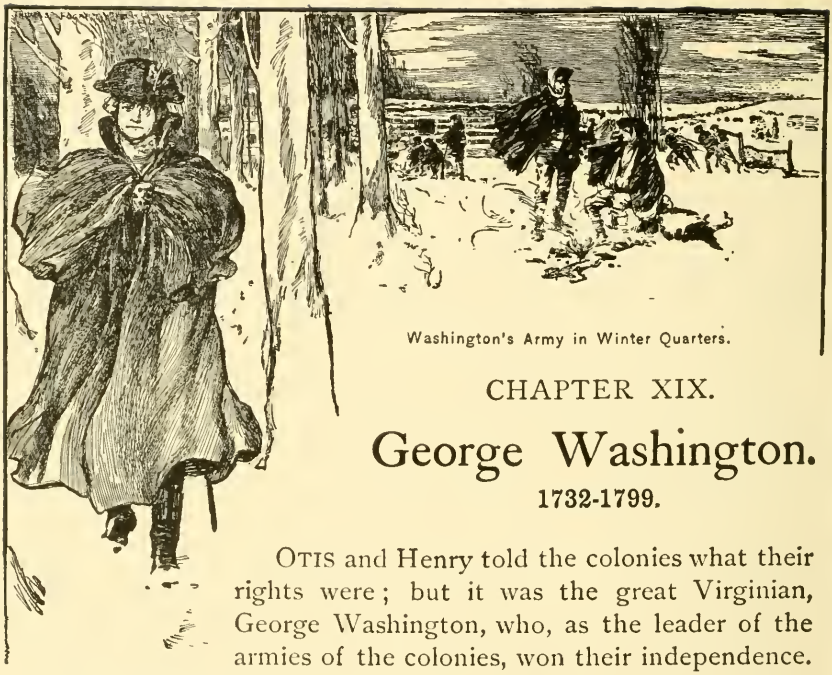
Henry was one of our greatest men; he was true to his

* Henry lived in many places. Up to the Revolution his home was in Hanover but afterwards he lived in Williamsburg, in Henry, Chesterfield, Prince Edward Campbell and Charlotte counties respectively.

country; he loved his state; he was unselfish, and deeply religious in his nature. Would that we had more men of his stamp—men of force, sincerity and faith in God.

Geography Study. *Map of Virginia.* Find Hanover Courthouse, Williamsburg, Richmond and Charlotte Courthouse. How far is Williamsburg from Richmond? How far is Charlotte Courthouse from Richmond? *Map of New England.* Find Concord and Lexington. In what direction are they from Boston? How far is it from Boston to Richmond, Va.?

Review Questions. What was the Stamp Act? Tell of the early life of Patrick Henry. Describe his appearance. Tell of his admission to the bar. How did Jefferson come to meet him? What was the Parsons' Case? Tell of Henry's defence of the people. Why were the damages only one penny? How did the colonies receive the Stamp Act? Tell of Henry's resolutions against the Stamp Act? What did Henry say in this speech? What student at Williamsburg heard this speech? When England repealed the Stamp Act, what other law was passed? What was the Boston Tea Party? What law was passed concerning Boston harbor? Tell of Henry's resolutions for raising troops. What did he say in his speech at St. John's Church? Where was the first battle of the Revolution fought? To what office in Virginia was Henry elected? Why did Henry oppose the Constitution of the United States? How did he spend the latter part of his life? Tell of his last election and death. Why was Henry called a prophet?



Washington's Army in Winter Quarters.

CHAPTER XIX.

George Washington.

1732-1799.

OTIS and Henry told the colonies what their rights were; but it was the great Virginian, George Washington, who, as the leader of the armies of the colonies, won their independence.

George Washington was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22, 1732. The house in which he was born stood near the Potomac River, and was a low, single-story building, with a large chimney at each end. His father was Augustine Washington, and his mother's maiden name was Mary Ball. George was his mother's oldest child. When he was only eleven years old, his father died, and the responsibility of his education fell upon his mother. Nor was she unequal to the task. She was religious, firm in character, and stern, but kind.

Washington was sent to school to an old man named Hobby, who taught him reading, writing and arithmetic. Afterwards he went to school to a Mr. Williams from whom he learned something about land-surveying. Among the boys Washington was a leader both in his studies and upon the playground. He used

to drill the boys as if they were soldiers, and would divide them into armies, one of which was usually commanded by himself. He excelled his playmates in running, jumping and wrestling. Judging from the size of his hands and feet, Washington must have been very strong; for, when he was a man, he wore number thirteen boots, and his gloves had to be made to order.

THE MONUMENT AT WASHINGTON'S BIRTHPLACE.

When a boy, Washington took great delight in riding wild horses. His mother owned a fine sorrel colt which was so wild that no one could "break" him. One morning George went with some boys to the pasture to ride "the sorrel." The boys helped him to catch and bridle the colt, and in an instant George was on his back. The horse reared and plunged and did his best to throw his rider, but all in vain. The colt, in a last effort to throw Washington, made a high jump, which burst a blood-vessel, and in a little while the sorrel lay dead. Mrs. Washington valued her beautiful young horse very highly, and it was hard for George to tell her what had happened; but, like a man, he told her the truth. Though his mother was angry, she did not reprove her son, because she was proud to know that he would tell the truth under such trying circumstances.

In his sixteenth year Washington left school, and spent the winter near Alexandria, at Mount Vernon, the home of his brother Lawrence. Here he became acquainted with Lord Fairfax, an old bachelor, who owned, in the northwestern part

of Virginia, a tract of land that extended across the Blue Ridge Mountains through the Shenandoah valley into the present state of West Virginia,—a vast territory from which twenty-one counties have been made. Lord Fairfax was greatly pleased with Washington, and employed him to survey these wild lands. Washington's experience as a surveyor in these back-woods taught him a great deal about the Indian customs and frontier life, and this knowledge served him in good stead in after years when he had to fight the Indians.

THE ENGLISH COLONIAL TERRITORY IN 1750.

At this time, the thirteen English colonies were confined to the Atlantic coast. France owned Canada, and claimed the Ohio valley. The English also claimed the land along the Ohio River. The French built forts in the Ohio valley with the determination to hold that territory. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia sent Washington, in 1753, with a message to the commander of the French forces, asking why the French were taking possession of territory belonging to the English. The French refused to leave the country, and a war broke out between them and the English settlers, in which the Indians took part. This war was known as the French and Indian War.

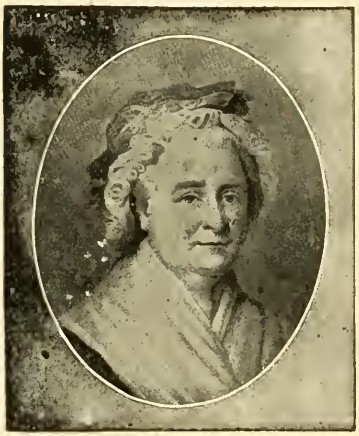
The English government sent troops under General Braddock to aid the Americans in their attempt to drive the French from the Ohio valley. Braddock was a brave soldier, but knew

nothing about Indian warfare. When he arrived in Virginia, he talked very boastfully of what he could do with his "regulars," and seemed to despise the Virginian troops which were to help him in the campaign. Washington was a colonel in the Virginia militia, and tried to advise Braddock, but the English general paid little heed to advice given by Washington.

Where Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, now stands, was Fort Duquesne, which was strongly guarded by the French and Indians. Braddock determined to seize this fort. He marched through the wilderness with flags flying and drums beating. This was a great mistake, as he should have gone quietly, in order that the Indians and French might not know of his approach. When Braddock's army reached the neighborhood of Fort Duquesne, it was suddenly attacked "from the right, left and front at the same time." The enemy were hidden in the woods, and the English regulars did not know in what direction to fire. They were being killed in large numbers, when Washington asked Braddock to order his troops to take to the woods and fire from behind the trees as the Indians did. Braddock was very angry with Washington for advising him and replied, "What! a Virginia colonel teach a British general how to fight!" Braddock fought bravely and was killed. Washington had two horses shot under him, and four bullets went through his coat. It is said that an Indian shot at him fifteen times without effect; then he stopped firing, thinking that Washington's life was charmed. The loss of the English and Virginia troops was heavy, and but for Washington the army would have been totally destroyed.

Shortly after this, Washington met a "charming young widow," Mrs. Martha Custis, at the home of Major Chamberlayne, in New Kent County, Virginia. The story goes that once, while on his way to Williamsburg on important business, he stopped to take dinner with Major Chamberlayne. As he was anxious to be in Williamsburg by the next morning, he

ordered his servant, Bishop, to have his horse ready after dinner. Accordingly, when the noon meal was over, Bishop was seen at the front gate holding his master's horse; but Washington was so captivated by Mrs. Custis that he forgot his urgent business, and left his servant to hold the horse all the afternoon. At last he rose to go, but his host told him that he was never willing for any of his guests to leave after sunset, and Washington was prevailed upon to spend the night. The next morning, Bishop again appeared at the front gate with his master's horse, but it was late in the morning before the start was made to Williamsburg. On his return from Williamsburg, Washington stopped to see Mrs. Custis at her home, and before he left she had promised to be his wife.



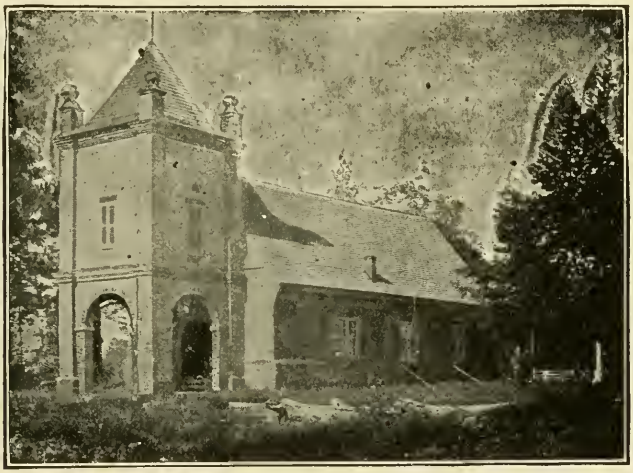
MARTHA WASHINGTON.

Some months later they were married at old St. Peter's Church in New Kent County. After the marriage, "the bride and her lady friends" were borne to her home in a carriage drawn by six horses, on which sat negro drivers dressed in uniforms. The groom, accompanied by other gentlemen on horseback, rode beside the coach on his fine charger.

Soon after his marriage, Washington made his home at Mount Vernon, a fine estate, which he inherited from his brother. He enjoyed the free and easy life of a planter, and when not engaged in the services of his country, he took delight in looking after his plantation. He rode over his farm each day to see if everything was being properly done by his many slaves and their overseers. He lived plainly. Sometimes he would ride out in

his carriage with his wife and step-children to visit a neighbor or to attend a ball. He was frequently a visitor at the home of George Mason, who wrote the famous Virginia Bill of Rights.

Washington was living thus, when English oppression brought on the War of Independence. He felt that his country called



ST. PETER'S CHURCH.

him, so he left his pleasant home to take part in public affairs. He was a member of the Continental Congress (1774), which protested against the oppressive English laws. The Congress met again in May, 1775, but before it came together, the people of Massachusetts had fought the first battle of the Revolution at Concord and Lexington. When Congress met, it decided that the war against England should be carried on by all the colonies, so at once it provided for the raising of troops. Washington was made commander-in-chief, and, though his wish was to decline, he felt that his country was to be considered more than any

personal desire; so he accepted the command of the American forces. In July, 1775, he assumed the leadership of the army that had collected at Cambridge, Massachusetts. Only a few days before, the Battle of Bunker Hill had been fought. Though the Americans had lost the day, they were not discouraged; and when Washington stood under the old elm tree at Cambridge, and took command of the army, the soldiers were cheerful and ready to fight.

Washington at once fortified Dorchester Heights, and shut up the English under Gage in Boston, which city the English were forced to evacuate in March, 1776. The English then planned to get possession of New York, and to establish connection with Canada. Washington attacked them at Long Island, and was defeated. A little later he carried his shattered army into New Jersey and then into Pennsylvania. The country was greatly alarmed, and it looked as if the "patriot" cause was lost. Washington determined to make a bold stroke. He crossed the Delaware River on Christmas night (1776). The wind was high, and the current swift. It was intensely cold, and two men in Washington's army froze to death on the way to the attack. Washington succeeded in getting safely across the river with his army, and suddenly surprised at Trenton the Hessian troops in the service of the English, and gained a great victory. A few days later Washington defeated the English at Princeton. For a while the English were driven back to New York, but in the spring of 1777, General Howe, the English commander, left New York by ship, entered the Chesapeake Bay, and started on his march to Philadelphia. He defeated Washington at Brandywine, and took Philadelphia. The only redeeming feature of this year's campaign was the capture of the English General Burgoyne with his whole army at Saratoga, N. Y. This prevented the English from establishing connection between New York City and Canada by means of the Hudson River, and revived

the spirits of the patriots. The defeat of Burgoyne also caused the French to help us in our struggle.

Washington stationed his army at Valley Forge near Philadelphia for the winter of 1777-78. This was a terrible winter for the soldiers. They had to live in huts made of fence-rails, and

From a painting by Alonzo Chappel.

WASHINGTON AND LAFAYETTE AT VALLEY FORGE.

had very little clothing and scarcely any food. Many of the men had to go barefooted, and they could be tracked through the snow by the blood from their naked feet. Many bad things were said about Washington, but he bore them all with a clear conscience, knowing that God would protect the innocent. A good old Quaker heard Washington praying in the woods, and went home and said to his wife: "George Washington will succeed. The

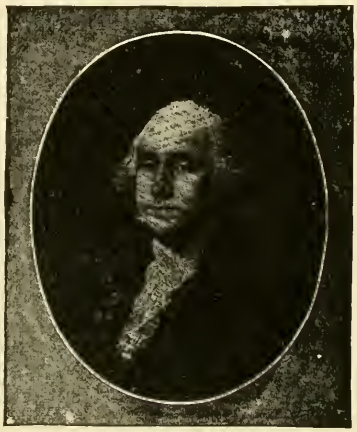
Americans will secure their independence. I have heard him pray in the forest to-day, and the Lord will surely hear his prayer."

The Lord did hear Washington. With the coming of spring the sick soldiers began to get well. Congress sent them clothes and food. The English General Howe was forced to evacuate Philadelphia. Washington defeated the English at Monmouth Courthouse, New Jersey, and the war in the Northern states was practically at an end.

The English in 1778 decided to transfer the war to the South. Savannah, Ga., and Charleston, S. C., were taken, and the English under Cornwallis pushed into North Carolina. A part of his army under Colonel Tarleton was defeated at the battle of the Cowpens, S. C. After fighting a battle at Guilford Courthouse, N. C., Cornwallis withdrew into Virginia. General Greene was in charge of the Americans in the South, and he gradually drove out the English forces which Cornwallis had left to hold the Southern states. At Eutaw Springs, S. C., he defeated them, and the South was thus delivered from the invaders.

In October, 1781, the last battle of this long war was fought. For some months Cornwallis had been in Virginia plundering the country. Lafayette, a young French nobleman in Washington's army, was sent to Virginia to oppose Cornwallis, but his army was so small that he could do little in defence of the state. In August, Cornwallis moved his army to York River and encamped at Yorktown. Washington's army was in the State of New York watching General Clinton, who was stationed at New York City. The French fleet under Count de Grasse came up York River and took position near Yorktown, while Lafayette placed his army in front of the village on the land side, and Cornwallis was thus entrapped. In the meantime Washington had slipped away from New York, and had gone south a considerable distance before General Clinton knew what were his intentions. By the twenty-sixth of September, Washington had his whole army be-

fore Yorktown, having marched four hundred miles to join Lafayette. Cornwallis was already surrounded, and Washington's additional troops only strengthened the besiegers and made it impossible for the enemy to escape. Little fighting was done, but the Americans kept moving their lines closer to the British, and finally, on the nineteenth of October, 1781, Cornwallis surrendered.



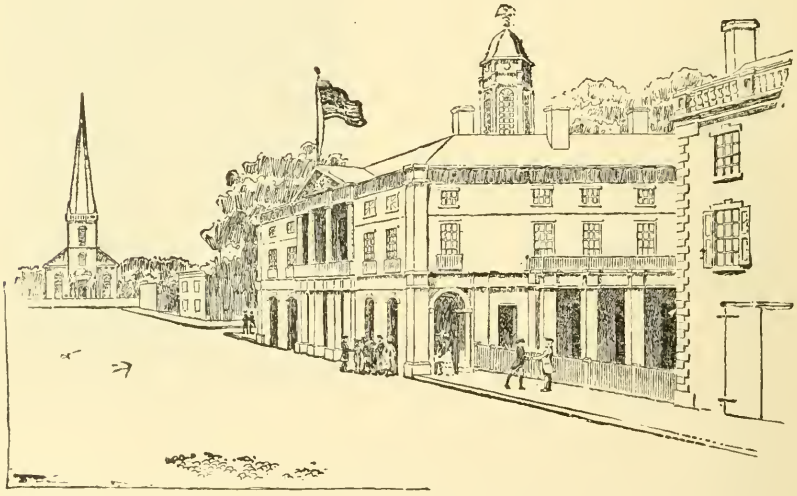
GEORGE WASHINGTON.

The French troops constituted a large part of Washington's army. The French and American soldiers were drawn up in two separate columns, and the English marched between them and gave up their arms. Cornwallis felt so humiliated over his defeat, that he pretended to be sick and sent his sword by one of his officers. Washington did not receive the sword, but ordered it to be given to General Lincoln, who had been forced to surrender to the English when Charleston, S. C., was captured.

The people of Philadelphia first heard of the surrender of Cornwallis from a German night-watchman who could not speak English correctly. One night while walking up and down the streets he began to shout, "Basht dree o'glock, und Gornvallis ish dakendt!" In a little while the streets were alive with people shouting for joy. Congress received a message from Washington the next day stating that Cornwallis had surrendered, and in the afternoon the members went in a body to the Lutheran Church to return thanks to God for the victory. This was the last battle of the war. A treaty of peace was signed in Paris in 1783, ac-

cording to which England acknowledged the independence of the colonies.

Four years after the treaty of peace with England, a convention met at Philadelphia to draw up a constitution for the United



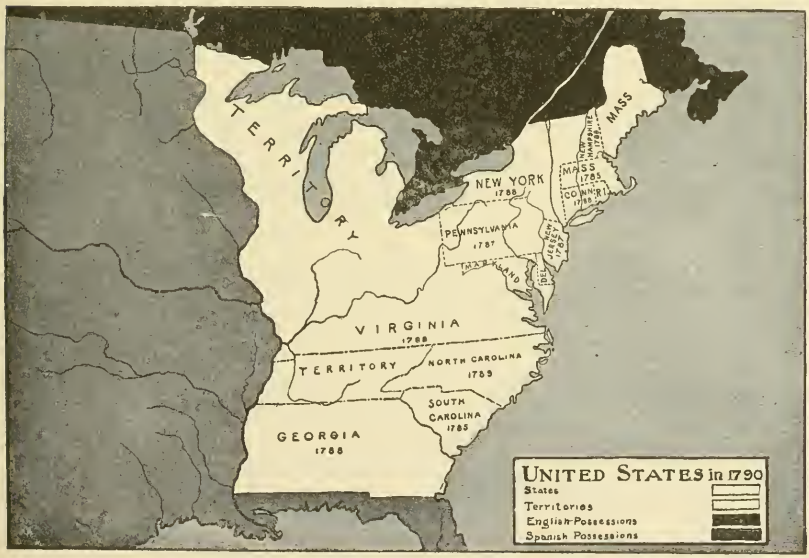
FEDERAL HALL, NEW YORK, WHERE WASHINGTON WAS INAUGURATED.

States. Washington was president of this convention, and during those trying days when one could hardly predict what would be the outcome of the deliberations of the body, Washington showed himself a man of wisdom and prudence. Finally a constitution was proposed by the convention, and adopted by the states.

Then the time had come to elect a president of the new republic. Everybody said that Washington was the man. When the electoral votes were counted, it was found that George Washington had received every vote cast, and was unanimously chosen President. John Adams of Massachusetts became Vice-President.

Congress was in session at New York City, and at once

notified Washington of his election. He was found on his farm, Mount Vernon, busily engaged in preparing for the planting of his crops. With some regret he left his quiet life to become President of the United States. His journey was made by carriage from Mount Vernon to New York, and everywhere he was greeted by great crowds. On reaching New York he was hailed by a salute of thirteen guns, and escorted to Federal Hall, where he was inaugurated President of the United States (1789). When Washington had taken the oath, the people went wild with



THE TERRITORY OF THE YOUNG NATION.

joy, and shouted: "God bless our Washington! Long live our beloved Washington!"

Washington was elected to a second term and declined a third. The eight years that he was President were the most

important in our history. Under Washington our government was firmly established. When he became President the credit of the United States abroad was at a low ebb; but through the wise plans of Alexander Hamilton, Washington's Secretary of the Treasury, our debts were paid, and our standing in the eyes of the European nations was greatly raised.

When Washington retired from the presidency, he issued a farewell address to the people of the United States, in which he advised them not to interfere in European affairs, but to develop their own resources and let other countries alone.

The two remaining years of his life were spent at Mount Vernon. On December 14, 1799, he died from a severe throat trouble brought on by going over his plantation on a cold snowy day. The highest praise that can be given Washington is contained in those memorable words which were used of him soon after his death: "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Alexandria, the Blue Ridge Mountains, Shenandoah River, Williamsburg and Yorktown (Va.); the Ohio River, Pittsburg (Pa.); Concord, Lexington, Cambridge and Boston (Mass.); Delaware River; Trenton, Princeton and Monmouth Courthouse (N. J.); Brandywine, Philadelphia (Pa.); Long Island and Saratoga (N. Y.); the Hudson River; Guilford Courthouse (N. C.); Cowpens and Eutaw Springs (S. C.); and Savannah (Ga.). How far is it from Savannah to Boston?

Review Questions. Tell of Washington's birthplace and his parents. Describe his school-days. What is the story about the sorrel colt? Tell of his acquaintance with Lord Fairfax. On what mission did Governor Dinwiddie send Washington? Describe Braddock's defeat. Tell of Washington's courtship and marriage. Tell of Washington's life at Mount Vernon. What did he have to do with the Continental Congress? Why did Washington accept the command of the American army? What

battles had been fought before he took command? When did Gage leave Boston? What success did Washington have in New York? Tell of his attack on the English at Trenton and Princeton. What was the importance of Burgoyne's capture? Tell of the winter at Valley Forge. Tell of the war in the South. Describe the capture of Cornwallis at Yorktown. How was the news received at Philadelphia? Tell of the Constitutional Convention. Tell of Washington's election as President. Describe his trip to New York and the inauguration. What was the importance of Washington's administration? Tell of his farewell address. Tell of his death. What was said of him soon after his death? Write a composition on the character of Washington.

in the face of such united opposition, dared not land his army at Wilmington.

Abandoning North Carolina he sailed away to Charleston to attempt the conquest of South Carolina. There too he found the Americans ready to receive him. The patriot governor, John Rudledge, had gathered 5,000 men at Charleston; and Colonel William Moultrie had built a fort, called Fort Moultrie, to defend the city. On June 28, Clinton attacked the fort, and for ten hours the battle raged furiously. At the end of that time Clinton was forced to withdraw completely beaten, and Charleston was saved. The victories at Moore's Creek Bridge and at Charleston saved the South from conquest in 1776; and two years passed before the British made another attempt in that section.

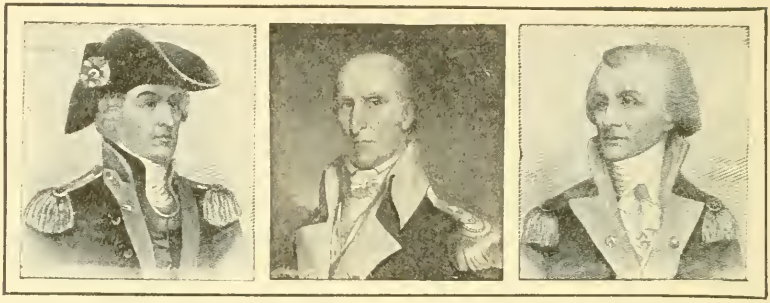
GENERAL ROBERT HOWE.

During these years the South was free from attack, but thousands of southern soldiers marched north, joined Washington's army, and fought bravely under him at Trenton, Princeton, Brandywine, Germantown, Monmouth, and in other important battles. After their failure to capture Washington's army in 1777, the British determined to make another attempt upon the South. This time the first attack was made on Georgia, which was the youngest and weakest of the thirteen colonies. An army of 3,500 men, under Colonel Archibald Campbell, attacked Savannah, which was defended by General Robert Howe, of North Carolina, with about 1,200 soldiers. Howe was defeated and the city fell into Campbell's hands. Soon afterwards the British captured Augusta, and quickly overran the rest of Georgia.

After his defeat at Savannah, Howe was removed from command and General Benjamin Lincoln was sent to take command of the American army in the South (1779). Lincoln attempted to recover Savannah, but was defeated with heavy losses, and compelled to seek safety by retreating to Charleston, S. C. There he allowed his army to be surrounded by a British army and fleet under Sir Henry Clinton, and was compelled to surrender the city and his entire army, May 12, 1780. After this disaster the war in South Carolina was kept up by only a few small bands of irregular soldiers, under such bold leaders as Francis Marion, Andrew Pickens, and Thomas Sumter. Their little bands were too weak to attack the British army, now commanded by Lord Cornwallis, but they cut off his supplies, attacked his foraging parties, and greatly weakened his army.

GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN.

In the summer of 1780 the Continental Congress sent General Horatio Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, to take command of the Americans in the South. Gates was welcomed by Marion, Pickens, and Sumter in South Carolina, and by such leaders as Davie and Caswell in North Carolina. They were all eager to help him in any way they could. But he was so vain and conceited that he despised their aid and would not listen to their advice. He committed blunder after blunder until finally, August 16, 1780, at Camden, S. C., he suffered the worst defeat ever inflicted on an American general. South Carolina, like Georgia, then lay helpless at the feet of Lord Cornwallis, who at once advanced upon Charlotte, in North Carolina, expecting to conquer that colony also.



FRANCIS MARION. ANDREW PICKENS. THOMAS SUMTER.

The only force now between the victorious British and the conquest of North Carolina was a small band of North Carolina horsemen under Colonel William R. Davie. Davie knew that he could not expect to defeat the British army, but he boldly attacked it, hoping to delay its march long enough to enable Gates to collect another army at Salisbury. He proved himself to be the most daring and the ablest cavalry leader in the South, and inflicted so much damage on the British army that Cornwallis wrote that "the counties of Mecklenburg and Rowan are more hostile to England than any in America," and the British officers called Charlotte the "Hornets' Nest."

COL. WILLIAM R. DAVIE.

On September 26, at Charlotte, Davie, with a force of 150 men, held the entire British army in check for four hours, but finally was forced to withdraw, and Cornwallis entered the town. There now seemed to be nothing to keep the British from conquering North Carolina as they had conquered Georgia and South Carolina. But soon after the capture of Charlotte, two important events occurred which at once changed the whole situation. One was the great victory at King's Mountain; the other was the arrival of General Nathaniel Greene to take command of the American Army.

When Cornwallis advanced toward Charlotte he sent a force of 1,200 men under the brave and skillful Major Patrick Ferguson to subdue the patriots and collect supplies in western North Carolina and South Carolina. Ferguson sent word to the settlers beyond the mountains that if they did not stop sending aid to the rebels he would cross the mountains and lay their homes in ashes. Aroused by that threat, bands of western pioneers from Virginia under Colonel William Campbell, and from that part of North Carolina which is now Tennessee, gathered under their leaders, Colonel Isaac Shelby and Colonel John Sevier, and started after Ferguson. On their way they were joined by other North Carolinians under Colonel Benjamin Cleveland and Colonel Joseph McDowell, and by some South Carolina troops under Colonel James Williams and other brave leaders. When Ferguson heard of their approach he was anxious to avoid a battle and hurriedly retreated to a strong position on the top of King's Mountain on the boundary line of North Carolina and South Carolina. There, October 7, 1780, the patriots attacked him with great energy, killed him and took his whole army prisoners. When Cornwallis at Charlotte heard the terrible news, he hurriedly withdrew into South Carolina. The victory at King's Mountain was the turning point of the war in the South; it disheartened Cornwallis, defeated his plans, and encouraged the patriots to renewed resistance.

General Greene arrived in North Carolina in December, 1780. He was then only thirty-eight years old (having been born in Rhode Island in 1742), but already was regarded as an able soldier. He was trained to the blacksmith's trade and during his youth worked at his father's forge. As a boy he was strong and robust, skillful in all kinds of athletic sports, and very studious, being especially fond of mathematics.

In the dispute between the colonies and Great Britain, he took the side of the colonists, and soon became well known for his strong spirit of liberty and independence. Foreseeing that the quarrel would end in war, he determined to prepare himself for it by

studying books on military affairs. As soon as the patriots began to form companies Greene enlisted in one of them as a private. In 1774 he made a trip from his Rhode Island home to Boston and secured some arms for the newly formed companies, which he carried home in his wagon concealed under a load of straw. He also took back with him a deserter from the British army to act as drill-master. The next year, as soon as news of the battle of Lexington reached Rhode Island, the legislature voted to raise three regiments to serve in the American army, and elected Greene brigadier general. He promptly marched his brigade to join the American army at Boston in June, 1775; and when Washington arrived later to take command Greene was elected to welcome him in behalf of the army. A friendship then sprang up between the two soldiers which lasted throughout Greene's life. In Washington's campaigns in the North, Greene rendered such important services that Washington came to regard him as his best general. When the Continental Congress asked Washington, in 1780, to select a general to command the southern army and drive the British out of the South, he at once selected General Greene for that difficult task.

Greene hastened South and on December 2, 1780, took command of the American army at Charlotte, N. C. He had hard work before him. Opposed to him was a British army composed of more than 3,000 experienced soldiers, well clad and fed, well disciplined, elated with victory, and led by skillful officers. Greene had an army composed of less than half that number, half fed, ragged, poorly armed, cast down by defeat, and unused to discipline. Unlike Gates, Greene welcomed the aid and advice of the Southern leaders. One of his first acts was to select Colonel Davie for the important task of equipping the army with clothes, food, arms, and ammunition. Then Greene divided his little army into two small bands. With one under his own command he marched into South Carolina to watch Cornwallis; the other under General Daniel Morgan, a bold and skillful Virginia officer,

he sent into the western part of South Carolina to collect supplies and men, and to crush the Tories.

In the meantime, Cornwallis had been reinforced by 2,000 soldiers from the North. One thousand of his men he now placed under the famous Colonel Banastre Tarleton and sent him to capture Morgan.

COLONEL BANASTRE TARLETON.

Tarleton was a dashing officer, and expecting an easy victory, set out in hot pursuit. Morgan took up a strong position at Cowpens, N. C., where he waited Tarleton's attack. On January 17, 1781, Tarleton's men swept forward. They were met by a hot fire and stubborn resistance, and in less than an hour the British were driven headlong off the field. Tarleton himself led the flight and barely escaped capture.

As soon as Cornwallis heard of this crushing defeat, he set out with his entire army in hot pursuit of Morgan, who hurried into North Carolina. General Greene, anxious for Morgan's safety, sent his own army forward to Salisbury while he himself, with a small guard, rode night and day to join Morgan. Then began one of the most famous retreats in all history. Greene was anxious to unite his two forces before Cornwallis could catch up with

either, and Cornwallis was eager to attack Morgan's band before the union could be made. A long hard race across North Carolina followed, Greene leading with Cornwallis close to his heels.

On February 1, a small American force, under General William L. Davidson, attempted to prevent the British from crossing the Catawba River at Cowan's Ford. Davidson was killed, his troops defeated, and the British continued their pursuit.

Three days later Greene's men landed on the farther bank of the Yadkin River just as the British army appeared on the opposite side, where they were stopped by a sudden rise in the river. Uniting his two forces at last, Greene hastened to get beyond the River Dan into Virginia. Onward sped the flying Americans; close behind followed the eager British in full pursuit.

With great skill, Greene placed his army safely across the Dan, where again the waters rose just as the British appeared, and again checked their pursuit. Once safe beyond the Dan, Greene gave his tired army a needed rest, and then, feeling strong enough at last to fight Cornwallis, recrossed the Dan into North Carolina and prepared for battle.

On March 15, 1781, the two armies met at Guilford Court House, near where Greensboro, N. C., is now. A bloody struggle followed, and at the close of the day Greene retreated from the battlefield, leaving Cornwallis in possession. For this reason the battle of Guilford Court House is called a British victory, but Cornwallis reaped none of the fruits of victory, for the next morning Greene's men were drawn up in line, fresh and eager for another battle, while Cornwallis's men were so badly crippled that he dared not fight.

Instead of risking another battle he hurriedly retreated to Wilmington, where he hoped to meet the British fleet and to receive reinforcements. But Greene, instead of following Cornwallis, returned to South Carolina, determined to drive the British out of that state. Glad to find himself free of his nimble foe, Corn-

wallis declared that North Carolina was conquered and moved into Virginia.

Thus it happened that, though Greene could not claim a victory at Guilford Court House, yet he reaped all the benefits of victory. His battle there saved North Carolina from conquest, left him at liberty to return to the relief of South Carolina and Georgia, and forced Cornwallis into Virginia, where Washington soon afterwards pounced down upon him at Yorktown and captured his whole army. Truly it may be said that if there had been no Guilford Court House there would have been no Yorktown.

Leaving Cornwallis at Wilmington, Greene hurried into South Carolina. On April 25, 1781, at Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, he was attacked by a British force under Lord Rawdon. As at Guilford Court House, the British claimed the victory, but it was such a costly one that Lord Rawdon hastened to seek refuge in Charleston.

During the next two months Greene drove the British out of Fort Motte and Fort Granby, and captured their posts at Orangeburg, Ninety-six, and Augusta. All of upper South Carolina and upper Georgia fell into his hands. Then turning toward the eastern part of South Carolina he attacked the British at Eutaw Springs and completely defeated them. Of their army of 2,300 men only about 1,000 reached Charleston in safety. This battle left all of South Carolina and Georgia, except the cities of Charleston and Savannah, in the hands of the Americans.

Finally, in July, 1782, General Anthony Wayne drove the British out of Savannah, and in the following December they withdrew from Charleston and General Greene marched into that city in triumph.

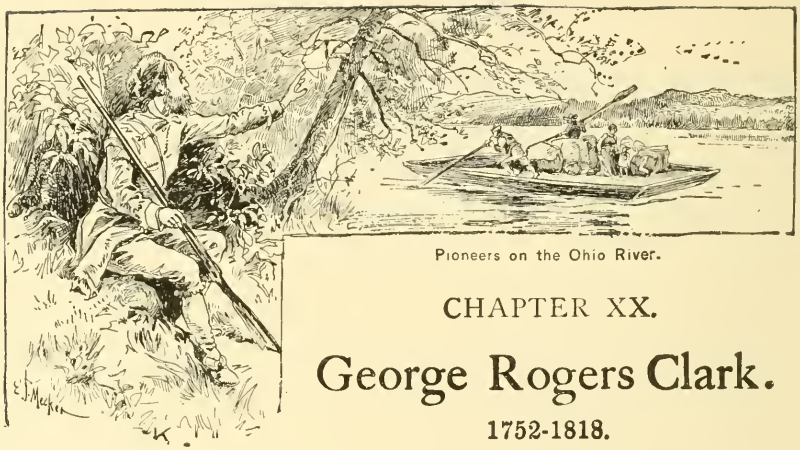
The war was now at an end. All that the British had conquered from Howe, Lincoln and Gates in 1778–1780 had been saved by the skill and energy of Greene. His campaigns in the South had proved him to be second only to Washington among the American generals. Congress voted its thanks to him, and in recognition

of his services, presented him with a gold medal. The states of Georgia, North Carolina, and South Carolina gave him large tracts of land as tokens of their gratitude. After the war he retired to his Georgia estate, Mulberry Grove, near Savannah, where he spent the rest of his life. He did not long survive the Revolution, dying from a sun-stroke, June 19, 1786.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Wilmington, N. C., Fayetteville, N. C., Charleston, S. C., Savannah, Ga., Augusta, Ga., Camden, S. C., Charlotte, N. C., Salisbury, N. C., King's Mountain, N. C., Cowpens, S. C. Trace Greene's retreat across North Carolina from Camden to the River Dan, and back to Guilford Court House. What rivers did he have to cross? Trace Cornwallis's line of march from Guilford Court House to Hillsboro, thence to Wilmington, thence to Halifax, thence to Richmond.

Review Questions. What was the king's plan for a campaign in the South in 1776? What reason did he have for supposing that it would succeed? Give an account of the battle of Moore's Creek Bridge; of the attack on Charleston. What were the results of those two victories? When and where was the next attempt to conquer the South made? Give an account of the conquest of Georgia. What was the result of the British invasion of South Carolina in 1778–1780? Who were the famous partisan leaders of the Carolinas, and how did they wage war against the British? What was the result of Gates's campaign in the South? Describe the advance of Cornwallis on Charlotte. Give an account of Major Ferguson's expedition and describe its effects in the colony. Whom did Washington select to command the American army in the South? Give an account of Greene's early boyhood. How did he prepare himself for the Revolution? How did his friendship with Washington begin? When and where did he take command of the Southern army? Describe his difficulties. What plan of campaign did he adopt? Give an account of the battle of Cowpens. Describe Greene's retreat. Where did he meet Cornwallis and with what result?

In what way was the battle at Guilford Court House a triumph for Greene? Tell how Greene finally drove the British out of South Carolina. What rewards were given him for his services? How did the three states express their gratitude for what he had done for them? What are Greene's claims to be considered next to Washington among American generals?



Pioneers on the Ohio River.

CHAPTER XX.

George Rogers Clark.

1752-1818.

YOU remember that at the close of the French and Indian War all the territory east of the Mississippi River was given by the French to the English. England hoped to build up a great empire in North America. This hope would undoubtedly have been realized had not England brought on the Revolutionary War by taxing the colonies. The war was carried on mainly by the colonies east of the Alleghany Mountains, because the settlements west of the Alleghanies were small and far apart. The territory north of the Ohio River from which the great states of Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, Michigan and Wisconsin have been formed, was, as yet, unsettled except by a few French and some traders from Virginia and Maryland. Detroit in Michigan, Kaskaskia in Illinois, and Vincennes in Indiana were the most important settlements. This vast territory was claimed by Virginia, but during the Revolutionary War she gave it all to the Union.

While the Revolutionary War was in progress, English troops from Canada came into the territory north of the Ohio River. Had these troops been allowed to remain there until the close of the war, all of that vast region would have been the property of England, and probably our country would never

have been the great nation that it is to-day. There was one man who saw that this territory must be conquered from the English. This was George Rogers Clark.

George Rogers Clark was born in Albemarle County, Vir-

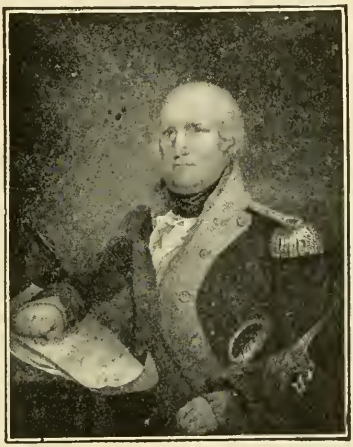
PIONEER EXPLORERS ACCOSTED BY INDIANS.

ginia, in 1752, not far from the birthplace of Thomas Jefferson. Clark never had a college education, but he went to a good private school taught by a Mr. Robertson, where one of his classmates was James Madison, afterwards President of the United States. When only a boy he became a surveyor and

went into the Ohio valley, where he spent his time in hunting, fishing and surveying the lands around him. Soon after this he moved to Kentucky and there became prominent among the settlers. He was brave and bold, a man of fine personal appearance and of pleasing manners. He became a leader in military as well as political affairs. He organized the settlers into companies and secured for them ammunition with which to fight the Indians. Through his influence, a meeting of the citizens was held and he and John Gabriel Jones were elected to represent Kentucky in the Virginia legislature. Kentucky was then a great county in Virginia, and it was a long way from Kentucky to Williamsburg, the capital of the state. There were no railways on which to travel, no fine highways and stage coaches, so he and Jones and their companions had to travel on horseback along the dreary wilderness roads in order to reach Williamsburg. The mountains were rugged and muddy, and they stood constantly in fear of the Indians. Clark's horse died on the way, so that he had to walk during the greater part of the journey. His feet were very sore, but he pushed on and finally reached his destination, having traveled a distance of seven hundred miles.

As soon as he reached eastern Virginia, Clark showed the necessity of defending Kentucky against the Indians and of preserving it against the English, and urged that Kentucky and all of the Northwest Territory should not be left to fall into the hands of the English. Patrick Henry was then governor of Virginia. Clark appeared before him and asked permission to enlist soldiers to cross the Ohio River and to drive the English from the Northwest Territory. The Governor's Council was called and it was decided that Clark should be instructed to raise troops at once to defend Kentucky; but Patrick Henry told him that to defend Kentucky meant that he might cross the Ohio River and attack the English. Henry's instructions to Colonel Clark were: "You are to proceed without

loss of time to enlist seven companies of men. They are to proceed to Kentucky and there to obey such orders and directions as you shall give them." At once Colonel Clark got together the soldiers, and, when all was ready, he sailed down to the mouth of the Ohio River and crossed over into the present State of Illinois. In the southern part of Illinois near the banks of the Mississippi was the little town of Kaskaskia, which was held by a garrison of English troops. The commander of these troops was Rochblave, who had, in addition to the English soldiers, a number of Indians.

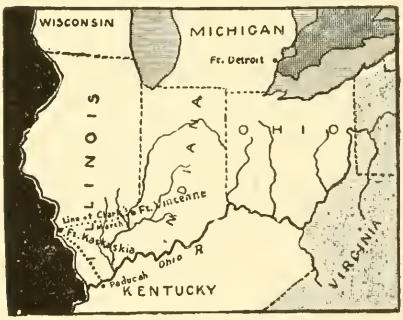


GEORGE ROGERS CLARK.

Clark marched secretly upon Kaskaskia. On the night of July 4, 1778, he surrounded the town and entered the fort so quietly that the English did not dream of danger. Dancing was going on in the fort. Clark walked into the dancing-hall and stood against the door post. The English gentlemen did not even see him, but one of the Indians perceived him and raised a war whoop. Clark quieted him, and told the English that they could continue their dancing; but that they no longer danced under the flag of England, but under the flag of Virginia. He then went to the home of Governor Rochblave, who was captured in his bed. Clark sent the governor to Williamsburg. The capture of Kaskaskia was followed by the conquest of Illinois, which was made into a great county in the State of Virginia.

The English had a large force at Detroit under the command of Governor Hamilton. When Hamilton heard of Clark's invasion of Illinois, he at once determined to drive Clark out of

the Northwest Territory; so he moved south with his army and took possession of Vincennes, a town on the Wabash River in the present State of Indiana. Clark did not have more than one-third as many troops as Hamilton, but he resolved, if possible, to capture Hamilton and his forces in Vincennes. In February, 1779, Clark started on the march from Kaskaskia to Vincennes. The distance is about one hundred and sixty miles. The Wabash River had overflowed its banks and had covered the low grounds all along its course. Through the low grounds, or "drowned lands," Clark marched with his men. Day after day, they went through water up to their waists and sometimes to their necks, but Clark determined not to turn back. On one occasion his men were much disheartened, and Clark knew that something had to be done to encourage them. In one company there was a very large man from Shenandoah County, Virginia. He was about six feet four inches high. With Clark's expedition was a drummer boy about fifteen years of age. When the men hesitated to march into the water, Clark mounted the little drummer boy on the shoulders of the tall soldier, who was ordered to advance into the half frozen water. He did so, with the little drummer boy beating the charge from his lofty perch, while Clark with sword in hand followed them, giving the command, "Forward! march!" as he threw aside the floating ice. Elated and amused with this scene, the men promptly obeyed the order, holding their rifles above their heads.



THE OLD NORTHWEST.

After sixteen days of great perseverance and hardships Clark reached Vincennes. His appearance before the town was a

surprise, as Hamilton had never dreamed that any man would dare to march from Kaskaskia to Vincennes through the drowned lands of the Wabash River. Clark ordered him to surrender, which he at first refused to do. At night Clark attacked the fort so vigorously that the next day Hamilton surrendered. Soon after this all the English forts in the Northwest Territory passed into the hands of Clark.

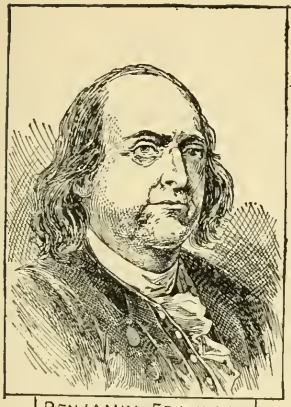
Virginia was delighted with Clark's undertaking. The Legislature passed a vote of thanks, and presented him with a sword. For their services in the war he and his soldiers were afterwards given 150,000 acres of land in what is now the State of Indiana. This grant was made by the State of Virginia. Clark received for his part 8,000 acres, and each private received 108 acres.

In conquering the Northwest Territory from the English, Clark did a great thing for his country. If he had not made this expedition into the Northwest Territory, it would have remained in the hands of the English until the close of the Revolutionary War. By the treaty of peace with England, which acknowledged the independence of the United States, it was agreed that England and the United States should each retain what territory they held at the close of the war. By this treaty Canada, which was never conquered by the United States, was kept by England, but since Clark had conquered the Northwest Territory, this remained in the hands of the United States. So it was through the boldness and bravery of George Rogers Clark that we now have in our union those five magnificent states, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan and Wisconsin.

After the Revolutionary War was over, Clark became a private citizen of Kentucky. He lived until 1818. When he died, the country which he had seen as a wilderness had become populous and wealthy. Already Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana and Illinois had become states in the Union, while Michigan, which at that time included Wisconsin, was a flourishing territory.

Geography Study. *Map of the Middle Western States.* Find Kentucky, Indiana, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan and Wisconsin. Locate Kaskaskia, Vincennes and Detroit. Trace the Wabash River.

Review Questions.—Why was it that England did not build up a great empire in North America? At the time of the Revolution what were the chief settlements north of the Ohio River? Who held the Northwest Territory at the close of the Revolution? Tell of the boyhood of Clark and of his settling in Kentucky. What did he propose to the Virginia Legislature? Tell of his commission. Describe the capture of Kaskaskia. Describe his march to Vincennes and the capture of the town. How did Virginia honor and repay Clark? What was the importance of Clark's enterprise? What was the condition of Kentucky and the Northwest Territory at the time of Clark's death?



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

Franklin Experimenting with Lightning.

CHAPTER XXI.

Benjamin Franklin.

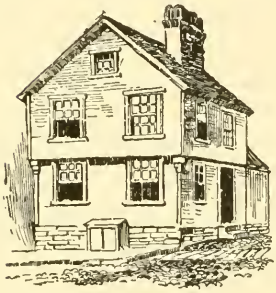
1706-1790.

THE Revolutionary War was a great struggle. It is doubtful whether the thirteen colonies could ever have succeeded but for the aid of France. This aid was secured chiefly through the influence of Benjamin Franklin. He likewise helped to make the treaty with England at the close of the Revolutionary War, and was a prominent member of the great convention of 1787 which gave us the Constitution of the United States.

Franklin was born in Massachusetts in 1706. He had sixteen brothers and sisters. His father was a poor man, and made candles for a living. Franklin was a bright boy, but his father was too poor to give him an education, so at the age of twelve the lad was put to work cutting wicks for candles. One of his brothers ran a newspaper in Boston, and Benjamin was bound to him to learn the printer's trade. At that time there were in America only two or three newspapers, and they were not like our modern newspapers, but were small sheets of four pages. These papers did not have a wide circulation, and often the printers themselves delivered the papers to the subscribers. As a printer boy, Franklin often delivered the newspapers and did many other errands for his brother. Still he found time to read all the good books that

he could get. Though he had been to school but little, he had a great fondness for books, and especially for "The Spectator."

The story of the way in which he got a copy of Addison's "Spectator" is interesting. One day, as he was running very rapidly, with a bundle of newspapers under his arm, up one of the streets of Boston, he ran against a table on which were some apples that an old woman sold to passers-by. Many of the apples were knocked from the table, and Franklin stopped and picked them up, apologizing to the woman for his carelessness. She seemed to be very much interested in Franklin, and asked him if he believed in dreams. Franklin replied, "Oh, yes." The old woman then asked, "But do your dreams come true?" To this Franklin replied, "Well, no; I don't think they do. Do yours?" "Oh, yes," said the old woman, "my dreams always come true, and I dreamed about you last night." This aroused Franklin's curiosity, and he said, "Did you? Well, what did you dream?" She answered, showing him a book, "I dreamed that you bought this book and that you became a very wise man." Franklin took the book and looked at it. It was a copy of Addison's "Spectator." He paid the old woman sixpence for it, took it home with him, and read it and re-read it, and copied it and re-copied it.

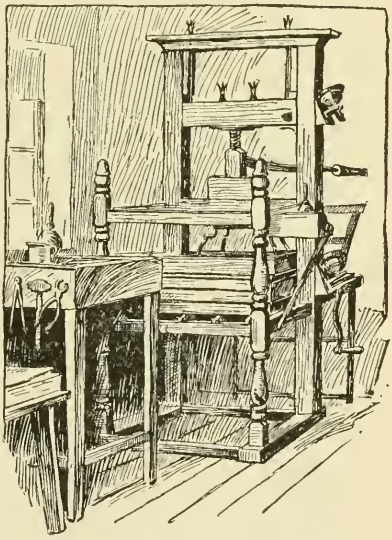


THE BIRTHPLACE OF FRANKLIN.

Franklin learned thoroughly the printer's trade. His brother treated him badly, so he secretly left Boston and went to New York. After searching in vain for work in New York, he went to Philadelphia. When he reached Philadelphia he had only a few pennies in his pocket, and, being very hungry, he spent these for three loaves of bread. Picture to yourself the young boy, only seventeen years of age, walking up Market

Street with a loaf of bread under each arm, while he munched the third. He passed by the house of Mr. Read, and saw, standing in the doorway, Mr. Read's daughter, who laughed at the awkward boy with his three loaves of bread. She did not know Franklin then, but after a while she met him and learned to love him, and became his wife.

Franklin soon secured work as a printer. He met the governor of Pennsylvania, who was very friendly to him. He advised Franklin to go to England and get a printing press, promising to aid him. Franklin believed the governor, and took passage for England; but, after he had gotten on the ocean, he found that the governor had deceived him. Franklin, on reaching England, had no money and no one to help him. He sought work from a London printer, who refused at first to give him anything to do, because he did not think an American could set type. Franklin asked the printer to give him a trial, and as soon as he had set a few lines the printer was so pleased that he employed him. Franklin proved to be the best compositor in the establishment.



AN EARLY PRINTING PRESS.

Many printers worked in the same shop, and, though none of them received large wages, they always bought beer for their dinner. Franklin would not spend his money in this way, and soon he persuaded some of the printers to give up the beer-drinking habit. Having

saved his money by keeping out of bad habits, Franklin bought a printing press and returned to Philadelphia.

Franklin now entered upon a period of great prosperity. He opened a book and paper store, started a newspaper called the *Gazette*, and printed an almanac known as "Poor Richard's Almanac," in which were many sayings of one who called himself Poor Richard. Here are some of the sayings:

"Keep thy shop, and thy shop will keep thee."

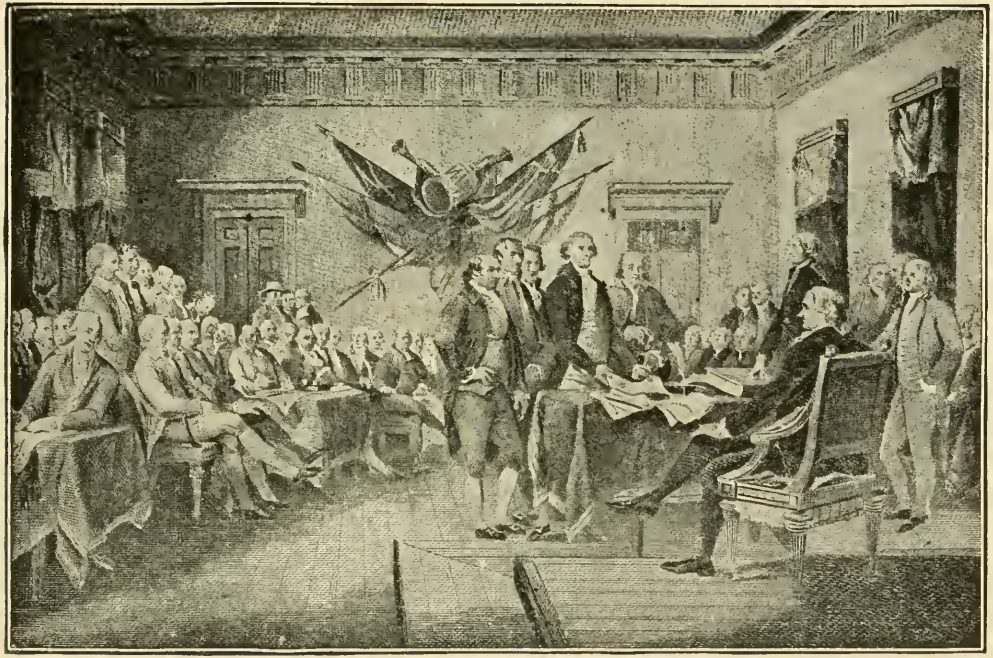
"Necessity never made a good bargain."

"It is hard for an empty sack to stand upright."

Franklin did much to advance science and learning. He discovered that electricity is the same as lightning. He invented the Franklin stove which is used to this day. He started a public library in Philadelphia and founded the University of Pennsylvania. His reputation for learning caused Harvard and Yale colleges to confer upon him the honorary degree of Master of Arts. Some years afterwards, when representing Pennsylvania in England, Oxford University made him a Doctor of Laws because of scientific discoveries.

Franklin served in the legislature of Pennsylvania for many years, and at one time was postmaster-general for the colonies, with Mr. William Hunter as his associate.

He believed that the English colonies should be closely united, and at the opening of the French and Indian War he proposed a plan for their union—the first real plan proposed for a union of all the English colonies in America. Pennsylvania sent him to England as the agent for the colony. While he was there, the English Parliament passed the Stamp Act, which was so bitterly opposed in America. Franklin objected very strongly to this measure and told the English politicians that the Americans would never submit to it, that the Americans were a liberty-loving people, and that of every twenty dollars which they had, they would be willing to spend nineteen to



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

protect one. It was largely through Franklin's influence that the English government repealed the Stamp Act, but as England would not give up the right of taxation, Franklin saw that war was inevitable, and therefore returned to America. He arrived in Philadelphia, in May, 1775, just sixteen days after the opening battle of the Revolution at Lexington, Massachusetts.

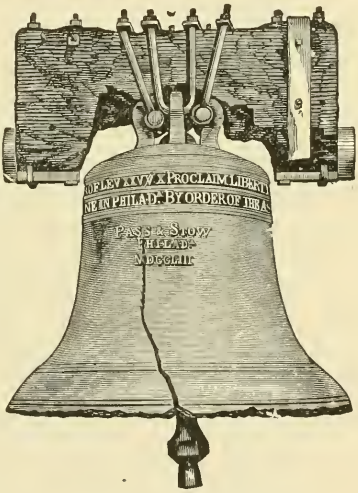
Franklin took a prominent part in urging the Americans to fight until they won their independence. Pennsylvania elected him a member of the Continental Congress, and in that body he did much to encourage the colonies in their struggle for freedom.

Franklin was always fond of telling jokes, and by these he kept up a cheerfulness among the members of Congress. When the Declaration of Independence was adopted on the fourth day of July, 1776, and the members came up to sign the great document, they knew that if the war against England failed, those who signed the Declaration would be executed as traitors. It was urged, therefore, that all should sign and stand together. Franklin laughed and said, "Yes, we must indeed hang together; or assuredly we shall all hang separately."

At the time of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, Franklin proposed to Congress a plan of union for the colonies. His plan was not adopted, but it set Congress to work, and the outcome of Franklin's suggestion was that, in 1781, a scheme of government was agreed upon for the thirteen states known as The Articles of Confederation. This was our first constitution.

In the midst of the Revolutionary War, Franklin was sent to France along with Silas Deane and Arthur Lee, to obtain, if possible, the help of France against England. Franklin was received in France with marks of the highest esteem. In those days, people wore wigs, but Franklin did not. The French admired him for not wearing a wig and for his simplicity of dress.

He always wore a simple suit of brown clothes made in the colonial fashion. He never carried a sword, and the French were amazed that his only defense was a walking-stick. Whenever he went along the streets of Paris, the people thronged to see him and respectfully made room for him to pass. On one occasion the French king and queen received him. Even at the court reception, he did not wear a wig or a sword, and was dressed in his usual brown suit.



THE LIBERTY BELL.
(Now hanging in Independence Hall, Philadelphia.)

The simple republican spirit of Franklin made him very popular among the French, and it was mainly through his influence that the King of France made a treaty with the American colonies (1777), and promised them aid in the war. It was this aid that enabled the Americans to bring the war to a successful close by forcing Cornwallis to surrender at Yorktown.

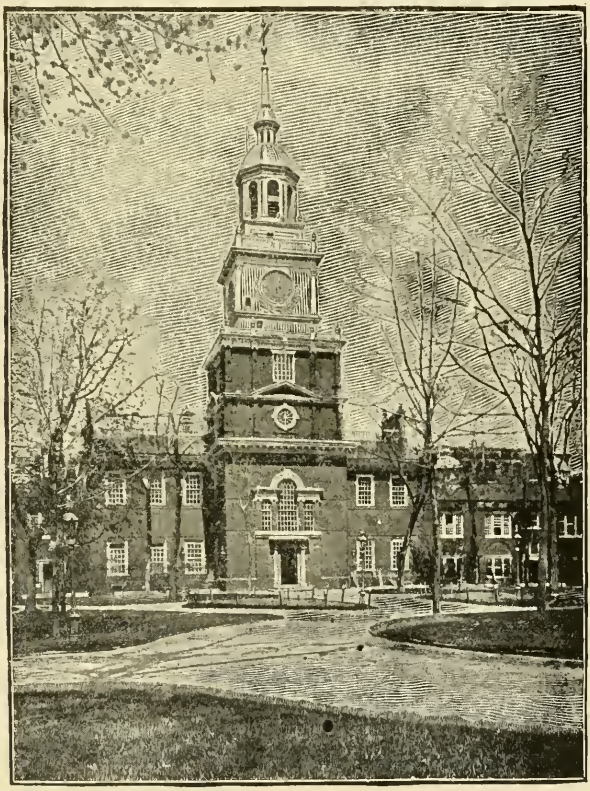
When the Revolutionary War closed, Franklin, John Jay and John Adams represented the United States government in making the treaty of peace with England. By his tact and skill, Franklin succeeded in making a treaty which allowed the United States to retain the Northwest Territory. After the treaty of peace had been signed, a dinner was given in Paris in honor of the peace. At this dinner the English ambassador proposed as a toast: "George III: Like the glorious sun at mid-day, he illumines the world." The French minister offered his toast: "Louis XVI: Like the full moon rising in splendor,

he dissipates the shades of night." Then Franklin slowly rose, and with all eyes fixed upon him asked the company to join him in the toast: "George Washington: Like Joshua of old, he commanded the sun and the moon to stand still, and they obeyed him."

For three years longer, Franklin remained in France. He was now an old man nearly eighty years of age. The French people begged him not to leave France, and many of them offered him a home in their families, telling him that not even in America would he be so much loved and esteemed as in France; but the love of his country, his family and his friends was too strong for him to remain in Europe, so he set sail and reached Philadelphia in September, 1785. When he landed, a great multitude met him, and escorted him to his home. Franklin was very feeble at this time, but the people of his state again called him into service. For three successive terms he was elected president of Pennsylvania.

When Franklin returned home, he found the United States in a very serious condition. During the Revolutionary War large debts had been made, and Congress had not raised the money to pay them. The government was growing weaker and weaker each day, and it looked as if the new republic would fail. The government under the Articles of Confederation was not strong enough to meet the urgent demands of the time; therefore, it was decided to call a special convention to prepare a new plan of government for the states. This Convention met in Independence Hall, in Philadelphia (1787), and drew up the present Constitution of the United States. The president of the Convention was George Washington. Franklin, then an old man eighty-one years of age, was elected as one of the representatives from the State of Pennsylvania. The members of the convention found it difficult to agree upon a constitution. At one time it looked as though they would adjourn without proposing any

plan of government. The Convention had opened morning after morning without prayer; and then it was that Franklin rose and said: "How has it happened, Sir, that we have not hitherto once



INDEPENDENCE HALL.

thought of humbly applying to the Father of Lights to illuminate our understanding? In the beginning of the contest with Britain, when we were sensible of danger, we had daily prayers in this room for the divine protection. Our prayers, Sir, were heard,

and they were graciously answered. Have we now forgotten that powerful Friend, or do we imagine we no longer need His assistance? I have lived, Sir, a long time, and the longer I live, the more convincing proofs I see of this truth, that God governs in the affairs of men." After this speech the Convention opened every morning with prayer.

In a little while, a Constitution was agreed upon. When the members came up to sign the great document, Franklin stood rubbing his eyeglasses. He looked at the picture which was behind the chair in which Washington as president of the Convention had sat. It was a picture of the sun. He turned to one of the members and said: "I have often and often in the course of the session and in the vicissitudes of my hopes and fears looked at that picture behind the president without being able to tell whether the sun was rising or setting, but now, at length, I have the happiness to know that the sun of America is rising."

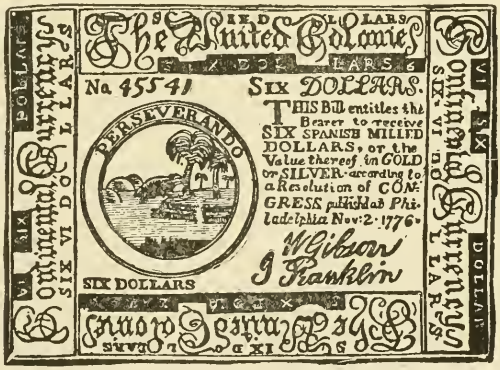
Franklin now retired from public life. He lived until 1790, long enough to see the new Constitution go into operation with Washington as President, and to know that the country, which he loved so dearly, was to be a great nation. When Franklin died, the Congress of the United States voted as a tribute of respect, that each member should wear crape for thirty days, and the French Assembly voted that each member of their body should wear mourning in his honor for three days.

Franklin was one of our greatest men. He encouraged learning and science, and he loved his country and her people with all his heart.

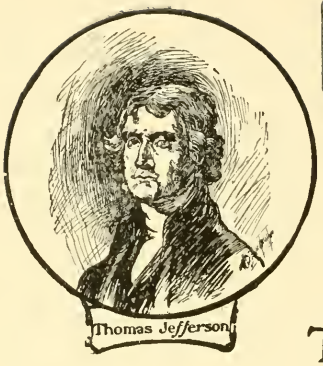
Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Boston, New York and Philadelphia. How far is it from Boston to New York? How far from New York to Philadelphia? *Map of the World.* Find London and Paris. How far is it from London to Philadelphia? How far from Paris to Philadelphia? How many miles would you travel if you went

twice from Philadelphia to London and returned, and once from Philadelphia to Paris and returned?

Review Questions. Why should you know of Franklin? Tell of Franklin's early life and his career as a printer boy in Boston. How did he get his first copy of Addison's Spectator? Why did Franklin leave Boston? Describe his first appearance in Philadelphia. Why did he go to England? Tell of Franklin as a printer in England. What did he do when he returned to Philadelphia? Tell of "Poor Richard's Almanac" and some of the sayings. What discovery did Franklin make? What library and what university did he found? What part did Franklin take in the government of Pennsylvania. Tell of Franklin as the agent of Pennsylvania in England. What did Franklin say when the Declaration of Independence was being signed? What did he mean? Tell of Franklin in France. What treaty did he make with France? What part did he play in the treaty of peace with England? Tell of the toasts at the dinner in Paris. Describe his return to Philadelphia. How did Pennsylvania honor him? Tell of the necessity for a constitution. Why did Franklin move to open the convention with prayer? What were his words? What did he say when the Constitution was being signed? Tell of his death. How was his memory honored?


The United Colonies
No 45541
SIX DOLLARS.
THIS Bill entitles the Bearer to receive SIX SPANISH MILLED DOLLARS, or the Value thereof, in GOLD or SILVER, according to a Resolution of CONGRESS, published at Philadelphia Nov: 2. 1776.
PERSEVERANDO
W Gibson
I Franklin
SIX DOLLARS

AN OLD CONTINENTAL BILL.



At Work on the Declaration.

CHAPTER XXII.

Thomas Jefferson.

1743-1826.

BEFORE the Revolutionary War, Williamsburg was the capital of Virginia. At one end of its main street was William and Mary College; at the other was the old capitol, in which the House of Burgesses met. There stood on this same street an inn known as Raleigh Tavern, one room of which, "The Apollo," was used as a dancing-hall. It was often the custom of the students of the college to assemble in the Apollo Room to enjoy the pleasures of the dance. During the winter of 1760 and 1761, one of the leaders in this amusement was a tall, thin young student, "with red hair, a freckled face, and pointed features." This young man was Thomas Jefferson.

Jefferson was born in April, 1743, at Shadwell, near Charlottesville, Virginia. He was the son of Peter and Jane Jefferson, and was the third of ten children. His mother was a daughter of Isham Randolph, one of the wealthiest planters in Virginia.

Thomas Jefferson started to school when he was five years old. He was a good student, and, when he entered William and Mary College at the age of seventeen, he was prepared to take a high rank in his classes. During his first session at college he spent a good deal of money and idled away much of his time;

but in his second year, he was a diligent student, and as a rule studied fifteen hours a day.

At this time the culture and fashion of Virginia centered at Williamsburg. Every year the principal planters went there with their families to enjoy the pleasures of the colonial capital. During his first year's stay at William and Mary College, Thomas Jefferson took a leading part in the gay social life of the town. He was very intimate with Governor Fauquier, and was always invited to the parties given at "the palace," as the governor's residence was called. After graduating from the college he took up the study of law under the direction of George Wythe, a prominent lawyer of Williamsburg.

When a law student, he would sometimes go down to the old capitol to hear the debates in the House of Burgesses. One day, while he and several other students were standing at the door, one of the Burgesses was speaking in a most eloquent strain. He recognized in the speaker the "happy-go-lucky" young man whom he had before seen at frolics entertaining the young people with jokes, dancing and fiddling. This was Patrick Henry, and he was making his famous speech against the Stamp Act.

At about the age of twenty-four, Jefferson began to practice law. He had neither a strong nor a clear voice and consequently was not a good speaker; but he was an easy and fluent writer. After he had practiced seven or eight years, he became one of the most successful lawyers in Virginia.

While Thomas Jefferson was practicing law, he made the acquaintance of John Wayles, a wealthy lawyer, who owned several plantations and many slaves. Mr. Wayles and his widowed daughter, Mrs. Skelton, spent much of their time at "The Forest," one of his estates, which was just outside of Williamsburg. Mrs. Skelton was young, accomplished and pretty, and we are not surprised to learn that Jefferson often

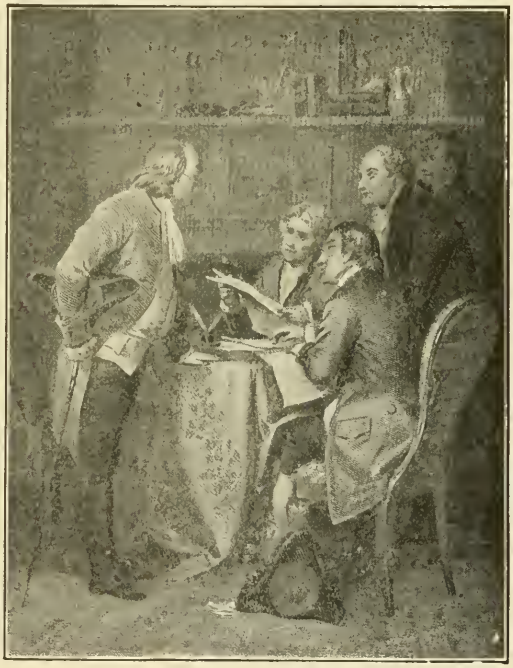
took his violin out to her home to play duets with her. These visits were continued until January, 1772, when Jefferson and the young widow were married. After the wedding, the bride and groom started in a two-horse carriage for Monticello, their future home, which was one hundred and fifty miles distant. The weather was bad, and before they reached the end of their journey, they had to leave the carriage and proceed on horseback. When they arrived at Monticello, the fires were all out and the servants were away from the house. The dark, snow-covered mountain presented a dreary prospect to the young couple; but they were very happy and only joked and laughed at their experience. They went into a pavilion in the yard, and Jefferson found in a bookcase some biscuits and wine, which were the only refreshments that he could offer his bride.

MONTICELLO, JEFFERSON'S HOME.

In 1769 Jefferson became a member of the House of Burgesses. At this time, the dispute which brought on the Revolutionary War was rising between England and the American colonies. The Virginia Assembly sympathized with the revolutionary movement, and passed resolutions that the governor considered disloyal to the mother country. As a rebuke for this spirit of rebellion, the governor dissolved the Assembly, but the members, instead of going home, met in the Apollo Room of the Raleigh Tavern to advise with each other as to what measures

they had best adopt. Jefferson had an active part in the deliberations that took place in the room where he had often danced in his college days.

The Revolutionary War broke out in 1775, but it was not until July of the next year that the American colonies declared themselves independent. Virginia declared herself free, and instructed her delegates in the Continental Congress to urge that body to assert the independence of all the colonies. In obedience to these instructions, Richard Henry Lee, a member of Congress from Virginia, on the seventh of June, 1776, offered a resolution in the Continental Congress declaring that "these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States." Congress elected five of its members as a committee on a declaration of independence. Thomas Jefferson received the highest number of votes, and thus became the chairman of the committee. He wrote all of the original Declaration except a few words, which were put in by



From a painting by Chappel.

THE COMMITTEE DRAFTING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

John Adams and Benjamin Franklin, members of the committee. But before it was adopted, the Declaration of Independence was discussed in Congress for three days, and some changes were made in the original draft. On the fourth of July, 1776, the Declaration was signed in its amended form by all except one of the members present.

Jefferson left the Continental Congress in September of the same year, and soon afterwards took his seat in the Virginia legislature. He thought that some reforms were badly needed in his own state, and, therefore, believed that he could do more good in the Virginia legislature than he could in Congress.

The Episcopal Church had been established in Virginia since the first settlement at Jamestown, and everybody was taxed to support it, even those who were members of other denominations. Jefferson now brought before the legislature a bill providing that no one should be punished for his religious beliefs or be forced to contribute to the support of any church. This bill was changed, before it became a law, so that the act as passed did not give complete religious freedom; but something was done in that direction. About nine years later Jefferson's famous bill establishing religious liberty was passed. Although it was Madison who carried the bill through the legislature, it was Jefferson who began the fight for complete religious liberty, and to him we are most indebted for the principle that every man may worship God in his own way without being taxed to support an established church.

Before her separation from England and for a short time thereafter, Virginia had laws of entail and primogeniture. Under the entail system a land owner could will his estate to his descendants in such a way that they could not cut it up and sell it, but had to let it pass from heir to heir in the way prescribed by the entail. The law of primogeniture provided that all the land and other real estate of those who died without a will should

pass to their oldest sons. In consequence of these laws much of the land was owned in large tracts, which the owners could not sell. Through Jefferson's influence the legislature repealed these laws, and provided that in the division of estates left by those dying without wills, the oldest son should not have any advantage over the other children.

When Henry retired as governor of Virginia, Jefferson was elected as his successor and served two years. When Benjamin Franklin returned from France, Jefferson was appointed as our minister to that country. He was therefore absent in France when the Constitution of the United States was adopted. After a few years' absence he returned to America, and, when Washington became President, Jefferson was his first Secretary of State. In the early part of Washington's second term, he resigned and retired to private life at Monticello. He took a lively interest in the affairs of the country and was the recognized leader of those who were opposed to allowing Congress to exercise wide powers. Jefferson believed that to Congress belonged only those powers granted to it by the Constitution. These were the views of all who believed in *state-rights*, i. e., that all powers not expressly granted to Congress by the Constitution belonged to the states.

Valentine.

THE STATUE OF JEFFERSON.
(At Richmond, Virginia.)

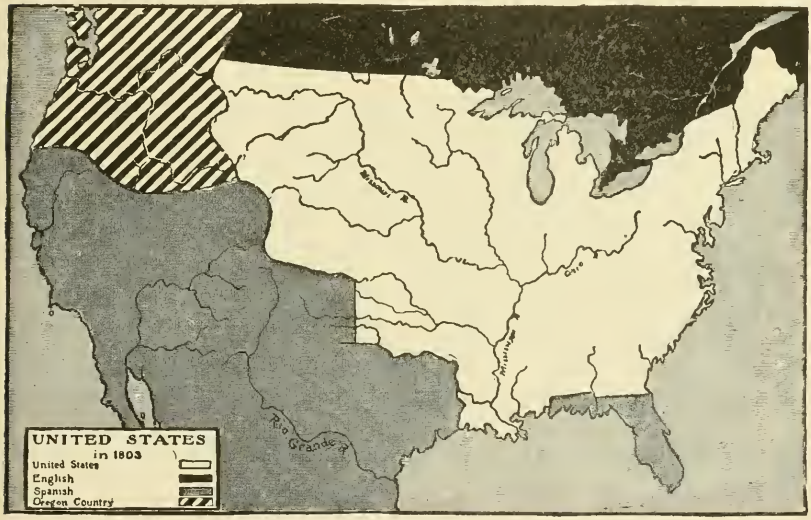
Jefferson's party was called the Anti-Federalist, Jeffersonian

or Republican, but more commonly the Democratic-Republican party. Opposed to the Democratic-Republicans were the Federalists, headed by Alexander Hamilton of New York. The Federalists believed that Congress might pass any law which would be for the good of the country, whether or not the right was granted expressly by the Constitution. When Washington declined a third term, Jefferson and John Adams were the candidates for the presidency. Adams was elected President, but Jefferson was made Vice-President. Adams made himself very unpopular, and at the next election (1801) the Federalist party was defeated, and Jefferson was elected. The people honored him with a second term, but, like Washington, he declined a third.

The most important event of Jefferson's administration was the purchase of the Louisiana Territory. By the treaty of peace at the close of the French and Indian War (1763), the Mississippi River was made the western boundary of the English colonies, while all the vast territory between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains was given to Spain. Spain also held the city of New Orleans and both sides of the Mississippi at its mouth. After the treaty of peace with England in 1783, the territory west of the Alleghany Mountains began to increase in population and resources. Cotton and grain were grown in great quantities, and an outlet to the Gulf of Mexico was necessary for the further growth of this section. Naturally the Mississippi was the water way of Tennessee, of Kentucky and of the Northwest Territory; but Spain closed the port of New Orleans to the Americans.

Hardly had Jefferson been inaugurated when he heard that Spain had sold all of the Louisiana Territory to France. Jefferson instructed Robert Livingston, our minister to France, to try to purchase New Orleans from the French, but Napoleon would not listen to such a proposal. Jefferson then sent to France, as a special agent of the United States government, James Monroe, who was to open negotiations with Napoleon. When Monroe

reached France, Napoleon had changed his mind, and was ready to sell not only New Orleans, but all of the Louisiana Territory. Livingston and Monroe thereupon signed a treaty with France agreeing to pay fifteen million dollars for the whole Louisiana Territory, which included all of the land between the Gulf of Mexico on the south and British America on the north, the Mississippi on



THE UNITED STATES AFTER THE PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA.

the east and the Rocky Mountains on the west. Monroe and Livingston had no constitutional right to make this treaty, and Jefferson felt that the Constitution did not give the right to acquire territory, but he knew that the acquisition of so vast an area would increase greatly the power of the United States, so he signed the treaty and the Senate agreed to it (1803). The territory of the United States was thus doubled. Napoleon hated to sell Louisiana to the United States, but he did not want England to have it. When he signed the treaty, he said: "This accession

of territory forever strengthens the power of the United States, and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

During his second administration, Jefferson had much trouble with England and France about our commerce. Both of these nations seized our ships on the high seas, and took the goods of our merchants without paying for them. Jefferson tried to prevent this by laying an embargo, which forbade ships from leaving American ports with cargoes for foreign countries. This crippled New England's trade and made Jefferson unpopular in that section. Jefferson's plan was to avoid war with Europe. The English also boarded our vessels, took some of the sailors, claiming that they were English, and forced them to serve on English vessels. This was very harsh and tyrannical in England, and finally brought on war after Jefferson had retired from the presidency.

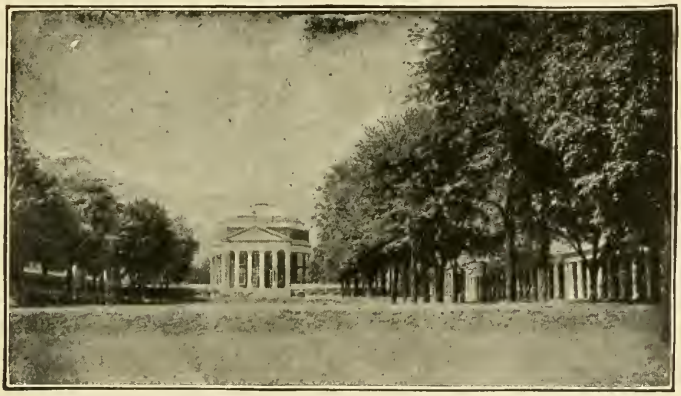
James Madison of Virginia was Jefferson's successor as President (1809). He served for two terms, and during his administration the second war with England was fought.

Jefferson lived to see another Virginian, James Monroe, serve two terms as President (1817-1825). Monroe had been prominent in acquiring Louisiana, and during his administration he bought Florida from Spain for five million dollars.

On his retirement from the presidency, Jefferson went to spend the remainder of his days on his plantation, Monticello. The close of his life, however, was not a period of inactivity. He had always taken great interest in education, and had planned a school system for Virginia that included all grades of instruction from the primary school to the university. His scheme was never fully put into operation, but he still hoped that Virginia might provide for the higher education of her sons at home. As he now had no other public duties to engage his attention, he undertook to establish a university at Charlottesville,

a village about two miles from Monticello. As a result of his endeavors, that great institution, the University of Virginia, was founded in 1819. He lived to see only the beginning of the brilliant career that the university has enjoyed for three quarters of a century. He died on the fourth of July, 1826, just fifty years after the Declaration of Independence had been signed.

Jefferson probably influenced our country more than any



THE GROUNDS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

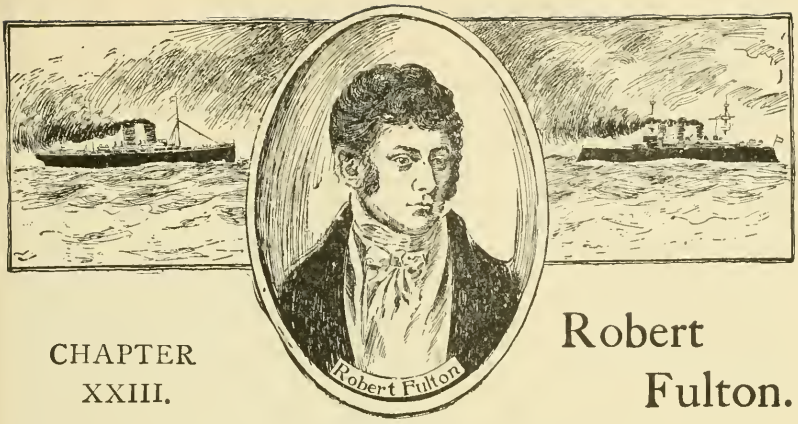
other of our great men. He believed that the people should rule, and that all persons should be educated. His idea that all men are equal has made our country the republic which it is to-day, and many of our views of freedom and liberty come from him.

Jefferson wished to be remembered for three things, and he put these in the inscription which he wrote for his own monu ment. If you should visit Monticello where he was buried, you will read the inscription, as follows:

"Here was Buried
THOMAS JEFFERSON,
Author of
the Declaration of
American Independence;
of
the Statute of Virginia for
Religious Freedom;
and
Father of the
University of Virginia."

Geography Study. *Map of Virginia.* Find Charlottesville and Williamsburg. How far is it from Williamsburg to Charlottesville? *Map of the United States.* Find New Orleans. What states lie between the Rocky Mountains and the Mississippi River?

Review Questions. Tell of Jefferson's life in Williamsburg when he was a student. What kind of man was Jefferson in appearance? What sort of lawyer was he? Tell of Jefferson's marriage and trip to Monticello. Tell of Jefferson in the House of Burgesses. How did Jefferson come to write the Declaration of Independence? What laws did Jefferson have carried through the Virginia Legislature? What important positions did Jefferson hold? Of what party was Jefferson the leader and founder? Tell of the Louisiana Purchase. What troubles did Jefferson have with England and France? What two Virginians were presidents for the last sixteen years of Jefferson's life? Tell of the purchase of Florida. What great institution did Jefferson establish? What was Jefferson's influence? What three things did he wish to be remembered for?



CHAPTER XXIII.

Robert Fulton.

1765-1815.

WHILE Jefferson was President, the United States entered upon a period of great industrial prosperity. The powers of Europe realized that the United States would be a great country. Our lands were fertile and produced large quantities of corn, wheat, tobacco and cotton. In 1793 Eli Whitney, a native of Connecticut, invented the cotton gin. At that time he was teaching school in Georgia and noticed how hard it was to pick the seeds from the cotton, so he constructed a machine by which cotton could be separated from the seed very rapidly. The invention of this machine, which is called the cotton gin, made the raising of cotton very profitable. With wheat, corn, cotton and tobacco in great abundance, with iron and coal stored away in its mountains, it was seen that the United States needed only the means of carrying its goods from point to point to make it a great and prosperous country. Sailboats and stagecoaches furnished poor means of transportation and travel.

The invention of the steamboat and the introduction of steam railways marked great epochs in the history of our country. Robert Fulton built the first successful steamboat.

Robert Fulton was born in Lancaster County, Pennsylvania,

in 1765. His father was an Irishman, and died when Robert was only three years old. As a boy, therefore, Fulton had no one to depend upon except himself, but he worked hard and succeeded in whatever he undertook. He could draw almost anything that he tried, so he determined to be an artist. But even while he was learning to paint pictures and landscapes, and was making money enough to support himself, he showed a great fondness for mechanics. He was constantly trying to make some kind of machine. When only fourteen years of age he made a model of a fishing boat with paddle wheels on each side to be worked by a crank.

In those days there lived in England a great painter named Benjamin West. Fulton longed to go over to England and meet him, so he worked hard and saved his money, part of which he spent in buying a farm for his mother and sisters. He kept the rest of his money, and at the age of twenty-one sailed for England. There he became acquainted with West, who encouraged him and showed him many kindnesses, introducing young Fulton to many of the English noblemen, among whom was the Duke of Bridgewater. At this time in northern England coal had to be carried from one place to another on pack horses. The Duke advised Fulton to become a civil engineer, and to go to the north of England where he could aid in the building of canals to displace the pack horses. Fulton became greatly interested in canals, but when he saw how slow and difficult it was to carry on traffic with the boats drawn by a horse that walked along on the banks, he began to wonder if he could not make a steamboat. He saw the steam engines which Watt, the great English inventor, had made, and then Fulton conceived the plan of building a boat and putting on each side of it two big wheels with paddles. Inside of the boat would be one of Watt's engines, the power of which would be applied to the axle on which the wheels were fastened. Fulton fully believed that such a boat

would be a great success, but it was a long time before he could carry out his scheme. The people to whom he made known his plans did not believe in them.

Up to this time all attempts to solve the problem of steam navigation had failed. Rumsey put a steamboat on the Potomac River and it succeeded; but it ran only four miles an hour. Other inventors who had tried to run vessels by steam had been no more fortunate than Rumsey.

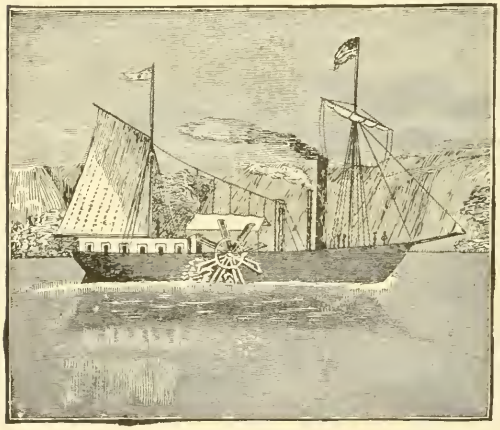
THE STATUE OF FULTON.
(In the Capitol at Washington.)

Fulton went to Paris to experiment with some torpedo boats, and while there he met Robert Livingston of New York, who was the United States minister to France. He told Livingston of his scheme to build a steamboat, and they at once formed a partnership for testing Fulton's plans.

Fulton had little money, so the means were furnished by Livingston. An engine, the plans of which were drawn by Fulton, was ordered from Watt's foundry at Birmingham, England, and was shipped to New York in 1806. Fulton came at once to New York, and began work on his boat. He found that more money was needed, and as Livingston had already furnished more than he promised, Fulton was forced to borrow. The story is told, that he had great difficulty in getting $1000, because everybody believed that this undertaking was fool-hardy. Finally one prominent banker agreed to help, provided his name

was not used. The gentleman said: "I shouldn't like for people to come after me to learn why I was such a dunce."

After many delays, by August, 1807, Fulton had his steamboat ready for a trial trip. The vessel, which he named the *Clermont*, was examined by a number of men of science, some of whom were very doubtful as to whether it would run. They did not believe that wheels with paddles turning in the water would run a boat. Fulton announced, however, that he would make a trip from New York to Albany. When the *Clermont* steamed away from New York, everybody stood amazed. The distance from New York to Albany is only one hundred and sixty miles, and, though a sailboat sometimes made the trip in sixteen hours, it often took a whole week. The *Clermont* on its first trip made the voyage in thirty-two hours and returned in thirty. This was regarded as a marvelous feat, and soon everybody was talking about Fulton and his steamboat. As the *Clermont* so excelled the sailing vessels in speed, it was plied regularly between New York and Albany. In a little while other steamboats were built, and, twelve years after, the first steamship crossed the Atlantic Ocean.



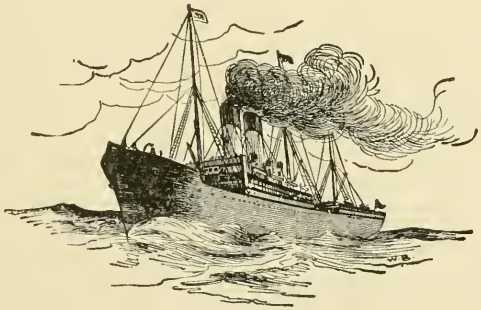
THE CLERMONT.

Fulton died in 1815. Fifteen years later the first steam railway was built in America (1830). Since the time of Fulton a

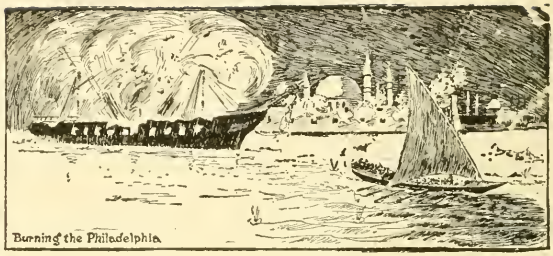
wonderful change has taken place in steam navigation. We now have magnificent steamers, plying between all the large cities of our country and crossing the ocean to Europe. All parts of our country are easily reached because we have such splendid railroads; but one hundred years ago, before Fulton built his steamboat, there was no way of traveling except by sailing vessels, stagecoaches, and on horseback. Fulton gave the world a great gift in his little boat, the *Clermont*.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find New York and Albany. On what river are these two cities located? How far is it from New York to Albany? How would you make the trip from New York to Albany?

Review Questions. Why did our country prosper? What did Eli Whitney do? How did people travel a hundred years ago? Tell of the early life of Fulton. Why did he go to England? What did the Duke of Bridgewater advise Fulton to do? Who was Watt? What plan did Fulton conceive? What did Rumsey do? How did Livingston help Fulton? Tell of the building of the *Clermont*. What did men of science say about the boat? Tell of its first trip up the Hudson. For what has steam been used since the days of Fulton? Tell of the difference between travel now and one hundred years ago.



A MODERN STEAMSHIP.



CHAPTER XXIV.

Stephen Decatur.

1779-1820.

YOU remember that Napoleon said, when he signed the treaty selling us the Louisiana Territory, that England would some day have a great rival on the seas in the United States. At that time our nation was young and had made little progress as a commercial or naval power. To-day we have a great number of vessels which go to all parts of the world, and many of our cities have become large because of their commerce. When a country becomes a great commercial power it is necessary to have a navy, and for that reason our navy is being improved every year.

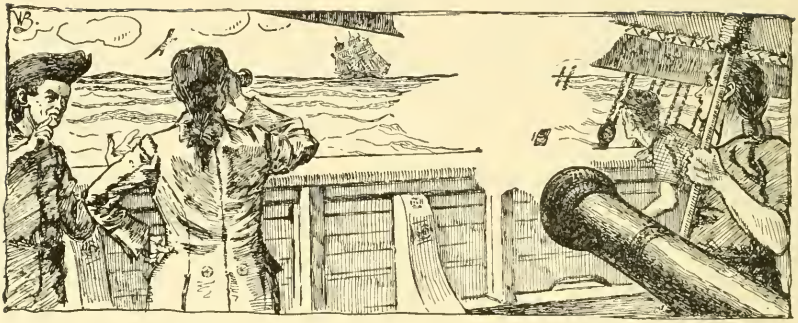
During the Revolutionary War we had practically no navy, but there were some American vessels which were bold and strong enough to stand against an English man-of-war. Such a vessel was the *Bon Homme Richard*, which was commanded by John Paul Jones. In this ship he roved the high seas and did much damage to English commerce.

When Jefferson was President, we had a small, but strong navy. In the northern part of Africa is a small country called Tripoli, the ruler of which was at that time (1803) a pirate. The European nations were accustomed to pay him large sums of money if he would not plunder their commerce. He demanded that the United States should do likewise; but Jefferson refused to pay

him tribute, so Tripoli began to seize our merchant ships. Jefferson at once sent some war vessels against Tripoli, and forced her to stop robbing American vessels. One young man who distinguished himself in this war against Tripoli was Stephen Decatur.

Decatur was born in Maryland in 1779. His father was an officer in the United States navy, and at an early age young Decatur acquired a love for the sea. When he was only eight years old he made his first voyage with his father. He was educated at an academy in Philadelphia and afterwards entered the University of Pennsylvania. As a boy, he was good-tempered and full of mirth. He was not quarrelsome, and very seldom gave offense to any one, but he was bold and courageous, and was not slow to resent an injury. If he saw a young boy being imposed upon by an older one, he would always take the part of the small boy. He loved his mother dearly and would not allow her to be insulted. One day on returning home from a fishing trip, he found his mother soothing his younger brother John, who had received a blow from a drunken man, upon whom the little boy had played some childish prank. She upbraided the assailant for his unmanly treatment of her little son. Instead of apologizing, the man began to abuse Mrs. Decatur. At once young Stephen dropped his fishing rod and basket on the pavement and, walking up to the drunken man, said: "Do you know who that lady is, sir? That is my mother. She must be treated with respect." The man replied that he neither knew or cared who she was. Decatur then said, "If you have any complaint to make against my brother, sir, make it to me." The man became very angry and made a blow at Stephen, who, striking back, knocked the drunken fellow down. Stephen's mother reproved him for this, but he replied, "Mother, you need not feel sorry, for he deserved it all."

Decatur became greatly interested in mathematics and in the construction of ships. He went to work for a Philadelphia com-



AMERICAN SAILORS FIRING ON A HOSTILE VESSEL.

pany, the agents of the navy, who, in order to gratify his tastes, sent him into New Jersey to see to the getting out of the keel pieces for the frigate *United States*, which was then being built in Philadelphia. Young Decatur thus aided in the selection of the timber that was put into the war-vessel that he afterwards so gallantly commanded.

Shortly after this he entered the United States navy and became a midshipman, in which position he was always faithful, kind-hearted, generous, noble and willing to sacrifice himself for others. One day a cry was heard upon deck: "A man overboard!" Decatur ran at once to the mizzen chains, plunged into the sea and saved the drowning man.

The depredations of Tripoli upon the commerce of the United States caused President Jefferson to send a squadron under command of Commodore Preble into the Mediterranean to force the Tripolitans to cease their piracy. With this naval force was Decatur, then a lieutenant. One of the American frigates, the *Philadelphia*, ran aground off Tripoli and was captured by the Tripolitans, and all the crew were thrown into prison. Preble sent Decatur to seize the *Philadelphia* and to burn it. On this perilous enterprise he was in command of the *Intrepid*. It was a cold winter night, and a heavy gale was blowing in the

Mediterranean. The *Philadelphia* contained forty mounted guns and was moored within one-half gun shot of the shore, and thus in range of ten shore batteries. Three Tripolitan cruisers, mounting together twenty-six guns, lay between the *Philadelphia* and the shore.

In the dead of night, Decatur, in a little vessel mounting only four guns and manned by seventy men, silently sailed towards the great war-ship. He had no light to guide him, except the faint illumination of a crescent moon. The *Intrepid* had come within twenty yards of the *Philadelphia*, when it was hailed and ordered to keep off. The Tripolitan captain thought it was an English man-of-war which had been purchased for the Tripolitans. Decatur conversed with him until he reached the side of the *Philadelphia* and called out "Board." He clambered over the rail and reached the enemy's deck, quickly followed by officers and crew to the number of sixty. The Tripolitans were so surprised that when Decatur and his men drew their swords and rushed upon them they were quickly overcome. Crowded together or trampling upon each other in an attempt to escape, the Tripolitans were either cut down or driven overboard. At once Decatur set fire to the *Philadelphia*, and he and his men returned to the *Intrepid* and sailed away. The batteries opened fire upon them, but failed to do any harm, and Decatur and his men escaped without loss of a life.

A little later the Tripolitans were forced to make peace, agreeing not to trouble American commerce. When Decatur returned to America, he was warmly received in New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore and Norfolk. Great dinners were given in his honor and he was everywhere regarded as a hero. Congress voted him a sword for his bravery.

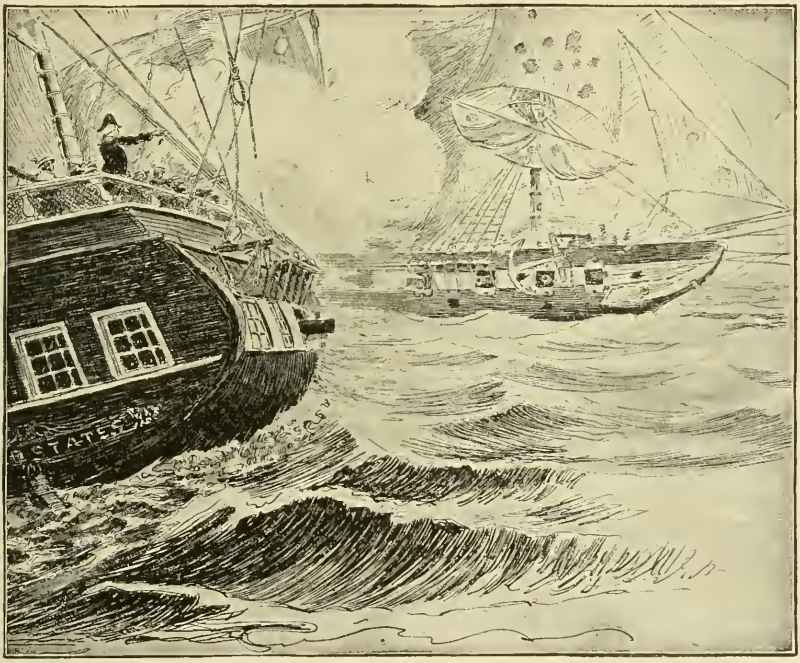
For some years England had been claiming the right to stop our ships on the high seas and search for English sailors who might be on board. Very many of our sailors were taken and forced to

fight in the wars that England was then waging against France. Our government regarded this as an outrage on the part of England, and several times objected, but without success; so finally Congress, in 1812, declared war against England for the protection of American sailors. A greater part of this war was fought on the sea. No one dreamed that the American navy could cope with that of England, and it was a great surprise and joy to the Americans when some of their vessels defeated and captured some English men-of-war.

In this War of 1812, Decatur, who was now a commodore in the navy, took a prominent part. At the opening of the war he was in command of the frigate *United States*. Soon after putting to sea, he fell in with the English frigate *Macedonian*. The two vessels cleared their decks for action, and after a desperate struggle which lasted only a few minutes, the English frigate surrendered. The English vessel was boarded, and great was Decatur's surprise when he recognized the English commander, Captain Carden, as an old friend whom he had known when he was serving in the Mediterranean against the Tripolitans. Captain Carden offered his sword on surrendering his ship, but Decatur declined, saying, " Sir, I cannot receive the sword of a man who has so bravely defended his ship." Captain Carden was received on board the *United States* as a friendly guest. For this victory Decatur received a gold medal from Congress, a sword from Pennsylvania, and another sword from Virginia. A magnificent banquet was given him in New York, and the whole country went wild with pride.

Shortly after this Decatur took command of the frigate *President*. He attacked the English frigate *Endymion*, and he was about to board her when the whole British squadron came up. The *President* made a brave fight, but was overpowered. Many of the sailors were wounded and at last Decatur himself felt called upon to surrender. Weary, wounded and a prisoner, he

entered the cockpit of the *President*, where before him lay many of his brave sailors in the agony of death. The ship surgeon rushed up to him and inquired after his safety. Decatur quietly said: "When you have attended to these brave fellows, Doctor, I would thank you to look after my chest. It is very painful and



THE BATTLE BETWEEN THE "MACEDONIAN" AND THE "UNITED STATES."

I believe I have been hurt." It was found that he had received a violent blow on his chest and had been wounded in his forehead. Soon after this he was released and allowed to return to the United States. Although the loss of the *President* was a great blow to the country, the people felt proud of the stand Decatur had made

against a whole English squadron, and his surrender was regarded almost as a victory.

There were other naval officers who distinguished themselves in this war. Captain Isaac Hull, with his frigate *Constitution*, defeated the English *Guerrière*. Captain Porter, commanding the *Essex*, won many victories and made a remarkable cruise in the Pacific Ocean. Captain Lawrence, commanding the *Chesapeake*, boldly resisted the English *Shannon*, though his men were forced to surrender when their captain fell mortally wounded. On Lake Erie, Captain Oliver H. Perry built several small vessels which he fitted up with guns. He attacked the English fleet that controlled the Lakes and captured it (1814). Captain McDonough, a great friend of Decatur, defeated the English fleet on Lake Champlain.

The war with England was brought to a close by the treaty of Ghent, and since this war England has never tried to take our seamen from our vessels.

While the War of 1812 was in progress, Tripoli, Algiers and Tunis began again to seize American merchant vessels and to make slaves of American seamen. As soon as peace was made with England, an American squadron was fitted out and placed under the command of Commodore Decatur. He sailed into the Mediterranean and forced Tripoli, Algiers and Tunis to release all Americans who had been made slaves, and to sign a treaty of peace agreeing never again to seize American merchant vessels. This war was the crowning success of Decatur. The American people honored him in many ways and until the War of Secession he was our greatest naval hero.

Decatur's death was a sad one. Until about thirty-five years ago, when two gentlemen quarreled, they would often fight a duel to settle the difference. If a man refused to fight when challenged to a duel, he was regarded as a coward. Commodore Barron, one of the best known officers in the navy, felt

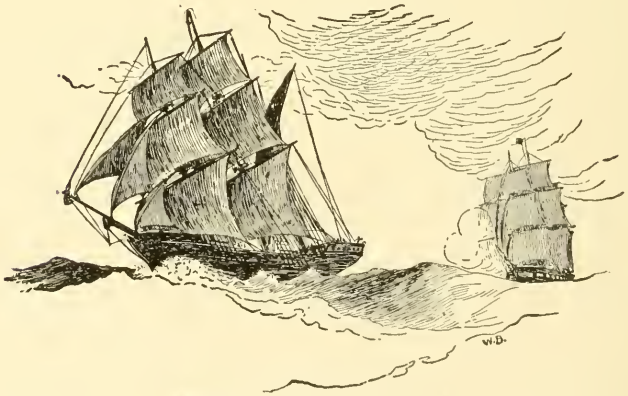
that Decatur had done him an injustice. After a long correspondence they agreed to settle the dispute by a duel, near Washington. The terms of agreement were: "The weapons shall be pistols; the distance, eight yards; the parties shall not fire before the word 'one' is given or after the word 'three'; all words, 'one, two, three,' shall be given by Commodore Bainbridge." The short distance of eight yards was fixed by Barron, who had sought the duel. Decatur had declared that he would take no man's life, but would fire at his opponent's hip. Early on the morning of the 22d of March, 1820, Decatur and Barron met on the famous dueling ground at Bladensburg near Washington City. Commodore Bainbridge stationed the duelists, and quickly gave the signal: "Present! one, two, three." At the word 'two,' both fired so exactly together, that only one report was heard. Commodore Barron fell, wounded in the right hip, according to the announced intention of Decatur. Decatur stood for a moment erect, and pressed his hand on his right side. He then fell, saying: "I am mortally wounded, and I wish I had fallen in the defense of my country." A few hours later he died a victim of the terrible custom of dueling, which public feeling no longer allows.

Decatur was an honest and sincere man, and he served his country with an unselfish love.

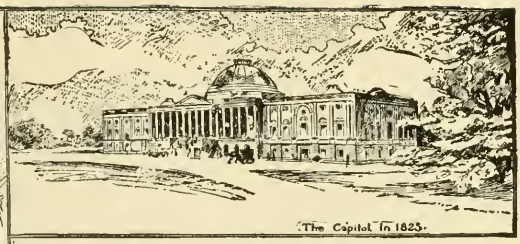
Geography Study. *Map of Northern Africa.* Find Tripoli, Algiers and Tunis. *Map of the United States.* Locate Maryland, Philadelphia and New York. Find Lake Erie and Lake Champlain. Name all of the Great Lakes.

Review Questions. Has Napoleon's prediction about the United States come true? Who was John Paul Jones? What trouble did Jefferson have with Tripoli? Tell of the early life of Decatur. Tell of the capture and burning of the *Philadelphia*. How did the United States honor him? What were the causes of the War of 1812? Tell of the capture of the

Macedonian. Tell of his surrender of the *President.* What did Captain Hull do? What did Perry do on the Great Lakes? What did Captain MacDonough do? Has England ever seized our sailors since the War of 1812? Tell of Decatur's expedition against Tripoli, Algiers and Tunis. Tell of Decatur's death. What sort of man was Decatur?



A CHASE ON THE HIGH SEAS.



CHAPTER XXV.

Andrew Jackson.

1767-1845.

ABOUT the year 1765, Andrew Jackson, a native of Ireland, came to America to find a home for himself and family. He landed at Charleston, South Carolina, but soon afterwards moved to the Waxhaw settlement on the border between North and South Carolina. It was here that his distinguished son, Andrew, was born on the fifteenth of March, 1767. The elder Jackson died a few days before the birth of his namesake, leaving his children to be reared by his widow.

Mrs. Jackson was not in needy circumstances, but was unable to give her two older sons many advantages in the way of education. She had set her heart on Andrew's becoming a preacher, and so determined to give him the opportunity to get an education. In the Waxhaw settlement there was a good academy, which was taught by a Mr. Humphreys in the neighborhood meeting-house. Andrew Jackson attended this school until he was about fourteen years old, and then he and his brother Robert joined the American army. The Revolutionary War was going on, and as the British troops were overrunning that section of North and South Carolina, all the men at once joined the army; so young Andrew along with the rest determined to be a soldier.

He soon found that a soldier's lot is a hard one. He and his brother Robert were captured by the English. While Andrew was a captive, he was ordered to clean the boots of one of the officers. He refused to do this, and the officer struck at him with his sword and would have killed the young "rebel" if the latter had not warded off the blow with his arm. As it was, he was severely wounded. For a like offense his brother received a wound on his head, from which he afterwards died.

For these acts of disobedience Andrew and Robert Jackson were put in jail and were very badly treated by their captors. Soon after the battle of Camden they were both set free by an exchange of some of the prisoners. Robert died shortly after gaining his freedom, and his mother lived only a few weeks after his death. After his release from captivity, Andrew had a severe attack of the small-pox, which almost ended his life.

Again he started to school and pursued his studies until he was eighteen years old. He was now a wild, reckless young man and had no intention of becoming a minister. He went to Salisbury, North Carolina, and studied law for two years, at the end of which time he was admitted to the bar.

He thought he could do better in his profession in a new country, so he located at Nashville, now in Tennessee, but then in the Western District of North Carolina. Here he found a good opening for a young lawyer, though Nashville was then a frontier settlement in a thinly-populated region, in which Indian attacks were not uncommon occurrences. In 1796, when Tennessee became a state in the Union, Jackson was elected to a seat in the United States House of Representatives, but he did not hold this office very long, as he was chosen the next year to represent his adopted state in the United States Senate. He did not like politics, and so left the Senate in 1799. He was then appointed one of the judges of the Supreme Court of Tennessee, but resigned this office after a few years.

Jackson had a farm near Nashville which he called "The Hermitage." Here he spent some years very happily; but in 1812, when the second war between the United States and Great Britain broke out, he gave up the enjoyments of private life and offered his services to his country.

During the early part of the war, Jackson saw only a few months of service. It was not until the Creek Indians had taken up arms against the people of the South that he won a

THE HERMITAGE.

reputation as a leader. Tecumseh, a great Indian chief, had been in the South and had influenced the Creeks and Seminoles to attack the whites.

In the southern part of what is now Alabama, was Fort Mimms, into which the people of the neighborhood had moved for protection against the Indians. Governor Claiborne of Louisiana sent some soldiers to reinforce the garrison of the fort, the command of which was given to Major Beasley. On the morning of August thirtieth, 1813, at about ten o'clock, Major Beasley was engaged in writing a letter to Governor Claiborne, stating that he considered the place secure against the attack of the savages. Inside the fortifications there

were five hundred and fifty-three persons, including men, women and children, negro slaves, and Indian allies. For many days they had seen no signs of Indians, and they thought that they would not be attacked by their savage enemy. The day before, two negro slaves had alarmed the garrison by running in and saying that they had seen twenty-four painted warriors. Some horsemen were sent out to look for these Indians, but they could find no trace of them. It was thought that the negroes had made a false report, and they were ordered to be whipped.

During the entire forenoon one thousand Creek warriors lay quietly in a ravine close to the fort. When the drum beat for dinner these Indians ran across the field and rushed into the fort before the door could be closed. The men and even some of the women fought bravely, but at sunset more than four hundred persons, including all the white women and children, had been killed. Such was the massacre of Fort Mimms.

The news of the massacre swept over the country and greatly alarmed the people in the frontier settlements of the South. Many of them deserted their homes to go to places of safety. A body of soldiers was raised by Tennessee, and General Jackson was put in command of them. About a month before this, he had received a severe wound in his shoulder, and he was weak from the loss of blood. But despite this, he appeared at the head of his troops, although he had to carry his arm in a sling. He defeated the Indians in several battles and finally gave them a crushing blow at Horseshoe Bend, a place in Alabama where the Tallapoosa River makes almost a complete circle.

The second war against England (the War of 1812), of which you have learned in the chapter on Decatur, was then in progress, and Jackson was sent to New Orleans to oppose the English in their advance on that city. Here it was that he won the greatest victory of his entire military career. The battle of New Orleans was fought on Sunday, January

THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

the eighth, 1815. Jackson had been engaged for some time in getting his breastworks ready. These were made partly of mud from the Mississippi and partly of cotton bales. When the battle began, the cotton was set on fire by the hot shots of the enemy, but the English could not take the fortifications. Jackson arranged his men in such a way that only the best marksmen were in front. They were to do the firing, and loaded guns were to be passed up to them by the men behind them. The English army was commanded by General Pakenham, a brave and experienced leader. Jackson had ordered his men not to waste their powder and ball; so the English for a while marched forward without opposition. When they neared the American works they received a fierce cannonade, which tore gaps in their ranks. But they closed up, and kept advancing until they were within less than a hundred yards of the American lines, when they were checked by the rifle shots. The American marksmen aimed so well that nearly every shot killed an English soldier. The enemy could not advance under such a severe fire; so they broke and fled. Pakenham was mortally wounded, and General Lambert succeeded to the command. The English officers tried in vain to rally their men, and finally a retreat was ordered.

By this victory General Jackson won a great name for himself. There was much rejoicing all over the country when the news of it was spread abroad. But it proved a useless battle, as the treaty of peace with England had already been signed. It took a long time then for news to cross the ocean, and the Americans did not know of the signing of the treaty until after they had rejoiced over General Jackson's victory.

After the War of 1812 Jackson was the hero of the American people, and his friends urged him for the presidency. He was a candidate in 1824, but John Quincy Adams of Massachusetts was elected. Four years later Jackson was elected as President,

and John C. Calhoun as Vice-President. Jackson served for two terms, and made a good President. During his administration, he caused the European powers to respect our country, and made of it a strong nation. The great issue of Jackson's time was concerning the National Bank, which was chartered by the United States government, and which had control of its money. Jackson said that the government's money ought to be handled by the treasury department, so he withdrew from the National Bank such money of the United States as was kept in it. For this action the politicians greatly complained of Jackson, but in after years it was seen that he had acted wisely.

On retiring from the presidency, he spent his last years at his beautiful home, the Hermitage. Here he died June the eighth, 1845.

"Old Hickory," as Jackson was called, was a man of strong will and of uncommon courage. He liked to have his way, however, and did not always keep his temper under control. It was customary in his day for gentlemen to settle their quarrels by fighting duels, and General Jackson more than once took part in those deadly combats. But with all of his faults, he was a great man and performed invaluable service to his country.

Geography Study. *Map of Southern States.* Find Waxhaw and Salisbury (N. C.); Nashville (Tenn.); Fort Mimms and Tallapoosa River (Ala.) and New Orleans (La.). How far is New Orleans from the mouth of the Mississippi?

Review Questions. Where was Andrew Jackson born? Tell of his education. Why did Jackson enter the army at such an early age? Tell of his treatment by the British. What profession did Jackson follow and where did he settle? How did Tennessee honor him? Tell of the massacre of Fort Mimms. Tell of Jackson and the battle of Horseshoe Bend. Tell of Jackson's preparations for the battle of New Orleans. Describe the battle. Tell of his election to the presidency. What did he do with the National Bank? What kind of man was Jackson?

The Charge at San Jacinto.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Sam Houston.

1793-1863.

ONE of the bravest soldiers who took part in the battle of Horseshoe Bend was Sam Houston, a young ensign who was very anxious to win a name for himself. When he joined the army as a common soldier, his friends thought that he had made a great mistake and told him that his chances for rising into prominence were the very poorest. To these objections he replied, "You don't know me, but you shall hear of me."

On leaving home, his mother gave him a gun and said to him, "There, my son, take this musket and never disgrace it; for remember, I had rather all my sons should fill honorable graves, than that one of them should turn his back to save his life." He was not unworthy of such a mother. When the attack was made on the Indians at Horseshoe Bend, Sam Houston was the second man to scale the enemy's breastworks. Calling his com-

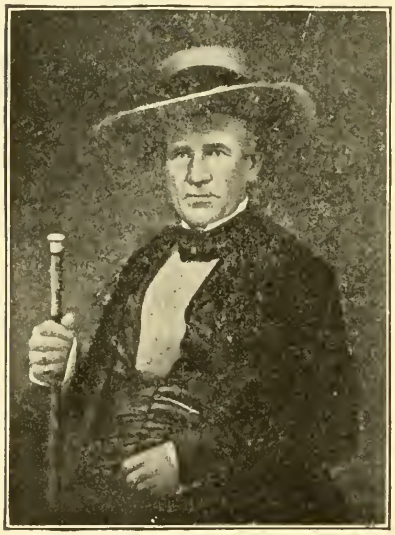
rades to follow him, he rushed upon the Indians and fought them fiercely behind their own fortifications. He was wounded in the thigh with an arrow, which, on being pulled out, brought a stream of blood with it. General Jackson, coming up, ordered him out of battle; but he insisted upon being allowed to fight, and was afterwards wounded in the right shoulder while making a bold attack on an Indian block-house. Though he was badly wounded, he received little attention that night. It was thought that he would surely die; and the doctors and nurses spent most of their time attending to those who had some chance of recovery. Two months after this he reached his home in Tennessee, but he had to be carried the entire distance on a litter. These wounds were never healed and he suffered from them as long as he lived.

Sam Houston was born near Lexington, Virginia, in 1793. He did not go to school much before he was thirteen years old, at which time he had the misfortune to lose his father. After his father's death his mother moved to Tennessee with her six sons and three daughters, and settled in the neighborhood of the Cherokee Indians. The Houston family occupied land which had never been cultivated, and Sam assisted his brothers in the hard work of clearing a farm in the forest, though he found time for a while to attend an academy in East Tennessee. Into his hands fell some translations of Greek and Latin books, which he read with great eagerness. He was very much interested in the old war stories about the Roman and Greek heroes, and he is said to have been able to repeat Pope's translation of Homer's Iliad word for word. He wanted to study Latin, but as his teacher would not allow him to do so, he declared that he would never recite another lesson.

He left school, and his older brothers put him in a store. But he did not like this kind of work, so he ran away from home and spent some time living with the Cherokee Indians. In 1813 he enlisted in the United States Army. His bravery at Horse-

shoe Bend placed him high in the esteem of General Jackson, who was ever afterwards his faithful friend.

At the age of twenty-five Sam Houston began to read law in Nashville, Tennessee. After six months of study he was admitted to the bar, and entered upon the practice of his profession at Lebanon, Tennessee. It was not long before he was elected to Congress, and after serving as a member of the House of Representatives for four years, he became governor of Tennessee. He was at first very popular as governor, but about two years after his election to this office an event occurred which caused many people in Tennessee to look upon him with disfavor. In 1829 he married, and three months afterward he separated from his wife without giving any reason for his action. Because of this separation a great many people spoke very bitterly of him, though he still had many friends who took his part. He was too generous and gallant to defend his own reputation by attacking that of a woman, and he always said that he did not leave his wife because of anything against her character. It is now thought that Mrs. Houston did not love her husband, and that, on finding it out, Houston quietly left her, although he knew that he would make himself very unpopular by doing so. He resigned the governorship, left Tennessee, and went to live with his Cherokee friends.



GENERAL HOUSTON.

When a boy he had lived a while with these Indians, and one of the chiefs had adopted him as a son. This old chief, whose name was Oolooteka, now lived near the mouth of the Illinois River. He was rejoiced to hear that his adopted son was coming again to live with him, and when Houston came to see him, the old chief threw his arms about his neck and spoke words of affectionate welcome to him. Houston now took up his abode with the venerable Oolooteka, and soon became a great favorite with the Indians. Finding that the agents of the United States government were cheating the Indians, he went to Washington to make complaint against the dishonest agents. General Jackson was then President of the United States, and when the hero of Horseshoe Bend made his appearance in Washington dressed in the Indian garb, he was given a hearty welcome by his old friend the President.

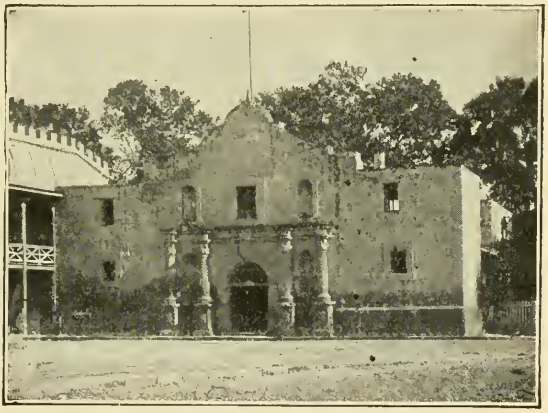
While in Washington, Houston was accused by Mr. William Stansberry, a member of the House of Representatives from Ohio, of trying by fraud to get a contract from the government to supply the Indians with provisions. This false charge made Houston very angry with the congressman and he determined to punish him for it. It was not long before he had the opportunity of doing so; for one night when he was walking along Pennsylvania Avenue, he saw Mr. Stansberry cross the street to the side on which he was walking. It is said that Mr. Stansberry intended to kill Houston, but before he could make the attempt Houston struck him over the head with his cane and knocked him down. Mr. Stansberry then rose and snapped a pistol at Houston, but it failed to fire. For this assault upon one of its members, the House of Representatives mildly censured Houston, and one of the courts of the District of Columbia fined him five hundred dollars, which President Jackson relieved him from paying.

About the year 1821, emigrants from the United States be-

gan to settle in Texas, which was then a part of Mexico, and in a few years they were pouring in from all parts of our country. These Americans brought with them their ideas of liberty and self-government. Mexico began to think that if she continued to allow the Americans to settle in Texas, her authority over the territory would be weakened; so the Mexican government passed a law forbidding the Americans to settle in Texas, and began to govern Texas in a tyrannical way. High taxes were placed upon the people, and they were oppressed in other ways. Finally, Santa Anna, the Mexican president, ordered all the Texans to give up their guns. The people needed their weapons to provide themselves with game and also to protect themselves against the Indians. Liberty-loving Americans would not, of course, yield obedience to such an order, and war broke out. At Gonzales, a town about seventy miles from San Antonio, the Texans had a cannon which had been placed there to aid them in repelling Indian attacks. By order of Santa Anna, a Mexican colonel marched to Gonzales to take away this cannon. The people gathered at Gonzales to save their piece of artillery from seizure, and some skirmishing between them and the Mexicans resulted. This was the beginning of the war for Texan independence.

Soon after his visit to Washington Houston moved to Texas. He cast in his lot with those who were resisting the tyranny of Mexico, and was commander-in-chief of the Texan forces during a good part of the war. The most important battle of the struggle was fought near the San Jacinto Bay (1836). General Houston had less than eight hundred men, while Santa Anna, the Mexican general, had an army numbering two thousand men. The Texans went into battle with a feeling of discouragement because of the defeats that their brothers-in-arms had recently suffered. For Santa Anna had captured the Alamo, a fort near San Antonio, defended by one hundred and eighty

men, and had killed every person in the fort except a woman, her child and a negro. At Goliad also he had surrounded and massacred five hundred Texans. The thought of these massacres filled Houston's troops with a dread of the Mexicans; but their general was confident of victory, and had the bridge across Buffalo Bayou secretly destroyed so that there could be no chance for either army to retreat. As they charged upon the enemy, the Texan soldiers shouted, "Remember the Alamo! Remember the Alamo!" In eighteen minutes the Mexicans were utterly defeated, and Texan independence was won.



THE ALAMO.

For the numbers engaged, this was one of the bloodiest battles ever fought in our country. The Mexicans lost heavily in killed and wounded, while the loss of the Texans was only two killed and twenty-three wounded. Santa Anna was captured the day after the battle.

Hardly had Texas gained her independence before she applied to the United States for admission as a state. Jackson had just retired from the presidency, and Martin Van Buren of New York had succeeded him. Texas held slaves, and for this reason Van Buren was opposed to her becoming a part of the United States. At this time there were twenty-six states in the Union, the thirteen original states and thirteen new ones which

had come into the Union by the consent of Congress.* Thirteen of the states held slaves, and thirteen did not. Texas being a slave state, all of the free states opposed her admission into the Union because they thought the slave power would become too great if there should be more slave than free states. Texas therefore had to wait for eight years before she was admitted as a state.

THE PRESENT CAPITOL OF TEXAS.

During this time she was known as the Republic of Texas, or the Lone Star Republic, because of her flag with one star. Houston was twice president of this republic.

Van Buren was succeeded in the presidency in 1841 by William Henry Harrison of Ohio, who died a month after his inauguration. He was succeeded by Vice-President John Tyler, of

* The states which had been admitted by Congress were: Vermont (1791); Kentucky (1792); Tennessee (1796); Ohio (1803); Louisiana (1812); Indiana (1816); Mississippi (1817); Illinois (1818); Alabama (1819); Maine (1820); Missouri (1821); Arkansas (1836); and Michigan (1837).

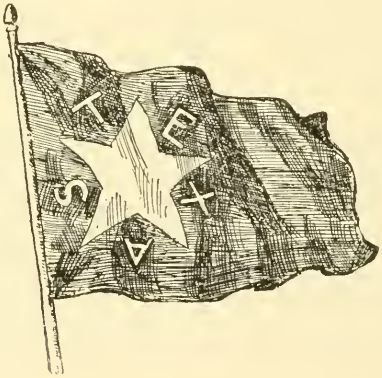
Virginia, who was greatly in favor of admitting Texas into the Union. Finally, by a treaty which was made with President Tyler, Texas was admitted in 1845, and thus became the twenty-eighth state of the Union, Florida having been admitted as a slave state a few months before. The northern people were greatly aroused because Texas was allowed to come into the Union, as there were now fifteen slave states and only thirteen free states.

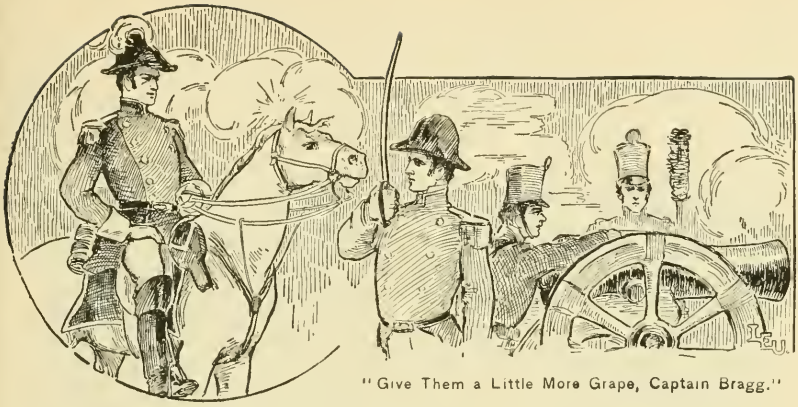
When Texas became a part of the United States, General Houston entered the United States Senate as one of her representatives. He stayed in the Senate until just before the War between the States, when he became governor of Texas. He was opposed to secession, and when his state left the Union, he refused to take an oath to support the Confederate government. The office of governor was taken from him because of this refusal, and he retired from public life. On account of unwillingness to oppose the people of his own state, he quietly gave up his office and allowed his son to enter the Confederate army. He died in 1863. Texas will always honor his memory, for it was mainly through his efforts that she gained her independence from Mexico.

Geography Study. *Map of the Southern States.* Locate Lexington (Va.); Nashville (Tenn.); Gonzales, San Antonio and San Jacinto River (Texas). How large is Texas? How far is it from Virginia to Texas? How would you make the journey by land from Virginia through Tennessee to Texas?

Review Questions. Tell of Sam Houston at the battle of Horseshoe Bend. Tell of his early life and his education. Tell of the position which he held in Tennessee. Why did he leave Tennessee? Tell of Houston and the Cherokee Indians. For what purpose did he go to Washington? Tell of the fight with Mr. Stansberry. Why did Mexico

try to keep Americans out of Texas? Tell of the war between Mexico and Texas, and the part which Houston took in it. Describe the battle of San Jacinto. Why was it that Texas had such a hard time to get into the Union? Tell of Houston's last years.





"Give Them a Little More Grape, Captain Bragg."

CHAPTER XXVII.

Zachary Taylor.

1784-1850.

At the close of the Revolutionary War there were only a few white settlers in Kentucky, and they lived in almost constant danger of attack from the Indians, who were unwilling to share their hunting grounds with the "pale faces," and made great efforts to drive them out. A strife was kept up almost constantly between the two races, and the Indian tribes also often fought among themselves. In this way much blood was shed; and the country was called Kentucky, which is an Indian word meaning Dark and Bloody Ground.

It was here and under such circumstances as have been described that the childhood of General Zachary Taylor was spent. He was born in Orange County, Virginia, in 1784; but his father, Colonel Taylor, moved his family to Kentucky when his infant son was less than a year old.

From childhood Taylor was familiar with Indian fighting. A week seldom went by without the savages making an attack

somewhere in the neighborhood. Every night Colonel Taylor had the doors of his house barricaded and the guns made ready for use so that his family would be prepared for a sudden attack. The Indians sometimes surprised boys on their way to school and murdered them. One day some school children, after parting with Zachary Taylor and his brother, were killed by the Indians. This occurred within a hundred yards of the place where the Taylor boys had left them.

Taylor's opportunities for an education were very poor, but he was so anxious to learn and he studied so well, that he knew a great deal more than one would expect from the schooling he received. When a youth, he spent a good deal of time in hunting, fishing and other outdoor sports. According to one story, at the age of seventeen, "he swam across the Ohio River from the Kentucky to the Indiana shore in the month of March, when the river was filled with floating ice."

GENERAL TAYLOR.

When Taylor was twenty-three years old, he was commissioned a lieutenant in the army by President Jefferson, and in 1810 the rank of captain was conferred upon him by President Madison.

His activity in the War of 1812 was confined to Indian fighting. In the first part of the war he was put in command of Fort Harrison in Indiana. He was attacked one night in September, 1812, by a force of four hundred and fifty Indians. He had only fifty men who "were worn down and disabled by their long and serious service." The savages surrounded the fort and tried all night to capture it; but the garrison held out

firmly and next morning the enemy retired. Captain Taylor lost only two men killed and two men wounded. The victory

From a painting by Chapin.

THE BATTLE OF OKEECHOBEE.

was due mainly to his bravery and judgment. For this gallant defence of the fort he was made a major and enjoyed the praises of the people of the entire western country.

In 1835 the Seminole Indians in Florida took up arms against the whites. Their leader was Osceola, who had been put in irons for threats that he had made. He was soon released, and after this, he attacked a body of one hundred and ten United States troops and massacred all of them but one. Taylor, who then had the rank of colonel, was ordered to go to Florida to subdue the hostile savages. It was no easy matter to conquer them, as they would hide in the swamps and thus escape the pursuit of the soldiers. Finally, on December 25, 1837, Colonel Taylor came upon the Indians in the Okeechobee Swamp. The Indian

force numbered seven hundred well-armed warriors, who were fine marksmen, and they occupied a position from which they could be driven only with great difficulty. There was a swamp on two sides of them and a lake on the third. The American soldiers marched to the attack, wading in mud up to their knees. The Indians fired at them from behind bushes and killed

From a painting by Chapin.

GENERAL TAYLOR AT THE BATTLE OF MONTEREY.

many of them. Colonel Taylor, in order to encourage his men, went bravely into places of the greatest danger, and coolly directed the movements of his troops while bullets were flying fast about him. It was a fierce struggle and lasted three hours. The Seminoles were so completey defeated that they were never afterwards able to fight in open battle with the whites.

In 1845 James K. Polk became President of the United States. He had been elected just before Texas was admitted

into the Union as a state. The admission of Texas produced bad feeling between the United States and Mexico, which had not yet given up her claim to Texas. Besides, there was a dispute as to what was the boundary line between Texas and Mexico, the United States claiming the Rio Grande, and Mexico the Nueces River as the southern limit of Texas. President Polk sent General Taylor in 1846 with a force into the disputed country; the Mexicans attacked him and at once Congress declared war.

General Taylor took a leading part in the Mexican war. He gained several victories, the most important of which were those of Monterey and Buena Vista.

Monterey is a city situated in the northwestern part of Mexico. Its position is strong by nature, and it was well fortified. General Taylor's army was very small, being not much more than half as large as the garrison in the town. Taylor made a bold attack and entered the city. The American troops made their way to the central square by going through the walls from one house to another. The city was captured and the garrison surrendered.

Soon after this, Santa Anna attacked Taylor at Buena Vista with an army of twenty thousand men. Taylor had only 5,400 men. The battle began on the twenty-second of February, 1847, but very little fighting was done that day. After a few cannon shots had been fired on both sides, Santa Anna sent a messenger to General Taylor, asking him to surrender at once. In this message he told how large the Mexican army was and said that a battle would only cause a useless spilling of blood. "General Taylor never surrenders," was the brief but firm reply.

Next day the battle was fought in earnest. It began early in the morning and lasted till night. Several times during the day it seemed that the Americans would be defeated, but when

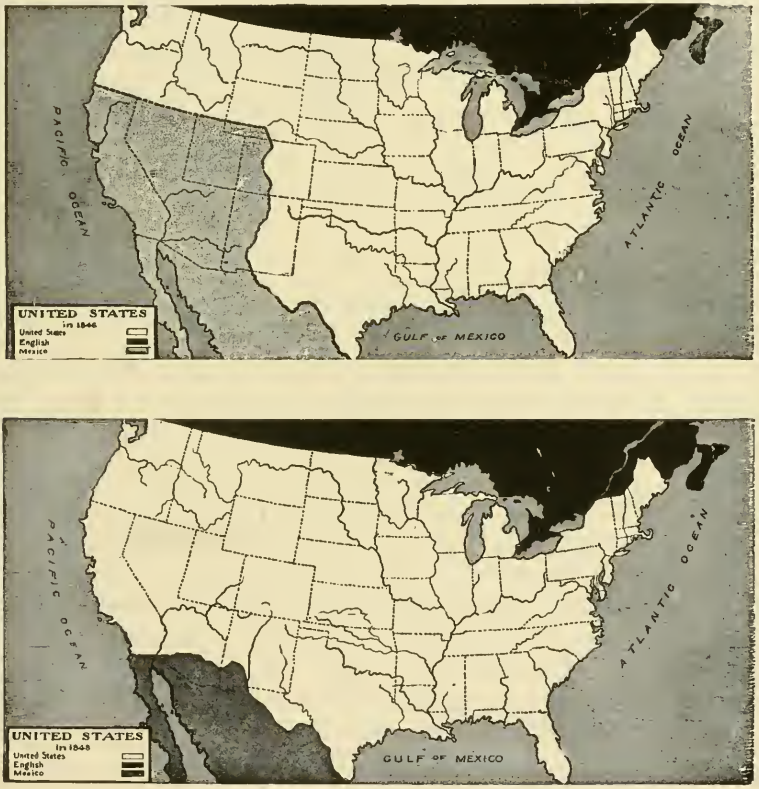
night put an end to the contest, they had won a great victory. Once when it looked as if the day was going against the Americans, General Taylor rode up to Captain Bragg, who commanded some of the artillery, and said, "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg." The enemy could not stand the terrible fire that then poured forth from Bragg's cannon. They fell back, and during the night Santa Anna retreated.

General Taylor was often in the thickest of the fight, and he had two bullets pass through his clothes. Seated on his white horse, he rode about from place to place directing the movements of his troops. Some one told him that he ought not to ride so conspicuous a horse, as the enemy might single him out and direct their shots against him. He replied that "Old Whitey" had missed the fun at Monterey, and he was determined that he should now enjoy it. About three or four o'clock in the afternoon he rode to a height where he could see the movements of both armies. Some of his staff came up and insisted on his going away from such a dangerous place, but he refused to move. For some time he sat quietly on his horse with his right leg over the pommel of the saddle. When he saw the enemy retreating, he was no longer calm and quiet; but was so excited that he wept for joy, and "fairly danced in his stirrups." This victory made "Old Rough and Ready," as he was called, a great hero in the eyes of the people.

In the spring of 1847, General Winfield Scott led an expedition into Mexico. He landed at Vera Cruz and marched to the City of Mexico, gaining victories on the way. In the fall of 1847, the Mexican capital fell into the hands of the Americans, and the war was over, though the treaty of peace was not signed until February, 1848.

By the terms of the treaty, Mexico gave up her claim to Texas, and in addition ceded to the United States a great area of land north and west of Texas, from which have been formed the

states of California, Nevada, Utah and the territories of New Mexico and Arizona. For this vast territory the United States paid Mexico fifteen million dollars.



THE UNITED STATES IN 1846 AND 1848.

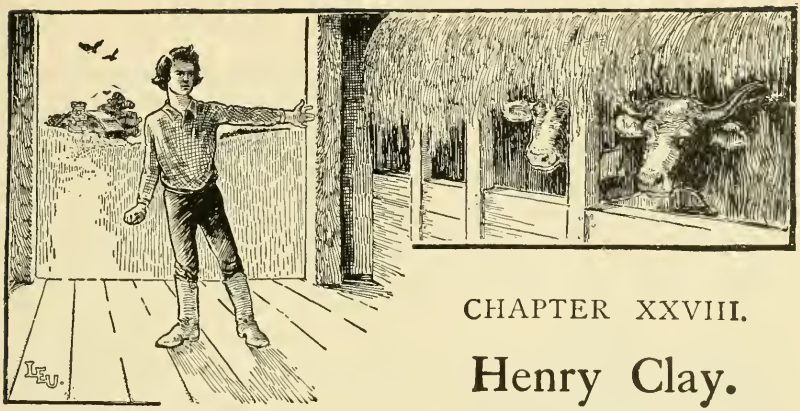
The battle of Buena Vista made General Taylor the most popular man in the United States, and in 1848 he was elected President. He lived only sixteen months after his inaugura

tion and died July 9, 1850. Vice-President Millard Fillmore succeeded him. General Taylor had sought honestly and faithfully to perform his duty as President. His last words were, "I have tried to do my duty. I am not afraid to die."

He owned a fine estate in Louisiana near Baton Rouge, and he had longed to devote his whole time to farming, as Washington, Jefferson, Madison and Monroe had done at the close of their public services; but the United States so often needed Taylor's services that his wish was never gratified. His remains were interred in the family burying ground near Louisville, Ky.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States and Mexico.* What states are north of Kentucky? Find Okeechobee Swamp (Fla.); the Rio Grande and Nueces River (Tex.); Monterey, Buena Vista, Vera Cruz and City of Mexico (Mexico). Locate California, Nevada, Utah, New Mexico and Arizona. How far is it from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico?

Review Questions. What was the condition of Kentucky at the close of the Revolution? Tell of some of Taylor's experiences as a boy in Kentucky. Why do you think that he was a very strong boy? What offices did he hold in the army of the United States? Tell of his defense of Fort Harrison. Describe the battle of Okeechobee Swamp. What were the causes of the war with Mexico? Tell of the capture of Monterey. Describe the battle of Buena Vista. How did the war end? What were the terms of the treaty? How did the American people honor Taylor? Tell of his death. What had been his desire?



Clay's Early Exercise in Oratory.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Henry Clay.

1777-1852.

HENRY CLAY was born in Hanover County, Virginia, April 12, 1777. The part of the country in which the first years of his life were spent was a swampy region known as "The Slashes." His father, a Baptist preacher, died before his distinguished son had reached the age of five years. His mother, however, was very anxious that her son should advance in the world, and determined to give him all the education that she could. He was sent to a neighborhood school taught by an Englishman named Deacon, and kept in a log cabin with a dirt floor. Like the other boys in the community, young Clay had home duties to perform while he was going to school. He frequently went to mill on horseback to get flour and meal for the use of his mother's family. For this reason in after years, when he had become famous, people spoke of him as "the mill boy of the Slashes."

When he was fourteen years old, Henry Clay became a salesman in a store in Richmond. He attended to his business well, and spent much of his spare time in reading. A year later he was made assistant to the clerk of the Virginia High Court of Chancery, which sat in Richmond. When he began work at his new place, the other clerks were inclined to laugh at him.

He was tall and awkward, and wore a suit of home-made clothes "resembling in color a mixture of pepper and salt." But nobody laughs long at a good-natured boy, if he shows independence of spirit. Henry Clay was both amiable and independent, and as he possessed many other manly traits of character, he soon became popular with his associates. The habit of reading during his leisure hours was kept up here, just as it had been when he was working in the store.

At this time, the Judge of the High Court of Chancery, who was called Chancellor, was George Wythe, an eminent lawyer and a great and good man. He needed some one to write up his decisions for him and asked the chief clerk to allow Henry Clay to do it. Accordingly, for the next four years the young assistant had the advantage of associating with one of the most learned men in Virginia. Chancellor Wythe took great interest in him, and advised him as to what books he should read and study.

After serving as a clerk for four years, Henry Clay studied law for one year in the office of Mr. Brooke, the attorney-general of Virginia, at the end of which time he was given a license to practice law. In 1797, in the twenty-first year of his age, he left Virginia to go to Lexington, Kentucky. He continued his law studies a few months in Lexington before applying for admission to the Kentucky bar.

Up to this time, the only practice that Henry Clay had had in public speaking, was as a member of a debating society which he had organized while living in Richmond. But he had often recited pieces in the fields and forests where there were no hearers to embarrass him. In speaking of the value of this training he afterwards said, "I owe my success in life to a single fact, namely, that at an early age I commenced, and continued for some years, the practice of daily reading and speaking the contents of some historical or scientific book. These off-hand

efforts were sometimes made in a corn-field; at others in a forest; and not unfrequently in some distant barn, with the horse and ox for my only auditors."

His first attempt at public speaking before a Kentucky audience was made in a debating club, to which he belonged while he was a law student in Lexington. When he first joined the society he was very bashful and it was some time before he had the courage to take part in the speaking. One evening, after the other debaters had finished, he was heard to say in an undertone that the subject had not been thoroughly discussed. Some of the members then insisted on his getting up and speaking on the question. He rose to comply with their request, but was so excited that he addressed the audience as "gentlemen of the jury." His hearers showed that they were very much amused at his mistake, and this so increased his embarrassment that when he again tried to speak, he repeated the same words. However, after a while he overcame his fright and made a fine speech, one of the best, it is said, that he ever delivered.

HENRY CLAY.

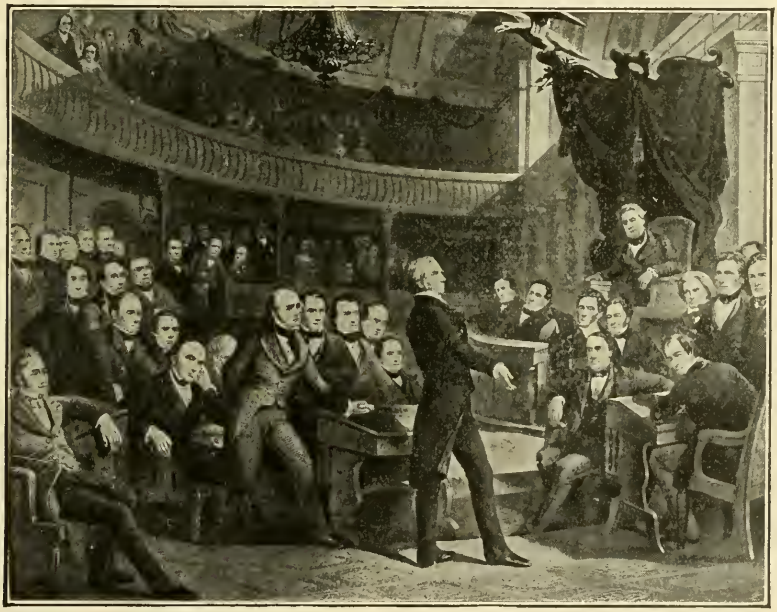
Clay soon after began the practice of law, and was very successful. In 1806 he was appointed to the United States Senate. From this time most of his life was spent in the service of his country. For many years he was a member of the House of Representatives and was its speaker for fourteen years, with the

exception of two short intervals. When John Quincy Adams was president, Clay was secretary of state; after this he was four times a candidate for the presidency, but was never honored with an election to that high office. Of the twenty years from 1832 to 1852 he spent thirteen in the United States Senate, and there his influence was always used for the preservation of the Union.

Clay, of course, could not please all the people in his district while in Congress, and when he went back to them he often had to explain why he voted for certain measures. He once voted for a law fixing the salary of Congressmen at the small sum of fifteen hundred dollars a year. Many of the people of his district thought this too large a sum, and when he next became a candidate for Congress, some of them opposed his reëlection because he had supported the measure. Among those who were outspoken in their disapproval of the Compensation Bill, as it was called, was an old hunter who had been an ardent admirer of Clay, but who now declared he was going to vote against him. Just before the election day, Clay met his old friend and tried to win back his support. In the conversation that ensued, the following dialogue took place: "Have you a good rifle, my friend?" asked Mr. Clay. The hunter answered, "Yes." "Did it ever flash?" "Once only." "What did you do with it, throw it away?" "No, I picked the flint, tried it again, and brought down the game." "Have I ever flashed but upon the Compensation Bill?" "No." "Will you throw me away?" The hunter instantly replied, "No, no, I will pick the flint, and try again."

Henry Clay was called the "Great Pacificator," because he did all he could to allay the strife that arose between the North and the South over the slavery question. The contest over slavery began in Congress in 1820 when Missouri asked to be admitted into the Union as a slave state. A majority of the

Northern people were unwilling for Missouri to be a state except on condition that slavery be forbidden within her limits. On the other hand, the Southern people, as a rule, argued that Congress did not have the authority to say whether Missouri should or should not have slaves when she became a state, but that



From a painting by Rothermel.

CLAY MAKING HIS PLEA FOR COMPROMISE.

only the Missourians themselves had the right to settle that question. This dispute was causing much bad feeling between the two sections of the country, when a compromise bill, which was strongly advocated by Clay, passed Congress and for a while quieted the country. This law provided that Missouri should become a state without giving up her slaves, but that slavery

should not be allowed anywhere else west of the Mississippi River and north of latitude 36° and 30′, which is the southern boundary of Missouri. This was the "Missouri Compromise." But the slavery dispute was by no means finally settled by the Missouri Compromise. It arose from time to time until the great war between the states put an end to it.

When the United States went to war with Mexico, the Northern states opposed the war because they thought that new territory would be gained which might be made into slave states. An attempt was made in Congress to pass a law to prevent the admission of any more slave states into the Union; and, though Congress refused to pass such an act, the Northern people were so set in their opposition to slavery, that no more slave states came into the Union after the admission of Texas.

Just one year after the treaty of peace had been signed with Mexico, whereby the United States gained so much territory, a man named Marshall was building a dam across a small river in California. He saw in the bottom of the stream a yellow shining substance. He took some of it and beat it out, and saw that it was metal. He then found that it would melt. He poured acid on it, but it would not dissolve. Then he knew that it was gold. The news spread rapidly; thousands of emigrants rushed for California, which in a short time had a population large enough to become a state.

When California applied in 1850 for admission as a state without slavery, a violent dispute arose in Congress over the slavery question. Those who favored slavery said that, as a part of California is south of the line that runs through the southern boundary of Missouri (36° 30′), to admit her as a free state would be to do away with the Missouri Compromise. Those who were opposed to slavery were equally anxious for the admission of California with her anti-slavery constitution, and at one time it almost seemed that the strife would break up the Union. Henry

Clay was in the Senate at the time and, though an old man, he made one more attempt to keep peace between the opposing parties. He offered, as a compromise, a bill having some provisions to suit the North and some to suit the South. This was known as the "Omnibus Bill."

After some months of violent debate, the propositions of this bill were agreed to by Congress, but not until some important changes had been made in the resolutions first offered by Clay. The law, as finally adopted, provided that California should be admitted as a free state; that the buying and selling of slaves should not be allowed in the District of Columbia; that Utah and New Mexico should be formed into territories without naming any conditions regarding slavery, and that the free states should return runaway slaves to their masters in the slave states. The passage of this measure somewhat quieted the slavery dispute for the time being, but the North refused to return the runaway slaves. This action of the North angered the South, and had much to do with bringing on secession.

Clay lived only two years longer. He died in Washington, June 29, 1852. His remains were carried to Lexington, Kentucky, for burial. Probably no one since the days of Washington had been more beloved by the American people than the Great Pacificator, and on the morning of the funeral the streets of Lexington were thronged with mourners from all parts of the country. The crowd that was present on that occasion was estimated at nearly one hundred thousand.

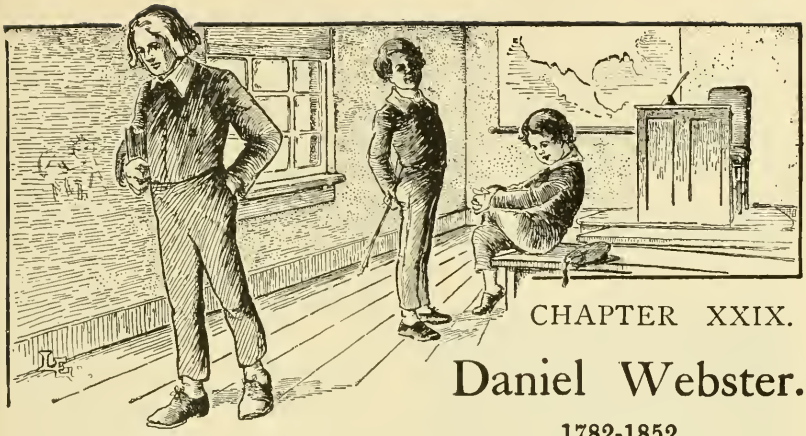
Henry Clay had a very pleasing manner which won for him many friends. One of his political enemies, who sincerely desired to hate Clay, once refused to be introduced to him, because he feared that an acquaintance with the great statesman would change his hatred into admiration.

Clay used his great powers of oratory, and his ability as a statesman for the advancement of his country's welfare. He

had the courage to advocate measures that he thought were right even if he knew that by so doing he would cause his popularity to suffer. Once, when he was strongly urging a compromise on the slavery dispute, one of his friends told him that, if he kept pursuing the compromise policy, he would become unpopular with his party and thereby lose his chances for the presidency. To this he replied, "I had rather be right than President."

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Missouri, California, New Mexico and Utah. Locate Lexington (Ky.) and Richmond (Va.). Trace the parallel of latitude 36° 30′. What is the capital of California? What mountains are in California?

Review Questions. Tell where Clay was born and give an account of his early life. What work did he have when he lived in Richmond? What profession did he follow in Kentucky? Tell a story which shows Clay's bashfulness. Tell about Clay in public life. Give the conversation between Clay and an old hunter. Tell of the Missouri Compromise. Which was the last slave state admitted? What stand did the North take about admitting slave states? Tell of the finding of gold in California. Tell of the Omnibus Bill of 1850. Tell of the death and burial of Clay. What kind of man was he?



Daniel Webster at School.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Daniel Webster.

1782-1852.

When Henry Clay was reading law in Richmond, Virginia, preparatory to entering upon his profession, Daniel Webster, a weakly boy, about fourteen years old, was pursuing his studies in Phillips Academy in New Hampshire. As Clay was at first too bashful to take an active part in the debating society to which he belonged, so Webster was too timid to recite before the school the pieces that he had memorized.

Daniel Webster was born at Salisbury, New Hampshire, January 18, 1782. His birthplace was a farm house, one story high, with a large chimney in the center. The scenery about this New England home was pleasing to the eye. A beautiful stream ran in front of the house, and the lofty Kearsarge Mountain was not far distant.

Daniel Webster's first teacher was his mother, who taught him how to spell at a very early age. In after years, he said that he could not remember the time when he could not read the Bible. His father, Colonel Webster, often read aloud to his children, and Daniel learned a great deal from listening to him. He also read many books for himself. These were obtained from his father's collection and the village library.

Near his home there was a deep, densely wooded dell, through which flowed a swift stream. Here his father had a sawmill and young Webster sometimes had to assist in the work at the mill. One of his duties was to watch the saw until it had gone through the log and then to re-adjust it. To saw off one plank generally took about fifteen minutes, during which time he was at leisure. This time of waiting he spent in reading, and in this way he gained an acquaintance with some of the world's best authors.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

When a boy, Webster's health was not good, and his parents thought that he would not be able to earn a living by working on a farm. For this reason and also because he had already shown unusual ability as a student, it was decided that he should be educated as a teacher.

Phillips Academy, in Exeter, New Hampshire, was then, as now, one of the best academies in New England; so to this school Colonel Webster determined to send his son. Accordingly, one May morning (1796) young Webster left home for the academy accompanied by his father. They went on horseback and reached Exeter at the end of a three days' journey.

When he entered the academy, he was put at the foot of the class. His low class-standing, together with his awkward, country-like manners, caused the boys to laugh at him. Such treatment made him unhappy at first, but one of the teachers told him not to mind it and that the boys would not keep up

their ridicule long. After he had been at school one quarter, the assistant tutor called up the class one morning, having the students take their usual positions. He then went to the foot and marched Webster to the head of the class, saying, "There, sir, that is your proper place."

Colonel Webster decided that, as his son had been so successful at the academy, he would give him a college education. At that time it was considered an even greater privilege than it is now to be able to attend college, and when Colonel Webster made known his intention to his son one day, while they were riding together in a sleigh, Daniel was overcome with the feeling of gratitude and could say nothing, but only laid his head on his father's shoulder and wept.

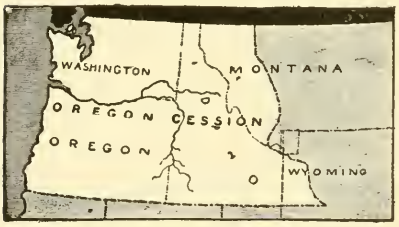
Webster entered Dartmouth College in 1797, at the age of fifteen. On graduating, he read law in the office of a Mr. Thompson, who lived near Colonel Webster's home. Webster afterwards went to Boston to pursue his legal studies further under the direction of the Hon. Christopher Gore, with whom he studied for one year. He was then admitted to the bar.

About this time, the clerkship of one of the county courts of New Hampshire was offered to him. His father was judge of this court, and was very anxious for his son to accept the place. It paid fifteen hundred dollars a year, which was, for that time, a high salary. The young lawyer advised with Mr. Gore, who told him not to accept the position, but to continue the study of the law. Mr. Gore told him that if he were to accept the office he would very probably be a clerk all his life. Webster thought that his talent would insure him a higher position than that of recording the acts of other men, so he refused the clerkship.

He started out in his profession as a country lawyer in New Hampshire, and in a short while became a member of Congress. After some years he moved to Massachusetts, and that state be-

came his permanent home. For a while he devoted his time to the practice of his profession, but soon his adopted state called upon him to represent her in Congress. He was first a member of the House of Representatives, and afterwards was United States Senator. He was secretary of state during a part of the Harrison-Tyler administration, and also held the same office under President Fillmore.

While he was secretary of state he negotiated with Lord Ashburton, the English representative, a treaty, known as the Ashburton Treaty, which settled the boundary line between the English dominions in America and the United States from Maine to the Rocky Mountains. This was a very important treaty because many had feared that the United States and England would go to war on account of the dispute concerning the dividing line between the two countries. The boundary from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean was left unsettled, but it was understood that those who would first occupy the so-called Oregon Country, lying to the west of the Rocky Mountains, and extending along the Pacific Ocean from the 42d parallel of latitude to the southern limit of Alaska (latitude 54° 40′), would be entitled to the territory. Four years later another treaty was made with England by which the Oregon Country was cut in two by the 49th parallel of latitude, and the United States were given the southern part. From this territory have been formed the states of Oregon, Idaho and Washington. The northern part, now known as British Columbia, was given to England.



THE OREGON CESSION.

The story goes that Webster, in negotiating with Lord Ash-

burton, was about to give to England all of the territory west of the Rocky Mountains north of latitude 42°, and that he was prevented from doing so by a report which was given of that great country by the Rev. Dr. Marcus Whitman. Marcus Whitman, who was a native of New York, had been sent by the Presbyterian Church as a missionary to the Indians west of the Rocky Mountains. Whitman saw what a fine country Oregon was, and that the English were trying to get it. To prevent this, he rode all the way from Oregon to Washington City. This is one of the famous rides in history, and is called the "Ride for Oregon," as it was made to save Oregon from the English. In his trip from Oregon Whitman suffered intensely, sometimes being almost frozen to death and at others nearly starved; but he pushed on and finally reached Washington City. He told President Tyler and Secretary Webster of the resources of the Oregon Country. To make sure that the English would not secure it, he persuaded settlers to go from the East to Oregon, and thus the section was saved for the United States.

After Webster had made the treaty with the English, he resigned the office of secretary of state, and returned to the Senate. He was one of the greatest orators and debaters in that body. He advocated a strong Union, and was always opposed to states-rights.

Probably the greatest speech he ever made was delivered in the Senate in reply to the South Carolina Senator, Robert Y. Hayne, who had ably contended before the Senate that a state had the right to prevent the enforcement within its borders of any law passed by Congress if it thought that Congress had no right to make such a law. This was known as the doctrine of nullification. Webster contended that the states had no such powers, and replied to Colonel Hayne, setting forth his views concerning the nature of the Union. It was known beforehand on what day he would speak, and, when the time

came, the "galleries, floors and even the stairways" of the Senate Chamber were crowded with people. "The House of Representatives was deserted," the members absenting themselves to hear Webster. The floor of the Senate Chamber was so crowded that no one could push his way out after getting inside. The speech was worthy the man and the occasion, and was even better than the eager crowd had expected. Webster not only claimed that a state could not nullify a law, but that the Union could not be broken up.

SENATOR HAYNE.

That evening a reception was given by the President at the White House. Both Hayne and Webster were present, and each was surrounded by his friends and admirers. After talking to those about him for a while, Hayne went over to the opposite side of the room to congratulate his opponent on his fine speech. When Webster saw him coming, he advanced to meet him, gave him his hand, and said, "How are you, Colonel Hayne?" The latter replied, "None the better for you, Sir."

When Clay introduced his Omnibus Bill in 1850, Webster approved of it, and his last great speech in Congress was made in favor of Clay's measure. When he rose, the galleries and lobbies of the Senate were hushed in deep silence. After a strong and able plea, he concluded: "My object is peace, my object is conciliation; my purpose is not to make up a case for the North, or to make up a case for the South. My object is not to continue useless and irritating controversies. I am against agitations, North and South; I am against local ideas, North and South, and against all narrow and local contests. I am an American and I know no locality in America. This is my

country. My heart, my sentiments, my judgment demand of me that I shall ever pursue such a course as shall promote the good and the harmony and the union of the whole country. This I shall do, God willing, to the end of the chapter."

This was Webster's last great speech. Shortly after this he resigned his seat in the Senate to become secretary of state under President Fillmore. Two years later he died, greatly mourned throughout the Union.

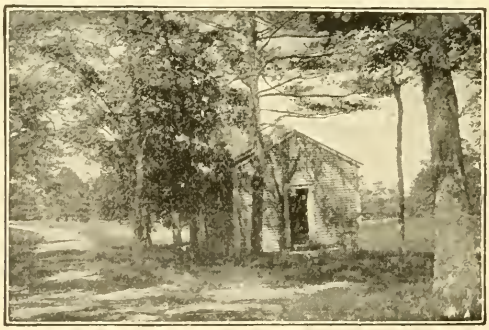
Webster was a great statesman. He loved the Union, and wanted to preserve it, but he always feared that the slavery question would lead to secession and to war. He was an honest and plain man.

His unassuming way of living is well shown by a story that is told of him. He was fond of hunting, and was a fine marksman. When dressed for a hunting excursion, he looked no more like a statesman than did his fellow-sportsmen. He and his man were once out in search of game near his home when they met some nicely dressed young Bostonians, who were also hunting. These young men were anxious to get over a swamp without wading through it; and thinking that Webster was a plain countryman, these "Boston snobs" asked him to carry them across the marsh. He agreed to do so, and accepted a quarter from each of them for his services. They then inquired as to whether "Old man Webster" was at home, saying that they might want to dine with him if he were. Webster then made himself known to them and asked them home with him to dinner; but it is needless to say that they declined the invitation.

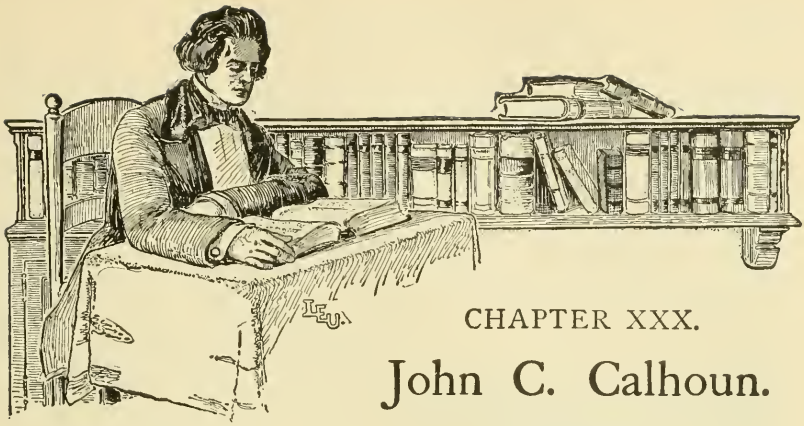
Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find New Hampshire, Oregon, Idaho and Washington (State). Trace the boundary line between British America and the United States. What states border on it? How far is it from Oregon to Washington City?

Review Questions. Tell of Webster's birthplace; of his early

education and his work at a sawmill. Tell of his course at Phillips Academy. How did he receive the news that he was to be sent to college? Tell of his studying law and the declining of the clerkship. How did he succeed in New Hampshire? What state became his permanent home? What positions of honor did he hold? Tell of the Ashburton Treaty. Tell the story of Marcus Whitman and the saving of Oregon. Tell of the Webster and Hayne debate in Congress. What stand did Webster take on the Omnibus Bill? Give the closing words of his speech in the Senate. What kind of man was Webster? Tell the story of the young Boston hunters.



Webster's "Study."



Calhoun Studying Law.

CHAPTER XXX.

John C. Calhoun.

1782-1850.

JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN was born in the Abbeville District, South Carolina, March 18, 1782. His father, Patrick Calhoun, was a native of Ireland, and was brought to this country by his parents when a mere child. Patrick Calhoun was a man of strong mind and great courage, and possessed to a marked degree that firmness of character for which his son John was so distinguished.

That part of South Carolina in which the Calhoun family lived had no schools except the old field schools; so the youth of that section had poor opportunities for getting an education. John Calhoun received little school training until he was about thirteen years old, at which time he went to Columbia County, Georgia, to attend an academy conducted by his brother-in-law, Mr. Waddell, a Presbyterian minister. He now began the study of the higher branches, but, in a short while, the academy was closed and he had to give up his studies. He continued to live with Mr. Waddell for a few months, during which time he had little companionship, as his brother-in-law was frequently away from home. He spent his leisure hours in reading such books as he found in the small circulating library of which Mr. Wad-

dell was librarian. He read so much that he injured his health and his mother sent for him to come home.

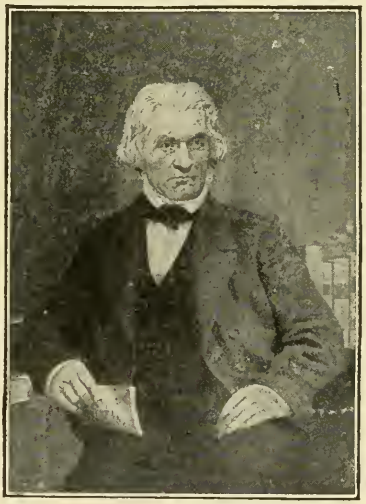
His father had died a short while before this, and John assumed the management of the farm. He found time for hunting, fishing and other amusements, and his health was soon restored. At the end of four years he had become fond of farming and thought of making it his life-work. But his brother James had planned differently for him, and insisted that John should leave the farm and prepare himself for a profession. Calhoun said that he was not willing to take up a profession unless he could go to school long enough to qualify himself properly for it. It was better, he contended, "to be a farmer, than a half-informed lawyer or physician." However, arrangements were made for him to go to school, and when he was about eighteen years old, he resumed his studies in the Georgia Academy, which had re-opened in the meantime.

After studying here for two years, he entered Yale College and graduated at the end of his second session. Dr. Dwight was then president of Yale, and he and young Calhoun would sometimes get into discussions during class hours. Calhoun's views on the powers of the United States government were different from those held by Dr. Dwight, and he was not afraid to express them openly. On one occasion Dr. Dwight questioned him as to his views on a certain point in politics. Calhoun stated his opinion freely, and argued his side so well that he made a fine impression on Dr. Dwight, who told some of his friends that the young man had enough ability to become President of the United States.

After graduating from Yale, Calhoun devoted the next three years to the study of law and to general reading. During about half of this time he resided at Litchfield, Connecticut, where there was a celebrated law school. He then studied for some time in the offices of two prominent lawyers of Charleston,

South Carolina, in order to qualify himself for practice in his own state, after which he was admitted to the bar, and soon took high rank in his profession.

It was not long, however, before he entered public life. After he had been in the legislature of South Carolina for two terms, he was elected in 1811 a member of the United States House of Representatives. In a few years he was one of the greatest speakers and statesmen of that body of distinguished men. After serving six years in the House of Representatives, he was offered the place of secretary of war by President Monroe. His friends advised him not to accept it, fearing that he would not be so successful a cabinet officer as he had been a congressman. But he thought differently, and therefore accepted the offer. He introduced system into the management of the department, and was one of the best secretaries of war that we have ever had. After this he was twice vice-president of the United States, once under John Quincy Adams, and once under Andrew Jackson. He was secretary of state during a part of Tyler's administration, and was for many years a member of the United States Senate.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Calhoun was a man who usually thought that his opinions were correct, and he generally held to them regardless of opposition. But when he found that he was wrong, he did not hesitate to change his position. For example, in the beginning of

his career, he held views on the tariff question different from those of his later life. As you may know, a tariff is a tax, or duty, laid on goods brought into the United States from foreign countries. The money that is raised by this tax goes into the United States treasury. The importer, who pays this tax, of course, adds to the price of his commodities when he sells them to the consumer. This raising of the price of the goods benefits or protects the American manufacturer of the same kind of products, because he also can sell what he manufactures at a higher price than he could if there were no tariff. When a duty is laid on imported articles merely to raise money for the government, it is called a tariff for revenue; but when it is imposed in order to protect the manufacturer, it is called a protective tariff.

Now, Calhoun first believed that we should have a moderate tariff on articles imported from other countries, because he thought that our manufacturing industries, which were just starting up, needed some protection. But later, after he had given the subject more study, he came to the firm belief that the United States government did not have the power under the Constitution to tax imports for the sake of protection.

In 1828 a very high tariff law was passed by Congress. At that time, American manufacturing was carried on chiefly in the North, while in the South the main occupation was farming. A high tariff law, as you may readily see, would make manufactured goods high, and would thereby benefit, or protect, the Northern manufacturer. On the other hand, the Southern farmer would have to pay a higher price for these articles when he bought them, and so it would work an injury to him. Consequently, the South was very much opposed to this law, which was termed the "Bill of Abominations."

In South Carolina great complaint was made against the protective tariff, but no action was taken against it until four years

later. In 1832 Congress passed another law, worse, in the eyes of the Southerners, than the one passed in 1828, and South Carolina called a convention of the people to consider the act. This convention declared that the law was "null and void," so far as South Carolina was concerned, and that it should not be carried out within the limits of that state. South Carolina also threatened to withdraw from the Union if the Federal government should try to enforce the law within the commonwealth. This is known as the Nullification Ordinance.

Calhoun was a great believer in the doctrine of nullification, and he was probably more responsible than any one else for South Carolina's action. It was by his advice that the ordinance was passed. As soon as the Nullification Ordinance was adopted by South Carolina's Convention, the whole country became greatly excited. At one time it looked as if there would be civil war, because President Jackson was firm in his determination that the tariff law should be enforced in all the states, and Congress empowered him to use United States troops in compelling the obedience of South Carolina. Calhoun was Vice-President, but he at once resigned and was elected by his state a member of the United States Senate, so that he might defend South Carolina in her opposition to the tariff measure. In the meantime, however, the tariff had been lowered by another law which had been passed by Congress. This law was more acceptable to the South, and South Carolina repealed her Ordinance of Nullification.

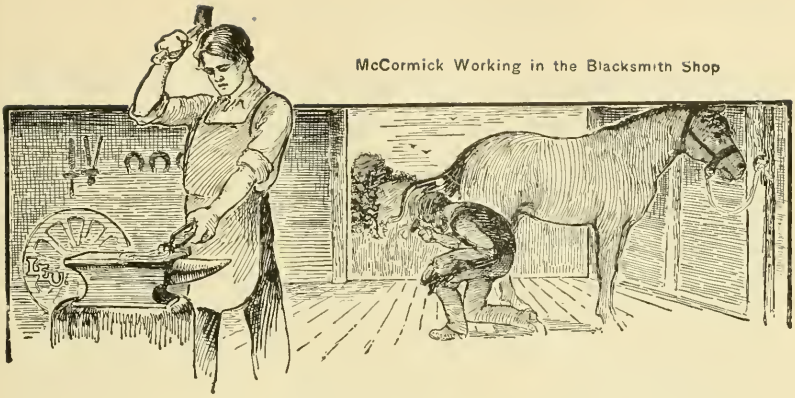
Calhoun believed in the doctrine of peaceable secession, that is, that any state had the right to secede, or withdraw from the Union, whenever the Federal government deprived her of her rights, and that the United States had no right to force a seceding state back into the Union. He also believed that it was best for the negroes to remain slaves, and that to free them would bring calamity upon both the whites and the blacks.

In his last speech, which was read before the Senate in March, 1850, Calhoun strongly opposed the admission of California into the Union as a free state. He was in very feeble health at that time, and was not able to deliver his speech before the Senate, but had it read by Senator Mason of Virginia. His health continued to grow worse, and on the thirty-first of March his end came. From Washington his remains were taken to South Carolina for burial. Eulogies on his character were pronounced in the United States Senate, and Daniel Webster, his chief political opponent, was especially loud in his praises of the great Southerner.

Calhoun was noted for his promptness, decision and independence of character. He had strong convictions and was unselfishly patriotic. Webster said: "He [Calhoun] had the indisputable basis of all high character—unspotted integrity and honor unimpeached. Nothing groveling, low, or meanly selfish came near his head or heart."

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Locate South Carolina, Georgia and Connecticut. How would you travel from Charleston, S. C., to New Haven, Conn.? How would you travel by water from California to Washington, D. C.?

Review Questions. Tell of Calhoun's early life and education. Tell what Dr. Dwight said of him. Where did he begin the practice of law? What positions of honor did he hold? What is meant by a protective tariff? What was Calhoun's position on the tariff? What was the "Bill of Abominations"? Tell of South Carolina's nullification. What was Jackson's position? What did Calhoun believe about secession? What stand did Calhoun take with reference to the admission of California? Tell of his death and Webster's eulogy of him.



McCormick Working in the Blacksmith Shop

CHAPTER XXXI.

Morse and McCormick.

1791-1872. **1809-1884.**

In some respects the two greatest inventions of the nineteenth century were the electro-magnetic telegraph and the reaper. The electric telegraph was invented by Samuel Finley Breese Morse and the reaper by Cyrus Hall McCormick.

Morse was born at Charlestown, in Massachusetts, and was the son of a New England minister. At four years of age he was sent to school to an old lady, who, being crippled, was unable to leave her chair, but managed the boys with a long rattan which reached across the small schoolroom. One of her punishments was to pin a bad boy to her dress. While undergoing this punishment, Morse usually amused himself by drawing pictures of the old lady's face. Though a boy not five years of age, he drew wonderfully well. He afterwards attended Phillips Academy in New Hampshire, and then entered Yale College, where he showed a decided taste for the study of electricity, and received much attention from President Dwight.

On leaving college, Morse decided to devote his life to

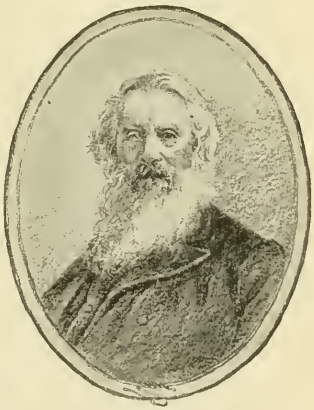
drawing and painting. He went abroad and met in London the great artist, West, who had befriended Fulton, the inventor of the first successful steamboat. He distinguished himself as a student and won several prizes from the Royal Academy. On returning to America, he traveled about the country painting portraits. At first he received fifteen dollars for each portrait that he painted, but as his reputation grew, he increased the price to sixty dollars. In a short while he was elected professor of the literature of the arts of design in the University of the State of New York, and he made a second trip to Europe for further study. As he was returning to America the passengers on board the ship were discussing a recent discovery in France of the means of obtaining an electric spark from a magnet. For some time Morse had been thinking about electricity, but it was on this trip that he first conceived the idea of inventing a successful system of telegraphy. Several scientists had made experiments, but without success.

As Morse sat upon the deck of the ship one night after dinner, he drew from his pocket a small book and began to make marks to represent letters and figures to be produced by electricity at a distance. In after years he developed these marks into the telegraph alphabet which is now in use. He showed his plan to one of the passengers, William C. Rives, of Virginia, who was then returning from Paris where he had been minister of the United States. Rives suggested various difficulties and the possibility that the electric current would not travel far enough to be applied to telegraphy. Morse said that, if it could be made to pass through a magnetic coil, he could make it pass miles, and he concluded by saying, "If it will go ten miles without stopping, I can make it go around the globe." For six years Morse worked on his scheme, and finally, in 1838, after various experiments, he had constructed an instrument for recording and receiving the dots and dashes which in various

combinations made the letters of the telegraph alphabet. By this means he could send a message.

He at once went to Washington and asked Congress to give money for a telegraph line between Washington and Baltimore, but the politicians would not listen to the proposal, thinking that it was only the scheme of a "visionary." He even applied to the monarchs of Europe for assistance, but with the same ill-success.

In 1843, on the twenty-first of February, through the influence of John P. Kennedy of Maryland, a bill giving thirty thousand dollars for the building of a telegraph line between Washington and Baltimore was proposed in the House of Representatives. The bill passed the House by the close vote of 89 to 83, and then went to the Senate for consideration. At twelve o'clock at night, on March the third, Congress would adjourn. Late that afternoon there were one hundred and nineteen bills on the Senate list ahead of Morse's bill. It seemed impossible for it to be reached that night before the hour of adjournment. Morse waited a long time in a lobby adjoining the Senate Chamber, hoping that his bill might be brought up, but finally he left with a sad heart, on being told by one of the Senators that it would be impossible to get the bill through that night. The next morning as he came down to his breakfast at the hotel, sad and disappointed, he was greeted by a young lady with a smiling countenance who said, "I have come to congratulate you." "Upon what?" asked Professor Morse. "Upon the passage of your bill," she replied. "My fate was sealed last evening. You must be mistaken." "Not at all,"



S. F. B. MORSE.

answered the young lady; "father sent me to tell you that your bill was passed. He remained till the session closed and it passed just five minutes before the adjournment. I am so glad to be the first one to tell you." The young lady was Miss Ellsworth, the daughter of Mr. H. L. Ellsworth, the commissioner of patents, who was a great advocate of Morse's bill. Morse was delighted with the news and promised the young lady that the first message that was sent over the line should be dictated by her.

The line was soon completed between Washington and Baltimore, and on the twenty-fourth day of May, 1844, Miss Ellsworth sent the first message over the wire. She selected the familiar words from the Bible, "What hath God wrought!"

A few days after this the Democratic Convention was in session in Baltimore. It nominated James K. Polk of Tennessee for President and Senator Silas Wright for Vice-President. The news was telegraphed to Washington and Senator Wright replied declining the nomination. In a few minutes after he had been nominated, it was announced to the convention in Baltimore that Senator Wright would not accept the nomination. The members of the convention did not believe it. They did not know what a telegraph line was, so they adjourned until next day, and sent a committee by train to Washington to see Senator Wright. When the convention re-assembled the next morning, great was the surprise of the members to know that the news of the previous day was correct. This was a great advertisement for Morse's telegraph. In that convention were men from all parts of the United States and they went back to their homes talking about the wonderful invention, the electro-magnetic telegraph.

Morse lived nearly thirty years longer; and during this time, thousands of miles of telegraph wires were put up in this country and in Europe. Great cables were laid on the bottoms of the

oceans, and to-day, in a few minutes, one may send a message to any part of the civilized world. In the United States we have a million miles of telegraph wire in use, and there are now in the world one hundred thousand miles of cable lines under the water. It is impossible to estimate the great value to mankind of the invention of the telegraph.

A MODERN REAPING MACHINE.

At the time that Morse was working on the telegraph, our system of farming was very different from what it is to-day. Farmers made little use of machinery in cultivating their lands. Wheat was cut with hand cradles, and grass with the scythe. There were no good plows, harrows or rakes. McCormick's invention of the reaper gave new life to agriculture. Out of the reaper have come our splendid mowing machines, self-binders and corn

harvesters, which save in labor for the farmers of our great country more than one hundred million dollars annually.

Cyrus Hall McCormick was born near Lexington, in Rockbridge County, Virginia. He, like Fulton and Morse, was of Scotch-Irish descent. His father was Robert McCormick, who had invented a thresher, a hemp breaker, and had tried to make a reaper. But Robert McCormick's reaper had wooden cogs and would not work, so the honor of having invented the first reaper that was a real success is due to his son, Cyrus.

CYRUS H. McCORMICK.

Young McCormick had little education. He went to an old field school in winter, and in summer and spring worked upon his father's farm. He first invented a plow and then an improved cradle for cutting wheat. On his father's farm was a blacksmith's shop and in this he worked earnestly whenever he had a chance. After months of labor he turned out, in 1831, the first reaper that worked well enough to cut a field of wheat. But he was not satisfied with it and he experimented for nine years longer before he made a machine for sale. Then he began to manufacture reapers in Rockbridge County.

The first shipment of reapers ever made to the West was in 1844. These reapers were hauled in wagons from Rockbridge County to Scottsville in Albemarle County, from which point they were sent down the canal along the James River to Richmond, thence by water to New Orleans and thence by the Mississippi and Ohio Rivers to Cincinnati. McCormick saw that he could make a great deal of money by manufacturing

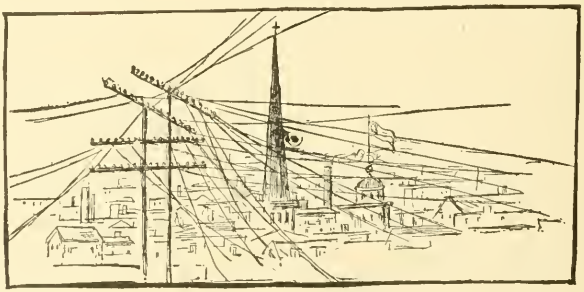
and selling reapers, as they were in great demand in the West, but he knew that he would have to be nearer to the purchasers. He therefore moved to Cincinnati, and thence to Chicago, where he established his factory in 1846. From that day to this, the great McCormick factory has been making reapers for the world. McCormick improved his reaper from time to time and there is a great difference between the modern reaper and the one which McCormick first invented.

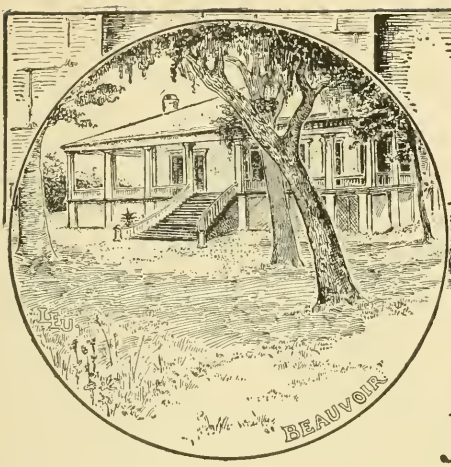
The first real world's fair was held in London in 1851. America had a very poor exhibit, but it was redeemed by the McCormick reaper. The London *Times*, a great English paper, made all manner of fun of the reaper, saying that it was a cross between a circus chariot, a wheel barrow and a flying machine; but when McCormick took his machine and tried it in the field, it worked so beautifully that the very paper which had ridiculed it, confessed that it was worth to the farmers of England the whole cost of the World's Fair. At the Paris Exposition of 1867, McCormick was one of the exhibitors. He directed the work of his reapers at a field trial; and the Emperor Napoleon III., who walked after them, was so delighted that he made McCormick a member of the Legion of Honor. Many other honors were won by McCormick at other expositions.

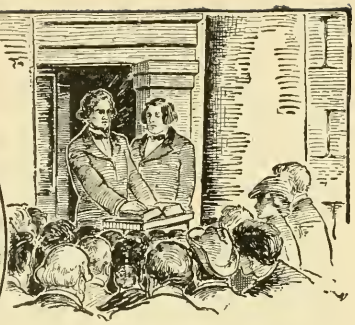
Morse was an educator, being a professor in the University of New York. He had received a splendid college education at Yale. McCormick was a self-made man, but he was a great believer in education and encouraged it liberally. He gave large sums of money to Washington and Lee University, at Lexington, Va., and to other colleges in our country. He was a Christian gentleman and spent more than half a million dollars towards the establishment of the Presbyterian Theological Seminary of the Northwest. He knew that only through Christianity and education can the young men of our country attain to the highest positions of usefulness.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Charlestown (Mass.) and Lexington (Va.). Locate Washington and Baltimore. How far is it from Washington to Baltimore? How would you go by water from Richmond (Va.) to Cincinnati (Ohio)? Find Chicago.

Review Questions. What are two of the great inventions of the nineteenth century? Tell of the early life of Morse. What profession did he take up? How did he make a living? What professorship did he have? Tell of Morse's first ideas about telegraphy. How long did he work on his plan? Tell of the passage of a bill through Congress to put up a telegraph line. Who first informed him of its success? Tell of the first message. Tell the story about the Democratic Convention and Senator Wright. How many miles of telegraph wires are there in the United States? How many miles of cable lines in the world? Tell of the state of farming years ago. What did Robert McCormick invent? Tell of Cyrus Hall McCormick and his reaper. How were the first reapers shipped to Ohio? Where is the McCormick factory? Tell of the London *Times* and its comments on the reaper. How did Napoleon III. honor McCormick? Why should America be proud of Morse and McCormick? What kind of man was McCormick?







Davis Taking the Oath of Office.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Jefferson Davis.

1808-1889.

CLAY'S Omnibus Bill of 1850 did not put an end to the strife over slavery, but only postponed for a short while "the inevitable conflict." For some years there had been growing in the North a feeling in favor of setting the slaves free in all parts of the United States. This movement was headed by William Lloyd Garrison, who believed that slavery should be abolished by action of the Federal government in spite of the fact that Congress had always declared that it had no right to interfere with slavery in the states. Garrison and his followers organized the Abolition Party, which grew in strength. The Northern states not only refused to return the slaves who had run away from the South, but even passed laws known as the Personal Liberty Acts, to prevent the capture of these slaves. These laws set aside the "fugitive" act that Congress had passed in 1850 providing that slaves should be returned. This refusal of the North to obey the laws of the United States angered the people of the South.

In 1854 the territory west of Missouri and Iowa was organized into two territories, one called Kansas, the other Ne-

braska. These territories lay north of 36° 30′, and, according to the Missouri Compromise, could not have slavery; but the bill by which they were organized left it to the settlers of these territories to decide whether they would or would not have slaves. This created great excitement. The Southern people were pleased, but the Northern opponents of slavery were enraged. A new party was then formed for the purpose of keeping all the territories as "free soil," and in a little while the "Free Soilers," as the members of this party were called, became known as Republicans. This was the origin of the Republican Party.

ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

Two years later a case came before the Supreme Court of the United States about a negro slave named Dred Scott. The judges decided that slaves were property, just as horses and mules, and that a Southern man could go with his slaves into any territory of the United States, and that Congress had no right to keep slavery out of a territory. This decision was entirely in favor of the South. A majority of the Northern people were unwilling to abide by it and went into the Republican Party, which in 1860 nominated Lincoln for the presidency. He was elected with the understanding that Congress would prohibit slavery in the territories of the United States.

Then it was that the Southern states began to withdraw from the Union. South Carolina was the first to secede and she was quickly followed by Georgia, Alabama, Florida, Mississippi, Louisiana and Texas. These states organized a new

government called "The Confederate States of America." Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia was made Vice-President. In a short while the Confederates captured Fort Sumter, and Lincoln called for troops to put down what he called the "Rebellion" of the Southern states. So soon as Lincoln indicated that he was going to try to force back into the Union the seceding states, North Carolina, Arkansas, Virginia, and Tennessee seceded from the Union, joined the Confederacy, and gave their support to President Davis.

Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky, June 3, 1808. His father was a Georgia planter who had served as an officer in the Revolutionary War. After that war, he settled in Kentucky, where he lived until shortly after the birth of Jefferson Davis, when he removed to Mississippi and made his home near Woodville in Wilkinson County. Jefferson Davis was sent at an early age to Transylvania University in Kentucky. He was a good student and made rapid progress. At the age of sixteen he entered the West Point Military Academy, from which he graduated in 1828; he was then appointed a lieutenant in the United States Cavalry stationed at Fort Crawford in the present State of Wisconsin. While serving in the United States Army, he took part in the Black Hawk War, in which Lincoln was also engaged. At the close of this Indian war, Davis left the army, married Miss Sarah Knox Taylor, daughter of Colonel Zachary Taylor, and became a cotton planter in Warren County, Mississippi. Mrs. Davis lived only three years. In 1845 Davis was married the second time to Miss Varina Howell, of Natchez, Mississippi.

Like all prominent Southern planters, Davis soon entered politics. He was a states-right candidate for the legislature and was defeated. In 1844 he was an elector on the Democratic ticket headed by James K. Polk of Tennessee. In this

campaign he spoke in all parts of Mississippi, and largely through his influence, Polk carried the state over Henry Clay, the Whig candidate. The following year, Davis was elected a member of the House of Representatives. Hardly had he entered Congress when the war with Mexico began. At once he resigned his seat in Congress, returned to Mississippi, and was chosen

"THE WHITE HOUSE OF THE CONFEDERACY."

colonel of the regiment of Mississippians that went to the Mexican War.

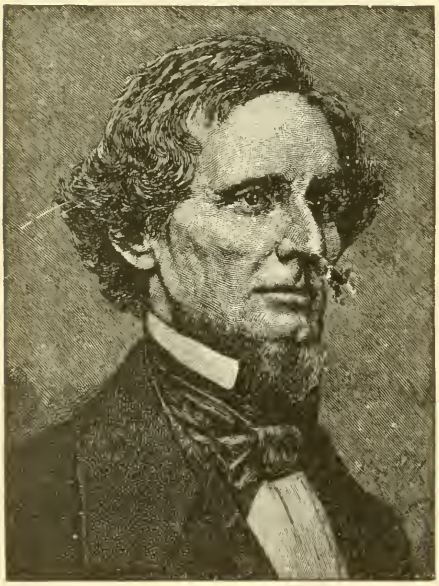
Davis was a good soldier and a brave man. At the battle of Monterey, he headed his regiment in a charge upon a strong stone building, La Taneria (the Tannery), which had been converted into a fort. The Mexicans were forced to surrender, and the officer in command delivered his sword to Colonel Davis.

At the battle of Buena Vista, he was equally brave. In the very face of the Mexican army, he descended into a ravine to find a suitable place for the passage of his men. While in this ravine, he was fired upon by a whole Mexican squadron, but he escaped unhurt. With his regiment of Mississippians and a handful of Indiana volunteers, he made a bold attack, at double-quick time, on the enemy, who fled in confusion. Davis seized the strong position which they had occupied. Immediately he was attacked by a Mexican brigade, but he drew his troops up in a V shape and stood the charge with firmness. At the same time his men fired with deadly aim, and the enemy was forced to retreat. Davis was severely wounded in his foot, but he remained in his saddle until the close of the battle. General Taylor, in his official report of the battle, said of Davis: "His distinguished coolness and gallantry at the head of his regiment on this day entitle him to the particular notice of the government."

At the close of the Mexican War Davis retired to his home in Mississippi, but it was not long before he was elected to the United States Senate. It was during this time that the Omnibus Bill was introduced, and Davis, along with Calhoun, opposed it, because he believed that all the territories of the United States should be open to slavery. Soon after this he resigned from the Senate to become the candidate for governor in Mississippi. He was defeated by only one thousand majority.

Three years later he became secretary of war under President Franklin Pierce. In this position he did great service to the United States. He introduced better guns into the army, improved the system of infantry tactics, and prepared better defenses of the sea-coast. He went from the cabinet of Pierce to the United States Senate on the fourth of March, 1857, where he remained until the twenty-fourth day of January, 1861, when, on being informed that the State of Mississippi had withdrawn

from the Union, he retired from the Senate. These four years when Davis was in the Senate were the trying period of the Union, and secession was being constantly discussed. When the Constitution was first formed, the states were thought to be the sovereigns, *i. e.*, the United States government was the agent of the states, and therefore, if a state decided to leave the Union, it had the right to do so. As the years went by, many, especially the people of the North, began to think that the Union could not be broken up. Even granting that a state might have a legal right to withdraw from the Union, they claimed that it did not have a moral right to break up a great country. Davis contended that a state was sovereign and that it had both a legal and a moral right to withdraw from the Union. The vast majority of Southern people believed as he did. He introduced into the Senate in 1860 seven resolutions which set forth the rights of the states. After a heated debate they passed the Senate. The resolutions declared that all the states were sovereign and equal, and that, as negro slaves were property, Congress had no right to interfere with this kind of property in the territories any more than with horses or cows. Believing in the sovereignty of the states, the Southern states seceded when



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

Lincoln was elected with the distinct pledge to prohibit slavery in the territories.

When Davis withdrew from the Senate, he defended the cause of the South and said, " I have for many years advocated as an essential attribute of state sovereignty the right of a state to secede from the Union. Secession is to be justified upon the basis that the states are sovereign . . . . and may reclaim the grants . . . . made to any agent whomsoever. . . . . I carry with me no hostile remembrance." He thought that the South should be allowed to withdraw without war.

As soon as he retired from the Senate and reached Mississippi, he was informed that he had been elected President of the Confederate States. He at once set out to Montgomery, Alabama, to enter upon this responsible office (1861). On his journey he received a welcome from the people who came in great crowds to the railroad stations to hear him speak.

As President of the Confederate States of America, Davis was a conscientious, honest man. He did his duty as he saw it, without fear of man. He encouraged the soldiers and officers in the most trying moments, and to the very last was hopeful for the success of the Confederate cause.

When Lee evacuated Richmond in 1865, Davis tried to make his escape to the South, hoping to cross the Mississippi and probably to make his way to Mexico. After several days' travel hearing that robbers were pursuing his family, he turned back to protect them. In the neighborhood of Irvinville, Ga., he was surprised and captured.

In writing of this, Davis said, " Late in the night my colored coachman aroused me with the intelligence that the camp was attacked, and I stepped out of the tent where my wife and children were sleeping and saw at once that the assailants were troopers deploying around the encampment. I so informed my wife,

who urged me to escape. After some hesitation, I consented, and a servant woman started with me carrying a bucket as if going to the spring for water. One of the surrounding troopers ordered me to halt and demanded my surrender. I advanced toward the trooper, throwing off a shawl which my wife had put around my shoulders. The trooper aimed his carbine, when my

THE DAVIS PLOT AT HOLLYWOOD.

wife, who witnessed the act, rushed forward and threw her arms around me, thus defeating my intention, which was, if the trooper missed his aim, to try and unhorse him and escape with his horse." He then said to his wife, " God's will be done," and surrendered himself to the Union soldiers.

He was taken as a prisoner to Fortress Monroe, where he was imprisoned for two years, a part of which time he was kept in

irons and confined in an uncomfortable cell. The South has never forgotten the harsh treatment which Davis received while he was in prison. Later he was released on bail and was never brought to trial. After a trip to Europe, he returned to Mississippi and spent the remainder of his life at his home, "Beauvoir." He never again had all the rights of a citizen of the United States, because he was never pardoned by the government, Congress having refused to remove his disabilities. He was really an exile in his own country.

He died in New Orleans the sixth of December, 1889. The whole South went into mourning for him. In every Southern city bells were tolled in respect to his memory and flags were dropped at half-mast. His remains were interred in Metaire Cemetery, New Orleans, but were afterwards removed to Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy, and re-interred in Hollywood Cemetery.

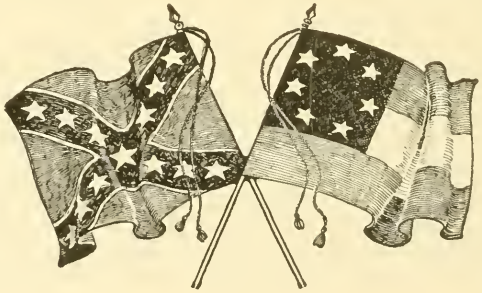
"Jefferson Davis was, in many respects, one of the greatest men this republic has ever produced. He was able, bold, true, manly, and conscientious. . . . The Southern people loved him because he suffered for them. They are prepared to protect and guard his memory from the fierce future winds of prejudice."

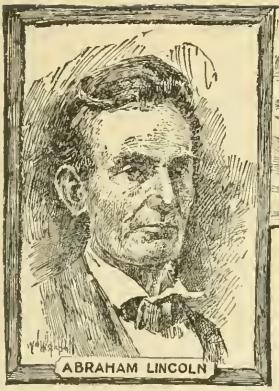
"Mr. Davis's life illustrated virtue, patriotism and courage in a degree rarely seen among men. He was greater in defeat and misfortune than in victory."

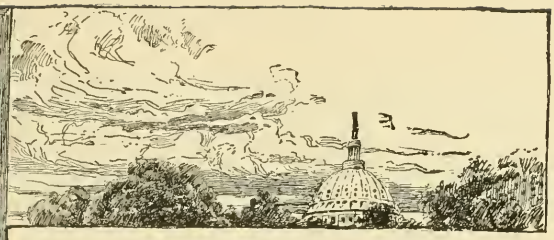
Geography Study. *Map of the Southern States.* Bound Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Arkansas and Texas. Locate Woodville (Miss.), Montgomery (Ala.), Richmond (Va.), and New Orleans (La.). How far is it from Richmond to New Orleans?

Review Questions. Tell of Garrison and the Abolition Party. What created trouble when Kansas and Nebraska were organized as

territories? Tell of the Republican Party. Tell of secession and the Confederate States. Who was Davis's father? Tell of his early life and education. Tell of his soldier life. How did he distinguish himself in the war against Mexico? Tell what position of honor he held under the United States. What resolutions did he offer in the United States Senate? Did Davis believe in secession? What did he say when he withdrew from the Senate? Tell of his election as President of the Confederacy and his journey to Montgomery (Ala.). What kind of President was he? Tell of his capture and treatment by the United States. Tell of his death. What can be said of Davis as a man?







CHAPTER XXXIII.

Abraham Lincoln.

1809-1865.

MANY of our great men were born and reared in the backwoods of the country. The free and independent life led by the pioneer settlers in a new community seems to favor the formation of strength and nobility of character. Among the "forest-born" statesmen that have taken an important part in the affairs of our nation, Abraham Lincoln holds a foremost place. He was born February 12, 1809, in a cabin situated in a bleak, dreary region on Nolin Creek in Kentucky. His father, Thomas Lincoln, was a shiftless man with a roving disposition, and was always in needy circumstances. Abraham's mother, whose maiden name was Nancy Hanks, was of a melancholy disposition, and during the last years of her life she "habitually wore the woeful expression which afterwards distinguished the countenance of her son in repose."

About seven years after the birth of Abraham, Thomas Lincoln moved to Indiana. He settled in the midst of a great forest on a fertile piece of land, in a section of country where only a few families lived. Here he built a rough log cabin, which had a dirt floor and no doors and windows. His family had to sit on three-legged stools instead of chairs. For a table they had a log made flat and smooth and supported by legs, on which their plain food was served in pewter and tin dishes. In

one corner of the room were some poles stuck between the logs of the wall and supported by forked posts driven into the ground,—this was the bedstead; and some skins, leaves and old clothes were the bedding. The loft was Abraham's sleeping apartment, and the only way he could get to it was by climbing up "on pegs driven into holes in the wall."

The Lincolns had not lived long in their new home before Abraham's mother died. Thomas Lincoln afterwards married, as his second wife, Sarah Johnston, a widow, who was a kind-hearted, industrious woman and a good housekeeper. She took great interest in Thomas Lincoln's children, and soon the cabin assumed an air of comfort. It was provided with doors and windows, and a plank floor took the place of the earthen one. All of the children were very fond of Mrs. Lincoln, and especially young Abraham. He was always willing to do her bidding, and never gave her a cross word.

THE HUT WHERE LINCOLN WAS BORN.

When a young boy, Lincoln did much of the work at home, and at times he was hired as a laborer to some of the neighbors, or earned a little money with his flat boat on the river. Therefore, he had little time to devote to study; but his stepmother had him attend several schools for a few months each year. One of the houses in which he was taught reading, writing and arithmetic was a low cabin built of unhewn logs, with no windows except holes in the walls covered over with greased paper. But the future President, being used to few comforts at

home, probably thought little of the poor accommodations of the schoolroom, and usually came to school with a smile on his face. He wore a cap made of the skin of an opossum, or a raccoon, and buckskin breeches, which lacked about twelve inches of reaching his shoe tops. Lincoln's last school was four and a half miles from his home and his attendance there was very irregular. In all, Lincoln never spent as much as twelve months in school.

However, he did not lay aside his books when he left school. Whenever he could find time to do so, he would lie down in the shade of a tree or in the loft of his father's cabin and read and study. In this way, he read all the books that came within his reach. One night the rain beat in at a crack in the cabin and ruined a book that he had borrowed. The owner of the book made him pay for it with three days' hard work.

When Lincoln was about twenty-one years old, his father and two of his neighbors moved to Illinois and settled about ten miles from Decatur. "The goods of the three families were loaded on a wagon," which was "drawn by four yoke of oxen." Lincoln drove the team and arrived at his new home after a journey of fifteen days over rough roads and across swollen streams. A farm was cleared and he and his kinsman, John Hanks, hauled the rails with which to fence it.

Shortly after this, Lincoln secured a position as clerk in a store in the village of New Salem in Illinois. His employer thought very highly of him, and he was much beloved by the whole community. His great popularity was due in a large measure to his reputation as a wrestler and to his extraordinary gift in the art of telling humorous stories. Lincoln could now read and write well, but did not know how to write and speak his own language correctly. He therefore decided to begin the study of English grammar as soon as he could get a book. There was not a grammar in New Salem, but the schoolmaster said he knew where one could be obtained six miles from the town. Hav-

ing secured a book, Lincoln devoted himself industriously to his new study. When he was not at work in the store, he would lie down on the counter and pore over his book. At night he studied in a cooper's shop, because he could keep a bright light there by burning the shavings.

YOUNG LINCOLN AT WORK ON THE RIVER.

In 1832 Lincoln was captain of a volunteer company in the Black Hawk War. After returning from the war, he engaged in the mercantile business for one winter. He was afterwards postmaster of New Salem, and he also spent some time in surveying. In 1834 he was elected to the Illinois legislature, to which body he was elected four times in succession. In the meantime he had been admitted to the bar after having studied law for several years. He now moved to Springfield and built up a large practice. Lincoln was a member of the United States House of Representatives for one term and was also twice a candidate for the Senate; the last time he was defeated by Stephen A. Douglas.

When a boy, Lincoln used to say that some day he expected

to be President of the United States, and on the fourth of March, 1861, that dream of his life was realized. As you know, the slavery question had been the main issue between the two political parties for some years. A party had been formed to prohibit slavery in the territories, and in a few years all who were opposed to the extension of slavery joined its ranks. The Republican party was the name which this new political organization finally assumed, though it was at first known as the Free-Soil party. In 1856 it nominated for the presidency John C. Frémont, who, though defeated, was voted for by eleven Northern states. In May, 1860, the Republican party met in national convention in Chicago and named Lincoln as its candidate for President, and he was elected. Soon after the election, the Southern states, led by South Carolina, began to leave the Union. Lincoln determined to force them back, but a long and bloody war was fought before he succeeded in his attempt.

After the war had been going on about a year and a half, General Lee, who had lately won some great victories over the Northern forces, led his army across the Potomac with the intention of invading the North. On the seventeenth of September, 1862, the battle of Sharpsburg or Antietam (Md.) was fought between him and McClellan. Neither side was victorious, but Lee led his army back into Virginia. As the North was relieved from the fear of invasion, Lincoln thought that he could safely issue his Emancipation Proclamation. Accordingly, on the twenty-second of September, 1862, Lincoln issued a proclamation declaring that on January 1, 1863, all the slaves in the seceded states should be free, and that the armies of the United States should enforce the order wherever it was in their power to do so. In those sections of the South which were occupied by the Northern armies, some of the slaves ran away from their owners, but the great majority of the negroes remained faithful to their masters until the close of the war.

President Lincoln did not, of course, have any authority under the Constitution of the United States to interfere with slavery in the states, but he thought that, if he could get the negroes to desert their masters, the Southern soldiers, having no one at home to work for them, would soon have to leave the army and go back to cultivate their lands. In this way he believed that his proclamation would aid in bringing the war to a speedy close. Besides, he thought that the President, as commander-in-chief of the army, could exercise powers in time of war, that he did not have at other times. But Lincoln's proclamation did not abolish slavery in the United States; so he urged Congress to take the proper steps to have the Constitution changed so as to prohibit slavery throughout the entire country. On January 1, 1865, Congress proposed an amendment to the Constitution which prohibited slavery forever in all the states and territories. On the eighteenth of December of the same year, it was declared that the necessary number of states had agreed to the amendment, and thus slavery was abolished in the United States. This was the Thirteenth Amendment. After this, two other amendments, the Fourteenth and Fifteenth, were adopted. The former gave to the negroes equal rights under the laws with the whites, and the latter conferred upon them the right to vote.

The war being over, Lincoln was anxious to see the Southern states restored to their place in the Union as soon as possible. This re-forming of the Union by the re-admission of the Southern states was called reconstruction. But unfortunately for the South, this work had to be done by other and less skilful hands. On the fourteenth of April, 1865, President Lincoln, accompanied by his wife and Major Rathbone, was seated in a box in Ford's Theater in Washington witnessing a play. Wilkes Booth, an actor, came in by stealth and shot Lincoln and stabbed Major Rathbone. The President died next morning at seven o'clock.

His remains were carried to Illinois and, on May 4th, were buried at Oak Ridge near Springfield, Illinois.

Lincoln was not a happy man, and twice in his life he almost lost his mind. His face wore a sad expression almost constantly, although he had few equals in the art of amusing a crowd by telling anecdotes. He was tall, muscular and homely; his complexion was swarthy and his skin shrivelled, even when a boy.

THE NATIONAL CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

He was kind and good-natured and enjoyed great popularity among the people who knew him well.

Lincoln's plan of re-admitting the Southern states into the Union was a simple one. If in any state which had seceded, one-tenth of those who were voters in 1860 would take an oath to support the Constitution of the United States, and would organize a proper state government, this government was then to be recognized by the President of the United States. Lincoln's

death occurred so soon after the close of the war that he had accomplished little towards the restoration of the Union. He was succeeded by Vice-President Johnson. Johnson's views on reconstruction were practically the same as those of Lincoln; but he did not have the influence over Congress that his great predecessor possessed, and that body refused to approve his measures. Ill-feeling arose between the President and Congress, and Johnson was finally impeached by Congress. He was tried before the Senate and would have been deprived of his office if one more vote had been cast against him. Congress declared that the conditions under which the Southern states could come back into the Union must be determined by its action and not by the President.

By acts of Congress, 1867, all the South (except Tennessee, which had agreed to the Fourteenth Amendment and had been re-admitted) was divided into five military districts. A general was placed over each district with power to direct the government. Every office-holder had to take an oath that he had not willingly aided "the secession movement." This was called the "iron-clad oath." The best people of the South could not take this oath, and that left the offices to be filled mainly by the negroes and by white men who had lately come from the North for the sake of plunder. The latter were called "carpet-baggers"; the Southern white people who took the "iron-clad oath" and helped the Northerners and negroes to trample upon the rights of their brethren were called "scalawags." For a while the governments of most of the Southern states were almost entirely in the hands of the negroes, carpet-baggers and scalawags. They imposed high taxes upon the people and made large state debts. These plunderers took for their own use the greater part of the money that was raised in this way.

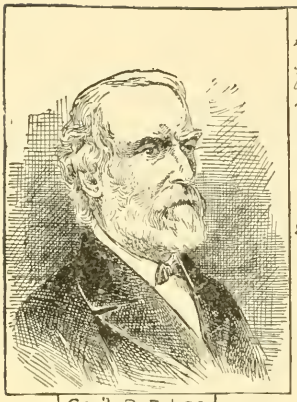
This period of misrule lasted longer in some states than in others, but after General Grant became President in 1869, better

conditions came to prevail, and by January 30, 1871, all the Southern states had been re-admitted to representation in Congress. In a little while the carpet-baggers and negroes lost their control of the South, and the native Southerners have since governed themselves.

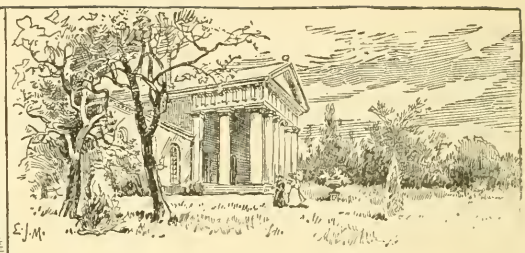
Had Lincoln lived, the South would probably have escaped many of the trials and evils of reconstruction days.

Geography Study. *Map of the Middle West States.* Locate Kentucky, Indiana and Illinois. What river separates Kentucky from Indiana and Illinois? Find New Salem and Springfield (Ill.).

Review Questions. Tell of Lincoln's early life in Kentucky, Indiana and Illinois. Describe his home. How did he study? Tell how he made a living in Illinois. What positions of honor did he hold? Tell about the Republican party. What was the Emancipation Proclamation? What was the thirteenth Amendment? What the fourteenth? What the fifteenth? Tell of Lincoln's death. What was his plan of reconstruction? Tell of President Johnson and Congress. What was the reconstruction plan of Congress? Tell of the reconstruction days in the South.



Gen'l. R.E.Lee



Arlington, the Home of Lee.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Lee and Grant.

1807-1870. 1822-1885.

THE war between the states was a terrible calamity to our country. When the Southern states seceded from the Union, they had hoped that the states in the North would allow them to depart in peace, but Lincoln and his party would not listen to any proposition which meant the dissolution of the Union. Several efforts were made to secure peace, but without avail.

The Confederate authorities demanded of the United States government the surrender of Fort Sumter, which protected the harbor of Charleston. Lincoln refused to grant this demand; and when it was learned that he was sending troops to reinforce those in the fort, the Confederates under General Beauregard attacked Sumter and captured it.

At once Lincoln called for troops to compel the seceding states to return to the Union. Thus began the war which lasted for four years—a war which produced some of the greatest generals that the world has ever known. Among the best known generals on the Southern side were Joseph E. Johnston, who, during the early part of the war, was commander-in-chief of the Army of Northern Virginia; Albert Sidney Johnston, who fell at the battle of Pittsburg Landing, in Tennessee, bravely

fighting against the Federals; Thomas J. ("Stonewall") Jackson, the great leader who was mortally wounded at the battle of Chancellorsville, Va.; the well known cavalry leaders, J. E. B. Stuart, N. B. Forrest and Fitzhugh Lee; E. Kirby Smith, who commanded the Confederates beyond the Mississippi; and James

THE ATTACK ON FORT SUMTER.

Longstreet, A. P. Hill and Leonidas Polk. But, all things considered, Robert E. Lee was the greatest general.

The chief generals on the Union side were William T. Sherman, who took Atlanta, Ga., and marched to Savannah; George B. McClellan, who was defeated in a series of battles in the Virginia peninsula between the James and York Rivers; A. E. Burnside, who was defeated at Fredericksburg, Va.; Joseph ("Fighting Joe") Hooker, who lost the battle of Chancellorsville, Va.; George C. Meade, who commanded the Union troops at the battle of Gettysburg, Pa.; George H. Thomas, who de-

feated the Confederates before Nashville in Tennessee; and Admiral Farragut, who captured New Orleans, La., and opened the lower Mississippi to the Federal fleet. But the most successful of the Northern generals was U. S. Grant. Lee and Grant, therefore, are the two great names of the War of Secession.

Robert Edward Lee was born at Stratford, in Westmoreland County, Virginia, on the nineteenth of January, 1807. His father was General Henry ("Light Horse Harry") Lee of Revolutionary fame. His father died when Robert was a boy, and therefore his training was left to his mother. She was a good woman and raised her son to be a devout Christian man. When Robert was not at school, he spent his leisure time with her. He obeyed her every wish, and from her he received the true principles of truth, morality and religion.

THE BIRTHPLACE OF GENERAL LEE.

At eighteen he received an appointment as a cadet to the United States Military Academy at West Point, and after four years he graduated second in a class of forty-six and became a second lieutenant in the Corps of Engineers. While at West Point, his conduct was perfect, his habits were excellent, and he did not receive a demerit in the whole four years. "He was a model cadet. His clothes looked nice and new. His cross belts, collars and summer trousers were as white as the driven snow mounting guard upon the mountain top, and his breast and waist plates were mirrors to reflect the image of the inspector."

In 1831 he married Mary Custis, the daughter of George Washington Parke Custis of Arlington. On the death of Mr. Custis, Mrs. Lee inherited that magnificent estate, Arlington, which, during the war, was taken from the Lees by the Federal government.

During the Mexican War, Lee did excellent service as an engineer, for which he received high praise and promotion. Soon after the close of the Mexican War, he was made superintendent of the United States Military Academy at West Point, which position he held for three years, when he was made a lieutenant colonel in the cavalry service.

GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

In 1859 a fanatic named John Brown entered Virginia and stationed himself at Harper's Ferry. He began to urge the negroes to insurrection and encouraged them to commit several atrocious crimes. By this means Brown hoped to free the negroes. Lee was in Washington at the time and was ordered by the United States government to go to Harper's Ferry and capture Brown. He at once obeyed and besieged Brown in an engine house where he and a portion of his men had taken refuge. The doors were battered down; Brown was captured and turned over to the Virginia authorities, by whom he was tried, convicted and hanged.

Shortly after this the Southern states seceded. Lee was opposed to secession, and therefore it was a great blow to him when his native state Virginia decided to leave the Union, but he never hesitated about obeying her call. For thirty-two

years Lee had served in the army of the United States, and it was a struggle for him to leave its service; but he never failed to do what he thought was his duty, and, though President Lincoln offered to put him in command of the active army of the United States, he declined the high compliment and sent in his resignation to the war department of the United States. At the same time he wrote a letter to General Winfield Scott, then commander-in-chief of the army, in which he said, "Save in the defence of my native state, I never desire again to draw my sword." But Virginia at once called upon her great son, and he was made commander-in-chief of the Virginia forces.

A STATUE OF "STONEWALL" JACKSON.

In obedience to the call of his state, he went to Richmond to take command of the Virginia forces. The State Convention, which passed the Ordinance of Secession, was in session. A committee was sent to invite Lee to appear before the Convention. He was ushered into the hall and welcomed by the presiding officer, Mr. Janney, who said, "Sir, we have expressed our convictions that you are at this time among the living citizens of Virginia, '*first in war.*' We pray to God most fervently that you may so conduct the operations committed to your charge, that it will soon be said of you that you are the '*first in peace,*' and when that time comes, you will have earned the still prouder distinction

of being '*first in the hearts of your countrymen.*'" It had been said of Washington that he was "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen," and truly did Mr. Janney predict that Virginia would some day honor and revere the memory of Lee as she does that of Washington.

In a little while war began in real earnest. In the middle of the summer of 1861 the Confederates defeated the Federals at Bull Run, or Manassas, Va., and the invasion of Virginia was checked. In 1862 General George B. McClellan with a strong Union army undertook to advance from Yorktown against Richmond, but found himself opposed by General Joseph E. Johnston. General Johnston was wounded and Lee was put in command of the army. After seven days' of fighting McClellan was driven back. Operations against Richmond were given up for the time being, and the South became jubilant and the North despondent. Lee marched north and defeated the Federals under General Pope at the second battle of Manassas, pushed into Maryland, and fought the battle of Antietam, or Sharpsburg, and then retired into Virginia. In December of the same year (1862), he terribly defeated Burnside at Fredericksburg, Va.

In May, 1863, Lee inflicted even a worse defeat upon General Hooker at Chancellorsville, a short distance from Fredericksburg. The battle of Chancellorsville was a costly one to the Confederates. General "Stonewall" Jackson was killed and Lee lost "his right arm," as Jackson was called. Lee then pushed into the North; crossed Maryland and entered Pennsylvania; but at Gettysburg he was stopped by the Federals under General Meade. Here was fought a three days' battle. On the last day, the Confederates under Generals Pickett, Pettigrew and Trimble made a heroic charge against the Federal center, but were compelled to withdraw. As they came back, Lee rode out to meet them. He encouraged the men and said to them: "All this has been my fault and it is I who have lost this fight. You must help me out as best

you can." He was brave in victory, but braver in defeat. He never tried to place the responsibility of the defeat upon another, but took it all upon himself.

Gettysburg was the greatest battle of the war. In that contest about 80,000 Confederate troops fought more than 90,000 Union troops who were well protected by breastworks. The Union army lost about 23,000 men, the Confederates over 25,000. No battlefield in American history was ever more hotly contested.

After his defeat, Lee started upon his retreat. The Union army, under General Meade, followed cautiously, but did not dare to attack the Confederates, who reached Virginia without any further trouble. The Northern people were dissatisfied with General Meade for not attacking Lee on his retreat from Gettysburg. President Lincoln began to look around for a general to put in Meade's place.

The city of Vicksburg was a Confederate stronghold, and as long as the Confederates held it, they could control the Mississippi River. So the North was eager to capture the city. A large army under General Grant was sent against it, and from May to July he pressed his attack with great vigor. Finally after a brave resistance the Confederates were forced to surrender the city to General Grant.

All the North now looked to Grant as the man to send against Lee, and in the spring of 1864 President Lincoln put him in command of the Union army in Virginia with instructions to attack Lee and advance upon Richmond. Grant had won a reputation for himself. He had fought in 1862 against General Albert Sidney Johnston at the battle of Pittsburg Landing, Tenn.; had captured Fort Donelson and Fort Henry in Tennessee; had pushed down the Mississippi River in 1863, and on the same day that Lee lost at Gettysburg, Grant had captured Vicksburg, Miss. In the meantime Admiral Farragut had entered the mouth of the Mississippi River and had taken New Orleans. The capture of Vicksburg by General Grant, added to the success of Admiral Farragut, cut

the Confederacy in two and opened the Mississippi River to the Federals. After other successes in Tennessee, Lincoln decided that if any man was capable of defeating Lee, it was Grant. So he called him from the West and put him in charge of the active armies of the United States.

Grant was born in 1822 in the State of Ohio. He, like Lee, was a graduate of the Military Academy at West Point, and had also served in the Mexican War. In 1853 he was made a captain in the United States Army, but soon resigned and became a farmer. Afterwards he was a clerk in his father's store in Illinois. When the war between the states broke out, he raised a company of volunteers and was made a colonel in an Illinois regiment. For service along the Mississippi River, he was rapidly promoted from colonel to brigadier general, and after the capture of Vicksburg, he was made a major general. Later, Grant was made a lieutenant general, in charge of all the Union forces. He took immediate command of the Army of the Potomac, and began the advance against Lee.

From March, 1864, until April 9, 1865, a terrible campaign was carried on between Lee and Grant. It began with the battle of the Wilderness in Spotsylvania County, Va., and ended with the surrender of Lee at Appomattox Courthouse, Va. Lee did all that could be done to prevent defeat, but Grant's army greatly outnumbered his. Sometimes Grant had more than five times as many soldiers as Lee.

During the campaign, Lee showed that he was not afraid to expose himself to the fire of the enemy. While fighting around Spotsylvania Courthouse, Lee came up to some Texas soldiers, placed himself at their head and, crying, "Hurrah for Texas," ordered the charge. The soldiers at once thought of their dear commander, and cried, "Lee to the rear." An old soldier seized the bridle of his horse and said, "General Lee, if you don't go back, we will not go forward." A little

later General Lee placed himself again in front of his troops to lead the charge; but the brave General Gordon of Georgia said to him: "These are Virginians and Georgians who have never failed. Go to the rear, General Lee." Then Gordon turned to the men and said, "Must General Lee lead this charge?" All the troops cried out: "No, no, we will drive them back if General Lee will go to the rear."

A BATTLE MAP OF THE VIRGINIA CAMPAIGNS.

Gradually Lee was pushed back from Spotsylvania Courthouse and shut up in Richmond and Petersburg. Throughout the hard winter of 1864–65, his troops suffered terribly, and often the soldiers had nothing to eat but parched corn. Confederate money was worthless. Flour was worth from two hundred to three hundred dollars a barrel; corn, forty dollars a bushel; sugar, ten dollars per pound; and calico, thirty dollars per yard.

At last, in April, 1865, his lines were so thinned out by sickness and desertion, that Lee was forced to abandon Petersburg and then Richmond. He led his army south, hoping to reach North Carolina, but Grant blocked his way. Finally, at Appomattox Courthouse, on the ninth of April, 1865, Lee decided that the time had come for him to stop further bloodshed. He sent a note to Grant requesting an interview with reference to the surrender of the army.

They met at the house of Mr. Wilmer McLean at Appomattox Courthouse.

General Fitzhugh Lee, in his "Life of Robert E. Lee," thus described the scene at the surrender: "General Lee was ushered into the room on the left of the hall as you enter, and about one o'clock was joined by General Grant, his staff, and Generals Sheridan and Ord. Grant sat at a marble-topped table in the center of the room, Lee at a small oval table near the front window. 'The contrast between the commanders,' said one who was present, 'was striking.' Grant, not yet forty-three years old, five feet eight inches tall, shoulders slightly stooped, hair and beard now brown, wearing a dark-blue flannel blouse unbottoned, showing vest beneath; ordinary topboots, trousers inside; dark-yellow thread gloves; without spurs or sword, and no marks of rank except a general's shoulder straps. Lee, fifty-eight years old, six feet tall, hair and beard silver gray; a handsome uniform of Confederate gray buttoned to the throat, with three stars on each side of the turned-down collar, fine top boots with handsome spurs, elegant gauntlets, and at his side a splendid sword. With a magnificent physique, not a pound of superfluous flesh, ruddy cheeks, bronzed by exposure, grave and dignified, he was the focus for all eyes. Generals Lee and Grant had met once, eighteen years before, when both were fighting for the same cause in Mexico—one an

GENERAL LEE.

engineer officer on the staff of Scott, the commanding general; the other a subaltern of infantry in Garland's brigade. After a pleasant reference to that event, Lee promptly drew attention to the business before them."

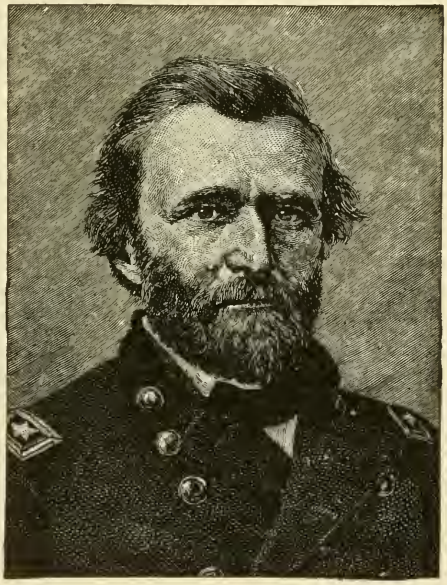
The terms of the surrender were arranged. The soldiers were to go home with the understanding that they were not again to take up arms against the United States. Grant acted the part of a gentleman towards Lee. He furnished Lee's half-starved troops with provisions, and afterwards recommended to the United States government that Lee be pardoned and restored to citizenship. Grant did not take Lee's sword. In speaking of Grant's behavior, Lee afterwards said: "No man could have behaved better than General Grant did under the circumstances."

It was a sad and touching scene when Lee rode back to his troops after he had surrendered. They pressed around him, eager to touch his person or his horse, and they shed tears of sorrow and anguish. He turned to his men and said: "Men, we have fought through the war together; I have done my best for you; my heart is too full to say more." The next day he issued a farewell address to the Army of Northern Virginia, and closed it with these words: "By the terms of agreement, officers and men can return to their homes and remain there until exchanged. You will take with you the satisfaction that proceeds from the consciousness of duty well performed, and I earnestly pray that a merciful God will extend to you his blessing and protection. With an unceasing admiration of your constancy and devotion to your country, and the grateful remembrance of your kind and generous consideration of myself, I bid you an affectionate farewell."

Lee now retired to private life, but was soon afterward made president of Washington College at Lexington, Va., now Washington and Lee University. For five years he served the insti-

tution faithfully; and, though he was offered many positions which would have paid him large sums of money, he refused them all.

He died October the twelfth, 1870. During his last illness his thoughts turned to the battle field, and in death's delirium he was heard to say, "Tell Hill he must come up." He was buried in the chapel of Washington and Lee University.



GENERAL GRANT.

Lee was conscientious and faithful, and "duty" was his great watchword. "He was a foe without hate and a friend without treachery, a soldier without cruelty and a victim without murmuring. He was a public officer without vice, a private citizen without wrong, a neighbor without reproach, a Christian without hypocrisy and a man without guilt." His virtues will live forever, and his character will be imitated by generations yet unborn.

His great opponent, General Grant, outlived him fifteen years. One year before Lee died, Grant became President of the United States and served for two terms. As President he showed something of the same spirit towards the South that he did towards Lee, and during his administration a better feeling came to exist between the South and the North.

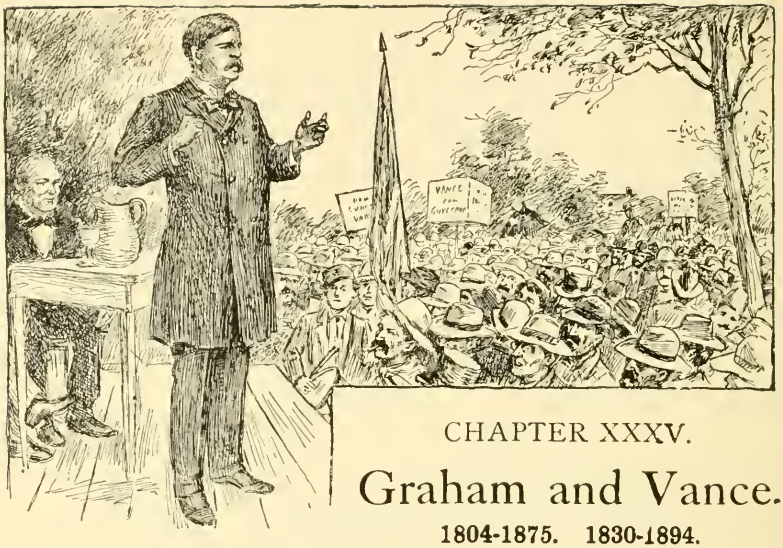
All the Southern states were finally re-admitted into the Union and they are as loyal to the United States government as are the Northern states. The Southern people love our great country, and are willing to lay down their lives for it, though they still believe that in seceding from the Union they were not "rebels," but were only exercising a right which the founders of our government undoubtedly intended for the states to have. When Grant died in 1885, the Southerners, along with the people of the North, mourned his death, believing that he was an honorable and true man. In 1897 his body was placed in a magnificent tomb which had been built to his memory in New York City. The whole of the United States, the South as well as the North, took part in the ceremonies held on that occasion, and no man was more conspicuous in that great funeral procession than Robert E. Lee's nephew, General Fitzhugh Lee.

Geography Study. *Map of Middle Atlantic States.* Locate Richmond, Fredericksburg, Spotsylvania Courthouse, Petersburg, Manassas, Appomattox Courthouse and Yorktown (Va.); Sharpsburg or Antietam (Md.) and Gettysburg (Pa.). How far is it from Richmond to Washington? *Map of the Southern States.* Locate Pittsburg Landing, Fort Donelson, Fort Henry, Nashville and Chickamauga (Tenn.); Charleston (S. C.); Atlanta and Savannah (Ga.); New Orleans (La.) and Vicksburg (Miss.).

Review Questions. Tell of the attack on Fort Sumter. Name some of the best-known Southern and Northern generals. Tell of Lee's early life and education. What kind of cadet was he at West Point? Tell of his service in the United States Army. Tell of John Brown. Why did Lee leave the service of the United States? Give the main battles in which Lee fought. Give some account of Grant's life. What had he done along the Mississippi River? Tell of the campaign between Lee and Grant. Describe the two men at Appomattox Courthouse. Tell

of Lee's farewell to his army. Tell of Grant's treatment of Lee. How did Lee spend the rest of his life? What kind of man was Lee? Tell of Grant's life after the war.

CARING FOR THE WOUNDED.



CHAPTER XXXV.

Graham and Vance.

1804-1875. 1830-1894.

WE have seen how the different views in regard to the Union which grew up in the North and in the South led to the war between the states.

At the beginning of this war there were two classes of statesmen in the South. On the one side were those who proclaimed the doctrines of state-rights and secession. By state-rights they meant that Congress had no authority to pass any law unless that right was *expressly granted* by the Constitution; and that the powers and rights not specifically granted to the Federal government belonged to the several states. These men held that as the territories of the United States belonged to all the states equally, they should be managed in the interest of all. So when it was proposed to forbid slavery in certain territories they declared such a proposition unconstitutional, because the Constitution did not give Congress the power to regulate slavery. Such a measure, they said, was a denial of the rights of Southern slave-holders.

The state-rights men were unwilling to agree to any compromise measures and declared that if the Southern states could not get their rights in the Union they would secede.

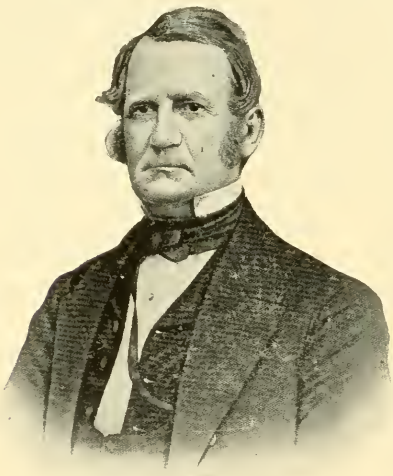
But in the South there was another class of statesmen who stood with Henry Clay and supported the great compromise measures which he proposed, as we have seen, to save the Union. They believed that Congress had power to pass any law it chose unless such authority was *expressly forbidden* by the Constitution. They also declared that though each state had a right to manage its own affairs without the interference of Congress, yet no state had a constitutional right to secede from the Union. Their aim was to preserve the Union without destroying the rights of the states. Among the most eminent of these Southern leaders was William A. Graham.

Graham was born in Lincoln County, North Carolina, in 1804. His early education was received at private schools and academies, for that was before the days of public schools in the South. He was a good student. One of his schoolmates tells us that Graham was the only boy he ever knew who would spend his Saturdays reviewing the lessons of the previous week. At sixteen he entered the University of North Carolina, and in 1824 was graduated with the highest honors.

Leaving the University, Graham studied law, was admitted to the bar, and in 1833 began his public career. During the next forty years he served his state and nation as legislator, United States senator, governor, secretary of the navy, Confederate States senator, and delegate to the North Carolina Constitutional Convention in 1861.

In the state legislature he became the leader of the progressive statesmen who advocated public schools, internal improvements, and railroads. In 1844, after he had served two years in

the United States Senate, he was elected governor of North Carolina and two years later was re-elected. During these four years he gave strong support to the same measures which he had advocated in the legislature. Largely through his efforts a school for the deaf and dumb and an asylum for the insane were established.



WILLIAM A. GRAHAM.

While he was governor, the United States declared war with Mexico and the President called upon each state to furnish its share of troops. Though Governor Graham disapproved of the war, he regarded it as the duty of all patriotic citizens to support the President; and he did so with such success that in North Carolina three times the required number of volunteers offered their services to the government.

In 1840, while he was Speaker of the House of Commons, Graham was elected to the United States Senate. Though only thirty-six years old and one of the youngest members of the Senate, he was soon recognized as one of the ablest statesmen in the Union. He opposed the doctrines of Calhoun and generally voted with Clay.

But it was chiefly Graham's services as secretary of the navy that entitle him to a place among the "Makers of American History." His work as senator and governor had made him one of the leaders of the Southern Whigs. In 1849, President Taylor offered to appoint him United States Minister either to Spain or

to Russia, but he declined to accept either place. The next year President Fillmore appointed him as secretary of the navy.

In this position, he sent out exploring expeditions and published charts and surveys of seas then but little known, which greatly advanced the knowledge of geography and navigation. One of these expeditions explored the Amazon river, thus giving to the world much new information about that mighty stream and about the continent of South America.

Under Graham the navy was reorganized, untrained officers were removed, and the Naval Academy was greatly improved. He also despatched a war vessel to Europe to bring to the United States the famous Hungarian patriot, Louis Kossuth, whose struggles and sacrifices for liberty in his native land had won the admiration of the American people. But Graham's greatest service was in opening Japan to the trade of the world.

At that time Japan was only a half-civilized nation, and would not permit foreign people even to enter her ports. England, Russia, and other European countries had tried to make treaties with her and had failed. But about the year 1850 several events occurred that made it very important for the United States to have a treaty with Japan. So Secretary Graham planned to send an expedition to that country. After discussing his plan with Commodore Matthew C. Perry, a distinguished naval officer, Graham laid it before the President and his cabinet, pointed out its advantages, and received their approval.

Perry was placed in command of the expedition. He sailed in November, 1852, carrying, sealed in a costly gold box, a letter from the President of the United States to the Emperor of Japan. His fleet arrived at the port of Uraga, in the Bay of Yedo, in July, 1853. The sight of the strange ships threw the whole city into an uproar; the people were frightened out of their wits. Signal

guns were fired and soldiers were called out. Junks and all sorts of boats surrounded Perry's vessels and warned him that foreigners were not allowed in Japan. Perry replied by sending the President's letter to the Emperor, saying that he would then sail away but would return the next spring for an answer.

So in the spring of 1854 he returned to Japan and received the Emperor's answer. It was very friendly, and gave the Emperor's consent to the making of a treaty with the United States. Japanese officers were appointed to meet Commodore Perry; and after many compliments, banquets, and exchanges of presents, all carried on with much ceremony, they agreed upon the terms of a treaty. By it the two countries promised peace and friendship to each other, American vessels were to be admitted to Japanese ports for coal and other supplies, sailors shipwrecked on each other's coast were to be cared for, and the merchants of the two countries were to be permitted to trade with each other.

Perry at once despatched a ship to carry the treaty to the United States. In the meantime Graham had resigned as secretary of the navy, and James C. Dobbin, also of North Carolina, now filled the place. Under him the work which Graham had begun was completed. The treaty was signed and adopted by the United States, and other nations soon followed her example.

The United States never made a more important treaty with a foreign nation. It opened the trade of Japan to other countries, and started her on that wonderful career of modern civilization which has made her one of the great powers of the world. This treaty was chiefly the work of Secretary Graham and Commodore Perry.

In 1852, Graham resigned from the Cabinet because he had been nominated by the Whig Party for Vice-President of the United States. The Whigs lost the election and during the next few years Graham took no further part in national affairs.

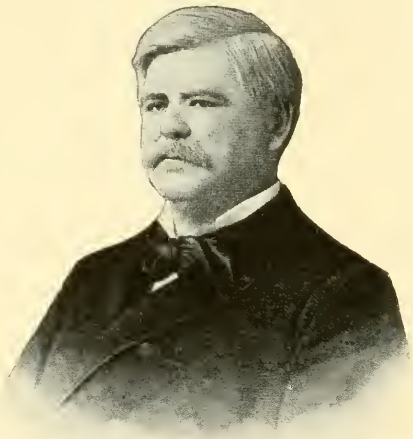
During these years the dispute between the North and the South grew more and more bitter. We have already seen how, in 1860, the Republican Party elected Lincoln President of the United States, and how, soon after his election, seven Southern states seceded and formed the Confederate States. Many men, North and South, in their desire to save the Union, organized a new party, called the Constitutional Union Party, which opposed both the election of Lincoln and the secession of the Southern states. One of the leaders of this new party was William A. Graham, who worked hard and spoke eloquently for the Union. He declared that he "cherished an ardent affection for the Union, and a feeling of veneration for the Constitution," and "disapproved the counsels of those who sought the overthrow of the government."

Lincoln was elected, but Graham did not think his election justified the secession of any state, so he urged North Carolina to remain in the Union. An election was held in February, 1861, to decide whether a convention to discuss secession should be called. Graham led the fight against this convention and it was defeated by a small majority.

But when Lincoln called on North Carolina for troops to invade the other Southern states, Graham declared that if North Carolina must fight, she should fight for, not against, the South. So he favored the calling of a convention, to meet at Raleigh, May 20, 1861. He was elected a member and voted for the ordinance of secession which was adopted the day the convention met.

North Carolina then joined the Confederate States. In February, 1864, Graham was elected to the Confederate States Senate, and was immediately chosen President *pro tem.* He strongly opposed all measures intended to put aside the civil authority and to establish military rule in the South. Realizing that the Con-

federate States could never win their independence, he urged President Davis to make the best peace possible with the United States, and to prevent the shedding of any more blood. But Davis, saying that the Constitution gave him no power to make peace except upon the basis of independence, declined. However, he suggested that if any state desired to do so, it could make peace for itself separately. Graham then went to Raleigh to urge the governor of North Carolina to make peace for that state alone, and thus end the war. But the governor did not agree with Graham and refused to follow his advice. He said that North Carolina had pledged her faith to the other Southern states and that she must stand or fall with them.



ZEBULON B. VANCE.

The governor was a young man who had been only thirty-two years old when elected to that office—Zebulon Baird Vance. He was born in Buncombe County, in 1830; had studied law at the University, and had served in both the state legislature and the national Congress. Like Graham he was a Whig and a strong Union man, but unlike Graham he believed that a state had a right to secede, though he did not think it wise to exercise that right in 1860.

So in 1860 and the early part of 1861, there was no more eloquent opponent of secession than young Vance. He spoke for the Union in Congress, at many places in North Carolina, and in other states. Great crowds always came to hear him. At a

great Union meeting in Salisbury, Graham, Morehead, Badger, and other distinguished men spoke. But the most popular of all the orators was Zeb Vance, that "Marvellous Mountain Boy," as the people called him. For two hours five thousand people stood in a cold rain listening to his speech for the Union. When one of Badger's friends complimented the latter on his speech, Badger replied: "You ought to have heard young Vance. He is the greatest stump speaker that ever was—the greatest that ever was!"

But though he loved the Union, Vance did not think the United States government had any right to send soldiers into a seceded state to force it back into the Union. One day in April, 1861, while he was speaking for the Union to a large crowd, a telegram was brought saying that Fort Sumter had been fired upon and that Lincoln had called for troops to invade South Carolina. Urging the people to stand by the South, Vance came down from the platform, hurried home, organized a company which he called the "Rough and Ready Guard," and entered the Confederate army. His company elected him captain, and soon afterwards he was promoted to the rank of colonel. He led his regiment bravely and skillfully in the hard-fought battle of New Bern, in March, 1862, and in many of the great battles around Richmond.

Vance remained in the army but little more than a year, for in 1862 he was elected governor of North Carolina, and two years later was re-elected. As governor he was noted for his efforts to keep North Carolina's regiments in the Confederate army full, to clothe and feed the soldiers, to care for Union prisoners, and to uphold the civil government against military power.

To his exertions is largely due the fact that North Carolina had more soldiers in the Confederate armies than she had voters. In all she sent seventy-three regiments, which numbered 125,000 men. Of these more than 40,000 were either killed or wounded.

Nothing so endeared Vance in the hearts of his people as his efforts to feed and clothe the North Carolina troops. He fitted out swift little steamers, notably the *Advance*, which ran the blockade at Wilmington and brought supplies from the West Indies. In this way he was able to send to the Confederate army thousands of arms, rounds of ammunition, overcoats, blankets, shoes, uniforms, and large quantities of medicines and hospital stores. Most of these were for North Carolina soldiers, but large quantities were also given to the soldiers of other states. The soldiers called him "The Great War Governor."

Vance was strongly opposed to putting the South under military rule. He determined that, in spite of the war, civil liberty in North Carolina should be upheld. When Confederate officers arrested some citizens of the state, Vance demanded that they be released, and President Davis ordered that they be set at liberty.

In April, 1865, after Lee's surrender, a Union army under General Sherman marched upon Raleigh. As the war was practically at an end, Vance decided to save the Capitol and other public buildings by surrendering Raleigh to Sherman. So he sent Graham and David L. Swain, President of the University, to see General Sherman and to arrange for the surrender. General Sherman promised to protect the city. This wise action of Governor Vance probably saved Raleigh from being burned.

On his thirty-fifth birthday, Vance was arrested by a troop of Union soldiers, taken to Washington, and thrown into prison. If his enemies expected to find something in his career for which they could have him punished, they were disappointed. When Edwin M. Stanton, secretary of war, found how much Vance had done to relieve the suffering of Union soldiers in prison, he said to him: "Upon your record you stand acquitted. You are at liberty to go where you will." Vance was then permitted to return home.

After the war came the evil days of reconstruction, when carpet-baggers, scalawags and negroes got control of the South. In those terrible days the people of North Carolina looked to Graham and Vance as leaders. Their calm self-control and wise counsel kept the people from making any rash outbreaks, and finally led to the overthrow of the reconstruction government.

The people elected both of them to important offices, but as they had not been pardoned by the United States government they were not allowed to hold office. In 1865, Graham was chosen United States Senator, but the Senate would not permit him to take his seat. In 1868, those opposed to the Republican Party wished to nominate Vance for governor, but he declined because he had not received his pardon. Two years later he was elected to the United States Senate, but, like Graham, was refused admittance.

All this time Graham and Vance were working together to organize a new party to oppose the Republicans. This new party afterwards became the Democratic Party. After a hard fight the Democrats won the North Carolina legislature. They then charged Governor Holden with high crimes against the state, impeached him, and removed him from office. With the removal of the governor and with the whites in control of the legislature, quiet soon prevailed in the state.

On account of Graham's deep interest in education, George Peabody, the great philanthropist, selected him as one of the trustees of a large fund which he gave to be used for education in the South. By aid of this fund hundreds of public schools were established in the Southern states and thousands of children were enabled to receive a good education. Graham was very active in that work which was the beginning of the South's great educational progress.

A few years later, Virginia asked him to represent her in a dispute which she had with Maryland about their boundary line. He accepted the trust, and while attending to his duties at Saratoga Springs, New York, in August, 1875, he died. His services to the United States should never be forgotten.

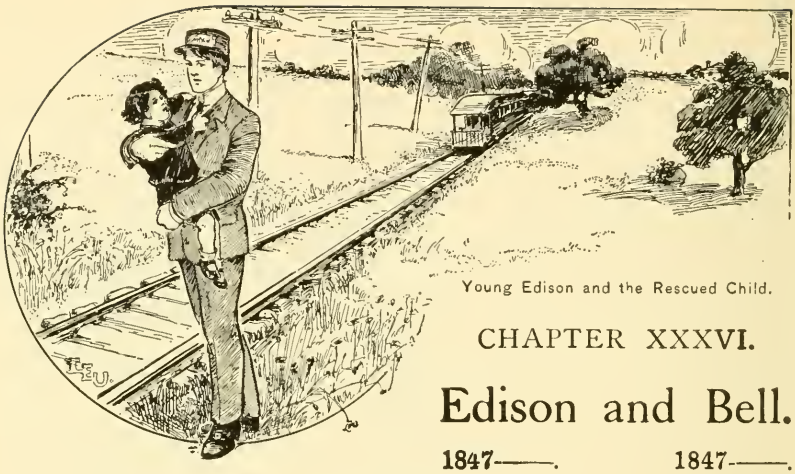
THE STATUE OF GOVERNOR VANCE.

The year following Graham's death, Vance was chosen governor of North Carolina for the third time. His efforts as governor were devoted to the improvement of the public schools, the establishment of charitable institutions, and the development of the natural resources of the state. He was always ready to aid any movement for progress, and his inspiring speeches did much to keep up the spirits of the Southern people during their dark days. He became known as one of the greatest orators in the Union.

While serving his third term as governor, Vance was elected to the United States Senate; he was admitted and remained fifteen years. At that time much bitterness and ill feeling existed between the North and the South. Vance worked hard in the Senate to

remove this feeling and to restore friendship between the two sections. He urged the North to trust the South, and he urged the South to be loyal to their country. The people of both sections heard him gladly. All knew that, though he had served the South faithfully to the last, yet when the war was over he became a true and loyal American citizen. Vance studied closely the great public questions of the day and, for many years, was the leader of his party in the Senate. When he rose to speak, the whole country was eager to learn what he had to say, for he was ranked among the great orators and statesmen of the Union.

On account of his hard work in the Senate, he lost the sight of one eye and was greatly impaired in health. He traveled in this country and in Europe in search of health and rest. But he never fully recovered, and in 1894 the people of North Carolina received the sad news that their great Senator was dead. Throughout the Union people joined in the sorrow of North Carolina, for all felt that in his death the country had lost the services of a great American statesman.



Young Edison and the Rescued Child.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Edison and Bell.

1847——. 1847——.

SINCE the War of Secession, our country has prospered greatly. At the close of the war, there were thirty-six states, and there are now forty five.* In 1867 we bought from Russia Alaska, which is in the northwestern part of North America and which was our only territory not included within the present boundry of the United States.

Since the war, the population of the United States has more than doubled. It has not been a period of great political change or of war, but a period of wonderful development in industries, commerce and inventions. Morse applied electricity to telegraphy, and since that day, there have been many inventions through the application of electricity. They are too numerous to mention, but two stand out because of their great usefulness: the incandescent electric light and the telephone. Thomas Alva

* The states admitted from 1845 to 1865 were Iowa (1846), Wisconsin (1848), California (1850), Minnesota (1858), Oregon (1859), Kansas (1861), West Virginia (1863) and Nevada (1864). The nine states admitted since the war are Nebraska (1867), Colorado (1876), North Dakota (1889), South Dakota (1889), Montana (1889), Washington (1889), Idaho (1890), Wyoming (1890) and Utah (1896). Up to the time of the Spanish-American war the territories within the United States were New Mexico, Arizona, Indian Territory and Oklahoma.

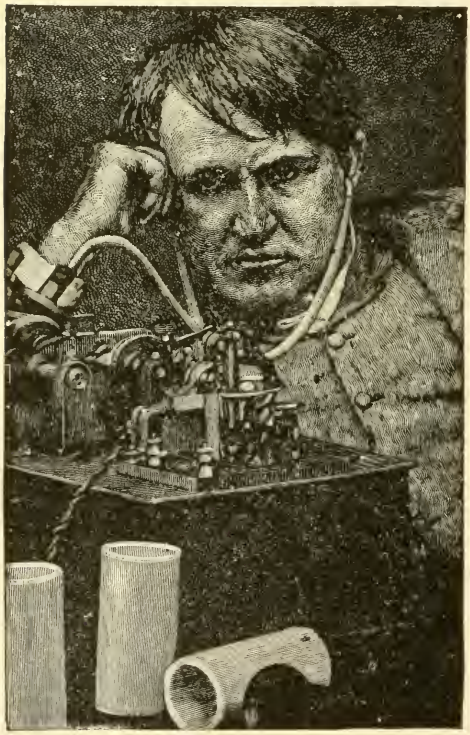
Edison perfected the incandescent light and Alexander Graham Bell gave us the telephone.

Edison was born in 1847 at the small town of Milan, Erie County, Ohio, but when he was a mere boy his father moved to Port Huron, Michigan. Edison went regularly to school only two months in his life, but his mother, who had been a school teacher, taught him a great deal, and caused him to become intensely fond of reading. When he was only ten years old, he read Hume's "History of England" and Gibbons's "Fall and Decline of the Roman Empire."

At the age of twelve, he became a newsboy on a passenger train, and sold papers, books, candies, etc.; but during his spare moments he would read, and was constantly experimenting. In the corner of the baggage car where he stored his wares, he had a small chemical laboratory and a printing press. He received one day, as a gift from Mr. W. F. Story of *The Detroit Free Press*, three hundred pounds of old type thrown out as useless. With his old hand press he began printing a paper of his own called, from the railroad, *The Grand Trunk Herald*, of which he sold several hundred copies a week, the employees of the railroad being his best customers. He cared little for printing, however, and soon turned his attention to telegraphy.

At the beginning of the War of Secession, he was still running as a newsboy on the train from Detroit to Port Huron. He found it very difficult to make a living, and he never knew exactly how many papers to carry on the route. The daily paper which he sold was *The Detroit Free Press*. Edison began to wonder how he might learn the news beforehand so that he might know how many papers to buy. He made a friend of one of the printers at the newspaper office and from him learned daily the most important items of news. By studying the headlines in the first proof, Edison was able to make some estimate of the papers needed. One day his friend showed him the

proof slip which gave the first report of the great battle of Pittsburg Landing, or Shiloh, and it gave the number of killed and wounded as sixty thousand men. Young Edison saw that here was an opportunity for him to sell papers. He went at once to the telegraph office in Detroit and made a bargain with the operator. The operator promised to wire to each of the principal stations on the route the news of the great battle, and for this service Edison promised him current literature for six months.



Copyright by W. K. L. Dickson.

THOMAS A. EDISON.

Then the little boy had trouble to get his papers. He usually carried two hundred, but now he wanted fifteen hundred. The clerk refused to sell him this number of papers on credit, so he braced himself up, marched upstairs to the office of Mr. Story, the proprietor, and told him that he wanted fifteen hundred copies of the paper on credit. Mr. Story was pleased with the manliness of young Edison, and wrote him an order for the papers, and away the boy started on his route with fifteen hundred

copies of the *Free Press*. When he got to the first station, there was a great crowd on the platform ready to buy papers. He sold about two hundred at five cents apiece. When he reached the next station, he saw another great crowd waiting and he raised the price of his papers, selling them at ten cents each. When he reached Port Huron, he took such papers as he had left and hired a wagon and went through the streets crying his papers at a quarter of a dollar. He passed a church full of worshippers, and when he yelled out the news of the great battle, the whole crowd, including the preacher, hurried out of the church and bought his papers. Thus he sold out the remainder of his papers at twenty-five cents a copy.

Young Edison saw that telegraphy was a great thing, as it had enabled him to sell his newspapers; and he determined to be an operator, if he could get a chance. The opportunity came to him because of a brave and courageous deed. At one of the stations on the railroad between Port Huron and Detroit, Edison saw a young child playing on the track. A train was coming up rapidly, but Edison rushed boldly upon the track and pulled the child off just as the train dashed by. The child's father was the station master, and he was so grateful that he asked Edison to come to live with him and learn telegraphy. In a little while Edison became a fine operator and made several improvements in the telegraph instrument then in use. Edison soon secured a position as operator. At this time, when a message was sent from New Orleans to New York, it had to be taken at Memphis and then re-sent to Louisville, where it was again taken and telegraphed to another center, then to another, and finally to New York. This took time and delayed the message, and moreover it often caused mistakes to be made. Edison invented a little "automatic repeater," which was placed at these centers, and by this means New Orleans and New York were directly connected.

Edison was now promised a position in the telegraph office at Boston. When he reached the office on a cold, wet day with a long duster clinging to his legs, all the young operators laughed at him, but Edison did not care. The chief operator looked at him and asked him what he wanted. Edison explained the object of his visit, and was told to take a seat. In a little while the New York office called up Boston and the chief operator told Edison to take the message. Edison sat down for four and a half hours. Messages poured in and he wrote them out rapidly and clearly. The New York operator sent the messages faster and faster, but still Edison took them down and never wired back that the messages were sent too rapidly. At the end of the four and a half hours, the New York operator telegraphed, "Hello!" "Hello, yourself!" was Edison's reply. "Who are you?" "Tom Edison." "You are the first man in the country," telegraphed the New Yorker, "that could ever take me at my fastest, and the only one that could ever sit at the other end of my wire for more than two and a half hours. I am proud to know you."

Shortly after this Edison went to New York and there established himself as an electrical expert. He so perfected the telegraph that now many messages can be sent at the same time over the same wire, and thus the expense of many wires is saved. But the first invention from which Edison received any considerable sum of money was the improved "ticker" for stock brokers' offices. These tickers were electrical machines for recording stock quotations.

Mr. Edison induced several New York capitalists to enter into a contract with him whereby he might have the means to try to perfect the incandescent electric light. They were to pay the expenses, and if he should succeed in inventing a successful light, they were to share in the profits. He then moved to Menlo Park, N. J., a little station on the Pennsylvania Road

about twenty-five miles from Newark, N. J. Here he built a laboratory and a shop, and went to work. About the first of January, 1879, it was announced that Edison had solved the problem of electric lights. At once gas stock fell on the market and everybody was interested in the new light.

Edison had eighty lights in Menlo Park, and suddenly,

Copyright, 1903, by the Detroit Photographic Co.

AN ELECTRICAL DISPLAY.

after everything had gone well for about a month, they went out. Edison was terribly disheartened, but he is a man who never gives up. His success has been due to "persistency, more persistency, still more persistency." For five days he remained day and night in his laboratory, sleeping only a few hours at a time. The strain was too great for him, and he was at last forced to take to his bed. The world declared that the electric light was

a failure. A prominent professor of physics at one of our best known colleges, in a newspaper article, declared that the electric light could never be perfected. But Edison's reliance in himself and in the final success of the electric light is shown by a remark which he made to a friend in speaking of this professor: "I will make a statue of that man, and I will illuminate it brilliantly with Edison lamps and inscribe it, 'This is the man who said that the Edison lamp would not burn.'" After much hard work Edison discovered why his lamps did not burn; the air was not sufficiently exhausted from the burners.

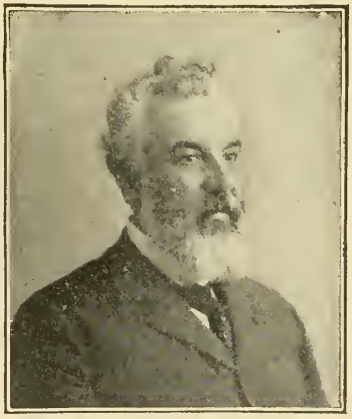
The Edison light has been a great success and it has been a great blessing. Many others of his inventions might be mentioned, but it is sufficient to say that he was the first to construct an electric railway, and invented "the microphone, for magnifying sound, so that a very low sound can be plainly heard at some distance; the megaphone, for long-distance speaking; the phonograph, for recording sound and repeating it; the mimeograph, for making many copies from one writing; the kinetoscope, for reproducing views of bodies in action; the phonokinetoscope, adding sound to sight, so that one may see and hear a play or an opera which has previously taken place." Because of such wonderful inventions, he is sometimes called "The Wizard."

His inventions have brought him in a large income, and he now has a fine home and a magnificent laboratory, where he is constantly experimenting. Edison is still a strong and healthy man, and we may reasonably hope that he has years of activity before him and that he may give us many more wonderful inventions.

Since the invention of the telegraph by Morse, many scientists have experimented with electricity in the hope of finding a way to convey sound. It was Alexander Graham Bell who discovered a successful way, and invented the tel-

ephone. He was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1847. He moved to this country in 1872 and became well known in Boston because of his success in the teaching of the deaf and dumb. He first began to study the transmission of sound by electricity when he was conducting some experiments with the hope of making sound vibrations visible to the eye and of thus teaching the deaf and dumb.

For some years Bell was an instructor in Monroe's School of Oratory in Boston. One of his pupils says that his whole manner was earnest and enthusiastic. He rarely had any money and was without friends. On one occasion he had an attack of rheumatism and his hospital fees had to be paid by his employer.



ALEXANDER GRAHAM BELL.

While he was experimenting with the vibrations of sound, he unexpectedly discovered how, by means of electricity, sound may be conveyed along a wire from one point to another. In January, 1876, he gave some demonstrations to his pupils in the Monroe school. He had a wire brought from the cellar of the house to his room on the fourth floor, and by this means singing in the cellar was heard in his room. In February, 1876, Bell took out a patent, and at the Centennial Exposition in Philadelphia the telephone was exhibited. At the time, it was spoken of as "perhaps the greatest marvel hitherto achieved by the electric telegraph."

In a few years the telephone began to be widely used, and now in all our cities much business is conducted over it, and the people of the country by means of it can talk to their city friends. Every

year some new improvement is made, and now a gentleman in New York can talk over a long-distance telephone with his sweetheart in Chicago.

In 1882 Bell was made a member of the Legion of Honor by the French government. His invention has made him very wealthy and he receives more than a million dollars a year from the use of his telephones. He resides in Washington City, and is still at work experimenting with electricity in its connection with sound vibrations.

America gave the world, through Fulton, the first successful steamboat; through Morse, the first electric telegraph; through McCormick, the first reaper; through Edison, the perfected electric lights, and through Bell, the telephone. Well may she be proud of these five inventors, and well may little Scotland boast of her sons in America, for these five men were of Scotch ancestry.

Geography Study. *Map of the United States.* Find Iowa, Wisconsin, California, Minnesota, Oregon, Kansas, West Virginia, Nevada, Nebraska, Colorado, North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, Washington, Idaho, Wyoming, Utah, Oklahoma, Arizona, New Mexico and Indian Territory. Locate Port Huron and Detroit (Mich.); Newark (N. J.); Louisville (Ky.) and Memphis (Tenn.).

Review Questions. Name the states admitted since 1845. How did we get Alaska? Tell of the development of the United States since the Civil War. Tell of Edison's boyhood and experience as a newspaper boy. How did he come to study telegraphy? Tell of his experience in the Boston telegraph office. Tell of his experiments with telegraphy. Give an account of his work on the incandescent electric light. Name some of his chief inventions. Give an account of Bell. When was the first telephone exhibited? What income does Bell get from his telephones? Name five great inventors. What were their chief inventions?

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Makers of the New Nation.

With the year 1876 closed the first century of the independence of the United States. From a band of thirteen weak, struggling colonies along the Atlantic coast, there had grown a mighty nation of thirty-eight powerful states, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The population had increased from about 3,000,000 to nearly 50,000,000; and the increase in wealth had been even greater than the increase in population. Throughout the country peace reigned, and the people were busy, prosperous and happy.

The whole nation was ready to join heartily in celebrating its one hundredth birthday. A great exposition, lasting six months, was held at Philadelphia, and all the people of the earth were invited to take part in it. In this way America collected a great exhibit of inventions, of the works of art, of science and of literature, and of all the other things that illustrated her power, prosperity and intelligence.

Every year thousands of people from the Old World land on our shores in search of new homes. Great states and cities have grown up across the Mississippi and along the Pacific coast. Ten new states have been added to the Union, making a total of forty-eight. Between the Atlantic and Pacific there is now no more territory within our borders from which new states can be created.

But the growth of our country has not stopped at either the Pacific or the Atlantic coast. Far out in the Pacific Ocean, two thousand miles from San Francisco, lie the Hawaiian Islands, and more than eight thousand miles away, on the other side of

the globe, are the Philippine Islands. These, too, have been added to our country, while off our Atlantic coast lies the island of Porto Rico, now a part of the United States.

Among the "Makers of American History" must be counted the men who have added these important possessions to the United States. Chief among them were William McKinley, who was President when these colonies were annexed; George Dewey, the naval commander who wrested the Philippines from Spain; and William T. Sampson and Winfield S. Schley, who destroyed the Spanish fleet in the Atlantic and enabled our army to drive the Spaniards out of Cuba and Porto Rico.

WILLIAM M'KINLEY.

On account of the territory added to the United States during his administration, William McKinley has been called the "Augmentor of the State." He was born in Ohio in 1827. During the war between the states he served in the Union army. By his bravery and devotion to duty he rose to the rank of major. In 1876 he was elected to Congress; there he served fourteen years, and became the leader of his party in the House of Representatives. He was an eloquent speaker, an able debater and a genial, kindly man, and he soon won the admiration, respect and confidence of the people of the United States.

In 1896 Mr. McKinley was elected President of the United States. It was during his administration that the United States acquired Hawaii, the Philippines, and Porto Rico. In 1893 the people of Hawaii rebelled against their queen; the next year they established a republic. They were eager to be annexed to the United States, but for several years our government refused to make a treaty with them. President McKinley favored such a treaty, and in

1898 he persuaded Congress to pass a resolution which annexed the Islands to the United States.

The most important event of McKinley's administration was the war with Spain, and it is necessary for us to gain a clear understanding of the causes that led to it. At one time, owing to the discoveries of Columbus and other Spanish navigators, Spain owned vast possessions in North America and South America. But one by one her colonies had rebelled and won their independence. Finally Cuba and Porto Rico were the only colonies in the New World that belonged to Spain. More than once the Cubans had risen in rebellion and sought help from the United States. But the United States had always refused to take a hand in their struggles, and each time Spain succeeded in subduing them.

In 1895, the year before McKinley became President, the Cubans again rose in rebellion and declared their independence. Spain conducted the war with such great cruelty that the commander of her army, General Weyler, became known as the "Spanish Butcher." Unable to conquer the rebels in open battle, he forced the people to leave their farms and to crowd into the towns. They were not allowed to cultivate their fields, nor were they supplied with food by the Spaniards. Weyler hoped in this way to starve the people into submission. Great numbers of them actually perished from hunger and from disease.

GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE.

In 1896 President Cleveland appointed General Fitzhugh Lee, of Virginia, consul general of the United States to Cuba. His residence was at Havana. One of his most important duties was to send reports to the United States of events in the island. When the people of the United States learned of the cruelties of the Spanish

soldiers, a great cry went up throughout the land for war with Spain. But President McKinley loved peace and was anxious to preserve it, if possible. Soon after he became President riots broke out in Havana which endangered the lives and property of Americans in that city. So in January, 1898, President McKinley sent the United States battleship *Maine* to Havana to protect American interests.

On the night of February 15, 1898, while the *Maine* was lying quietly at anchor in Havana Harbor, the city was suddenly shocked by a tremendous explosion. The news was soon sent flashing around the world that the *Maine* had been blown up and sunk, and that two hundred and sixty-six men of her crew had been killed. The people of the United States believed that Spanish officials were responsible for this act, and the demand for war grew stronger than ever. The government appointed a committee of four naval officers, with Capt. William T. Sampson as president, to find out whether the disaster was caused by an explosion within the battleship or from outside. After a careful investigation this committee reported that the *Maine* had been destroyed from the outside. Even President McKinley now saw that war with Spain must be declared. So he sent a message to Congress in which he declared that, "In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization . . . the war in Cuba must stop." (That is, the war Spain was waging against Cuba.) On April 19, 1898, Congress declared war with Spain.

At that time an American fleet, under the command of Commodore Dewey, was at Hong-Kong, China. He was ordered into action; and in a few days the name of George Dewey became famous throughout the world.

Dewey was born in Vermont, in December, 1837. As a child he was not fond of books, but loved outdoor sports. Many stories are told of his daring and skill in hunting, swimming and other adventures. When he was seventeen years old he entered the United States Naval Academy, where he was graduated in 1858,

THE U. S. BATTLESHIP "MAINE" IN HAVANA HARBOR THE DAY BEFORE HER DESTRUCTION.

fifth in his class. During the Civil War he served under Admiral Farragut, the great Union naval commander. Admiral Farragut praised Dewey highly as "a worthy and brave officer," and predicted that he would some day make a name for himself.

Admiral Farragut proved a good prophet. On April 26, 1898, Dewey received a telegram from the Secretary of the Navy: "War has commenced between the United States and Spain. Proceed at once to the Philippine Islands. Commence operations at once, particularly against the Spanish fleet. You must capture vessels or destroy." When Dewey's men heard this news they received it with cheer after cheer, for they were eager to try their strength against the Spaniards. Dewey himself needed no urging. Soon every vessel in his fleet was steaming at full speed toward Manila, the capital of the Philippines.

ADMIRAL DEWEY.

On the night of April 20, 1898, Dewey reached Manila. All the lights on the vessels were put out. As silently as possible they slipped by the forts which guarded the harbor, and anchored in Manila Bay. During the rest of the night the men slept by their guns, ready for the battle at daybreak. When the sun rose the next morning they saw before them the Spanish fleet, commanded by Admiral Montojo, and protected by the cannons of the forts on shore.

At dawn, May 1, Dewey gave the command to fire. Instantly from every throat in the American fleet arose the battle cry, "Remember the Maine." For two hours the contest raged, and then Dewey ordered a rest for breakfast. After breakfast the battle was begun again, and in little more than an hour the entire Spanish

fleet had been destroyed. Eleven of their war vessels were sunk and many of their men killed. Dewey did not lose a single ship or a single man. President McKinley immediately telegraphed to Dewey the thanks of the country for his splendid victory; Congress presented him a magnificent sword, and later promoted him to the rank of admiral. This is the highest rank in the American army, and only one other man, Dewey's old commander, Admiral Farragut, has ever enjoyed it.

ADMIRAL SCHLEY.

In the meantime important events were happening on the other side of the world. A Spanish fleet under Admiral Cervera had sailed from Spain for the West Indies. For many days nobody in the United States knew where the fleet was; many people feared that it might suddenly appear before New York or Boston or Charleston, or some other city, and lay it in ruins. For a while there was great anxiety throughout the country.

The President ordered Commodore Winfield Scott Schley, who was in command of a fleet called the "Flying Squadron," to find the Spanish fleet. This was an important mission and Commodore Schley had already had a distinguished career. He was born in Maryland in 1839. At seventeen years of age he was appointed a cadet in the United States Naval Academy (Dewey was there at the same time). He served in the United States navy during the Civil War, and after the war was an instructor in the Naval Academy.

In 1884 Schley commanded an expedition into the Arctic region to rescue a party, under A. W. Greely, that the United States government had sent to make explorations. After passing through

fourteen hundred miles of ice, Schley found Greely's party just in time to save them from starvation. When war was declared against Spain, Schley was placed in command of the "Flying Squadron," and was sent to look for Cervera's fleet. He found it in the harbor of Santiago de Cuba.

Another American fleet in Cuban waters was the North Atlantic fleet under the command of Rear-Admiral William Thomas Sampson. Sampson was a native of New York State, where he was born in 1840. He was a poor boy and when not in school was compelled to work hard to help support the family. Unlike Dewey he loved books, especially works of science, mathematics and history, and he stood high in his classes at school. In 1861 he was graduated from the United States Naval Academy at the head of his class.

ADMIRAL SAMPSON.

Like Dewey and Schley, Sampson served in the navy during the Civil War and was promoted for his skill and bravery. After the war he was an instructor in the Naval Academy. In 1898 he was appointed president of the committee which investigated the destruction of the *Maine*. In March he was given command of the North Atlantic fleet with the rank of rear-admiral; and on January 1 he joined Schley at Santiago, and took command of the two fleets.

For more than a month Sampson and Schley kept up a close watch to prevent the Spanish fleet from escaping from Santiago. The entrance to the harbor was so narrow that Lieutenant Pearson Hobson, of Alabama, proposed to shut up Cervera's fleet by sinking a vessel across the channel. All believed it to be certain death

for those who undertook the task; nevertheless Hobson and seven sailors volunteered to make the attempt. They carried a collier, the *Merrimac*, to the desired spot and sunk her. Fortunately, Hobson and his men escaped from the vessel, but they were captured and became prisoners of the Spaniards. Admiral Cervera was so pleased at their brave deed that he treated them with great kindness, and he soon exchanged them for some Spaniards who had been captured by the Americans. Hobson's plan failed, but as long as men admire daring deeds they will hold his name in remembrance.

LIEUTENANT HOBSON.

While Sampson and Schley were watching the Spanish fleet, an American army, under General William R. Shafter, was preparing to attack Santiago from the land side. On the morning of July 3, Admiral Sampson, in the *New York*, sailed away from the harbor of Santiago to meet General Shafter and talk over their plans with him. While he was away the Spanish fleet attempted to escape. At once Schley opened fire. The Spaniards returned it and a running battle followed. The American gunners fired so rapidly and so accurately that in three hours the Spanish fleet was completely destroyed. The Americans lost but one man; the Spaniards lost thousands of men, who were either killed or wounded. Admiral Cervera himself became a prisoner. The victory at Santiago was as complete as was Dewey's victory at Manila.

Sampson heard the firing and hastened back to Santiago. He arrived in time to receive the sword of Admiral Cervera. As Sampson approached, Schley signaled to him, "We have gained a great victory." Sampson immediately telegraphed to the Secretary of the Navy, "The fleet under my command offers the nation as a Fourth of July present the whole of Cervera's fleet."

The victory destroyed the naval power of Spain. Both Sampson

and Schley received the thanks of the President for their great victory. After the war friends of Schley presented him with a diamond-hilted sword. On accepting it, he said, "Let me hope, with you, that in God's Providence it may never be drawn without reason, but if it should ever be so willed that it must be, it will never be sheathed except in your greater honor." In 1899 Commodore Schley was advanced to the rank of rear-admiral.

On July 1 and 2 severe fighting occurred on land between the American and Spanish armies before Santiago. The soldiers who won fame in the fighting were General Joe Wheeler, of Alabama, a famous Confederate cavalry leader, and Colonel Theodore Roosevelt, of New York. Wheeler had fought against the United States in the war between the states. But when the war with Spain broke out, he declared that he was ready to fight for his country, and though an old man, offered his services to the President. In the war that followed, Wheeler and other ex-Confederate soldiers proved their loyalty to the Union by fighting courageously for the Stars and Stripes.

GENERAL JOSEPH WHEELER.

As soon as war was declared Roosevelt raised a regiment composed of cowboys and college men, which he called the "Rough Riders." At first he was lieutenant colonel of the regiment, but later was promoted to the rank of colonel. In the battles around Santiago, those first two days in July, Wheeler and Roosevelt greatly distinguished themselves by the daring and skill with which they led their men. Both armies lost heavily, but the Americans were victorious. The next day (July 3) Cervera's fleet was destroyed, and two weeks later (July 17) Santiago surrendered to the Americans.

Soon after this an American army under General Nelson A.

Miles landed on the Spanish island of Porto Rico, and took possession of that island also.

The war was now at an end. The two countries appointed commissioners who met in Paris and arranged a treaty of peace.

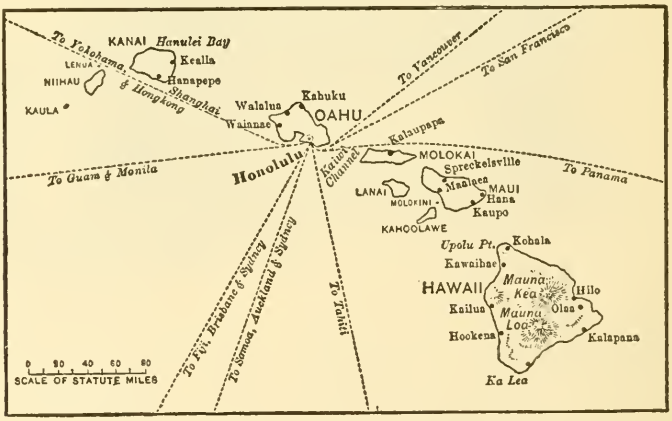
THEODORE ROOSEVELT, COLONEL OF THE "ROUGH RIDERS."

By this treaty Spain acknowledged the independence of Cuba, surrendered Porto Rico and the other islands, and for $20,000,000 ceded the Philippines to the United States. Thus the United States acquired her colonial possessions and became what is known as a "World Power."

In 1900 McKinley was again elected President, and at the same time Theodore Roosevelt was elected Vice-President. The next year (September 6) the President visited the great Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo. While shaking hands with a large crowd of people he was shot and fatally wounded by an anarchist. Eight

days later he died, and Vice-President Roosevelt became President.

On account of the annexation of the Philippines and other islands in the Pacific it became very important that the ocean route from the Atlantic to the Pacific should be made shorter and quicker. So the United States determined to dig a canal across the Isthmus of Panama large enough for the passage of the greatest ocean vessels. President Roosevelt made a treaty with the Republic of Panama by which our government was given the right to build the canal. Work was pushed forward rapidly and 1915 fixed as the date for the opening of that great waterway. Since the acquisition of the Philippines and Hawaii, American trade across the Pacific has grown in importance, and the power and influence of the United States are felt through the world.



THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS, A STATION ON COMMERCIAL ROUTES.

This influence our country is exerting in the interest of peace among the nations. The United States wishes to make war impossible in the future. Under the leadership of President William H. Taft, who succeeded President Roosevelt in 1908, treaties have been made with Great Britain and with other nations. By

these treaties these nations agree in the future to settle disputes peaceably instead of by war.

THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS.

In August 1909 Congress passed the Payne-Aldrich Tariff Bill, which reduced the duties on some classes of imports but raised them on others. In June 1910 a bill was passed establishing Postal Saving Banks. The object of this bill was to encourage habits of thrift among the American people and to provide safe places of deposit for their savings. Any individual ten years of age or over

may deposit sums not less than $1.00, and on such deposit the government will pay interest at the rate of two per cent. In 1912 the two remaining territories within the boundary of the United States, New Mexico and Arizona, were admitted as States. This act completed the Union, so that at the present time all the territory within the United States, except the District of Columbia, is now under State Government, and is divided into forty-eight States.

Copyright, 1908, by E. Chickering.

PRESIDENT TAFT.

During President Taft's administration the Parcel Post was inaugurated Through the provisions of this bill large packages may now be sent to various parts of the country through the United States mail at a less cost than by express. All sorts of goods that are not perishable may now be forwarded by mail to any address within the United States. Your Christmas turkey can be sent to you by mail as well as the letters from your friends in the country. It is not at all strange for the father of a city boy to get a good country ham by the mails, or for a country boy to receive a baseball bat and mitt from the city by the same method.

In 1912 one of the most exciting presidential campaigns ever known was conducted during the summer and autumn. President Taft and ex-President Roosevelt were opposed to each other for the Republican nomination. President Taft was renominated, and as a result of the action of the Republican Convention at Chicago the Progressive Republican Party was organized which nominated former President Roosevelt. The Democratic candidate was Woodrow Wilson, Governor of New Jersey. Mr. Wilson had been nominated on a platform which advocated the reduction of the

tariff and the federal regulation of the trusts. At the election in November Mr. Wilson was elected and succeeded Mr. Taft as President on March 4, 1913.

Woodrow Wilson was the second Democratic President to be elected since the war between the States. He was born at Staunton, Va., and was educated at the leading American Universities. He had been a brilliant teacher and for a number of years was President of Princeton University. He is the most notable example in our history of a schoolteacher being promoted to a high office.

PRESIDENT WILSON.

Many important matters of legislation have been accomplished during his first year as president. The Underwood-Simmons Tariff Bill has gone into effect and has greatly reduced the duty on nearly all articles of import. A Federal Currency Bill has been passed which allows the United States to issue bank notes and to lend money to banks in various parts of the country.

During the latter part of President Taft's administration a rebellion broke out in Mexico, when much of the fighting took place along the border between Mexico and the United States. President Taft had sent troops to the border to protect our frontier and to prevent arms and men from this country being smuggled into Mexico to aid the Mexican rebels. When President Wilson took office conditions had not improved. He refused to recognize the Dictator who had assumed the Presidency of Mexico. The President, very

consistently, refused to interfere with conditions in that country. He is an advocate of peace and desires to maintain it at any cost, save the honor of the country. After many months of discord in Mexico one of the chief Mexican leaders, Carranza, was able, to some extent, to restore order. His government was recognized by the United States. There continued, however, to be a number of Mexican leaders who would not acknowledge Carranza as the President of Mexico. Among these was one Villa, whose army pillaged in many portions of Mexico and finally invaded the town of Columbus, in New Mexico. In retaliation for this, President Wilson sent a force of American troops to subdue Villa and his followers.

One of the most trying events of the administration of President Wilson has been the European War, which broke out in August, 1914. On one side are fighting Servia, Montenegro, Russia, Belgium, France, Great Britain, and Italy, with Japan as their Asiatic ally. On the other side are Austria, Germany, Turkey, and Bulgaria. At the opening of the war many Americans were in Europe and after great difficulty, with the aid of Congress, they succeeded in returning home. The war stopped much of our trade with Europe, particularly in cotton, and for a while this caused widespread depression in business. Soon, however, many munition plants developed and we are furnishing ammunition of all sorts to England and her allies.

The people were deeply stirred when, on May 7, 1915, the Lusitania, an English passenger ship, was blown up by a torpedo, fired without warning by a German submarine. Among the lost were one hundred and fourteen Americans, of whom some were women and children. President Wilson made a firm but courteous protest that such warfare was contrary to the laws of nations and the rights of humanity. After months of negotiation Germany acknowledged its fault in the matter. In the midst of the negotiation with Germany, William Jennings Bryan, Secretary of State, resigned his position in President Wilson's Cabinet, as he was unwilling to be a party to any measures which might bring on war.

Several other important matters have come up in regard to this war, and on more than one occasion it looked as if the United States might be forced to enter the European War, but President Wilson, by his firm, yet conciliatory, policy, has been able to avoid an open break with either Germany or Great Britain.

Among the things which President Wilson has advocated has been a "policy of preparedness." He believes that the American people should have a good army and a good navy, so as to be ready to fight in case there is no other course to pursue.

Hundreds of thousands of lives have been lost in the European struggle and millions upon millions of dollars wasted and destroyed. In Mexico thousands of lives have been sacrificed and hundreds of thousands of dollars, all to no avail. Let us hope and trust that the kind Providence that has always directed the affairs of our great nation may so guide the President and his advisors that peace may soon be restored in Europe and Mexico. Whether or not the President will be able to bring about this much desired result — a World Peace — we should remember that he has accomplished many things for our country. Among them he has tried to keep us out of serious war. He has also created in the minds of the people the feeling that this is their government and that they must take an interest in it — that he is the servant of the people and is working for their interest. In other words, the President of the United States has taken the people into his confidence and is willing to trust them, and, on the other hand, the people have faith in him as a leader in time of stress.

Geography Study. *Map of the Pacific Ocean.* Find the Hawaiian Islands, the city of Honolulu, the Philippine Islands, the city of Manila, the city of Hong-Kong, China.

Map of the West Indies. Find Cuba and Porto Rico. Locate Havana and Santiago de Cuba.

Map of North America. Locate Panama. Find the route of

the Panama Canal. Trace the usual route of a vessel from New York to San Francisco. Trace the route via the Panama Canal.

Review Questions. How was the centennial of our independence celebrated? How has the country grown since 1876? Who were the leaders in the work of adding new territory? Give an account of the annexation of Hawaii. What were the causes of the Spanish-American War? Describe the destruction of the Maine and its results. Give an account of the early career of George Dewey. Repeat the message of the Secretary of the Navy to him. Tell the story of the battle of Manila. What events were occurring in the Atlantic at this time? Describe the battle of Santiago. What message did Sampson send to the Secretary of the Navy? Give an account of the fighting on land. What two American leaders won fame in these battles? Give an account of each. What were the chief results of the war? Give an account of the Panama Canal, and its importance to the United States. What is meant by a "world power"? In what way is the United States exerting her influence throughout the world?

What important bills were passed in President Taft's administration? What are the advantages of the Parcel Post? What new political party was formed in 1912? How many Democratic presidents have held office since the war between the States? Name them. What important pieces of legislation have been accomplished by the Wilson administration? Tell of the Mexican troubles. What nations are at war in Europe?

Key to Pronunciation.

a as in *hat.*	e as in *hen.*	o as in *hot.*
ā as in *cane.*	ē as in *mete.*	ō as in *rote.*
ä as in *lard.*	i as in *hit.*	ô as in *for.*
a̤ as u in *but.*	ī as in *line.*	ü German *u.*
	y as in *yer.*	

APPENDIX

STATES AND TERRITORIES OF THE UNION

	FIRST SETTLEMENT.	ADMISSION TO UNION.	AREA IN SQUARE MILES.	POPULATION CENSUS FOLLOWING ADMISSION.	POPULATION 1910.	LARGEST CITY.	NUMBER OF REPRESENTATIVES IN CONGRESS.
Alabama	On Mobile Bay, 1702	1819	52,250	127,901	2,138,093	Mobile	9
Alaska Territory	Kadiak, 1784		590,884		64,356	Nome	
Arizona	Near Tucson, 1732	1912	113,020		204,354	Tucson	
Arkansas	Arkansas Post, 1686	1836	53,850	97,574	1,574,449	Little Rock	7
California	San Diego, 1769	1850	158,360	92,597	2,377,549	San Francisco	8
Colorado	Near Denver, 1859	1876	103,925	194,327	799,024	Denver	3
Connecticut	Windsor, 1633	1788	4,990	237,946	1,114,756	New Haven	5
Delaware	Christiana, 1638	1787	2,050	59,096	202,322	Wilmington	1
District of Columbia	Washington, 1793		70		331,069	Washington	
Florida	St. Augustine, 1565	1845	58,680	87,445	752,619	Jacksonville	3
Georgia	Savannah, 1733	1788	59,475	82,548	2,609,121	Atlanta	11
Hawaii Territory	Kailua, 1820		6,449		191,909	Honolulu	
Idaho	Pioneer City, 1862	1890	84,800	84,385	325,594	Boise	1
Illinois	Kaskaskia, 1700	1818	56,650	55,211	5,638,591	Chicago	25
Indiana	Near La Fayette, 1720	1816	36,350	147,178	2,700,876	Indianapolis	13
Iowa	Dubuque, 1788	1846	56,025	192,214	2,224,771	Des Moines	11
Kansas	Leavenworth, 1854	1861	82,080	364,399	1,690,949	Kansas City	8
Kentucky	Harrodsburgh, 1774	1792	40,400	220,955	2,289,905	Louisville	11
Louisiana	Ship Island, 1699	1812	48,720	153,407	1,656,388	New Orleans	7
Maine	Pemaquid, 1630	1820	33,040	298,335	742,371	Portland	4
Maryland	St. Mary's, 1634	1788	12,210	319,728	1,295,346	Baltimore	6
Massachusetts	Plymouth, 1620	1788	8,315	475,327	3,366,416	Boston	14

Michigan	St. Mary, 1668	1837	58,915	212,267	2,810,173	Detroit	12
Minnesota	Fort Snelling, 1819	1858	83,365	172,023	2,075,708	Minneapolis	9
Mississippi	Biloxi, 1699	1817	46,810	75,448	1,797,114	Vicksburg	8
Missouri	St. Genevieve, 1700	1821	69,415	66,557	3,293,335	St. Louis	16
Montana	Bismarck City, 1862	1889	146,080	132,159	376,053	Butte	1
Nebraska	Omaha, 1854	1867	77,510	122,993	1,192,214	Omaha	6
Nevada	Genoa, 1849	1864	110,700	42,491	81,875	Reno	1
New Hampshire	Dover, 1623	1788	9,305	141,885	430,572	Manchester	2
New Jersey	Fort Nassau, 1623	1787	7,815	184,139	2,537,167	Newark	10
New Mexico	San Juan, 1598	1912	122,580		327,301	Albuquerque	
New York	Manhattan, 1613	1788	49,170	340,120	9,113,614	New York	37
North Carolina	Albemarle, 1653	1789	52,250	393,751	2,206,287	Charlotte	10
North Dakota	Pembina, 1812	1889	70,795	182,719	577,056	Fargo	2
Ohio	Marietta, 1788	1803	41,060	230,760	4,767,121	Cleveland	21
Oklahoma	Guthrie, 1889	1907	70,057		1,657,155	Oklahoma	5
Oregon	Astoria, 1811	1859	96,030	52,465	672,765	Portland	2
Pennsylvania	Chester, 1645	1787	45,215	434,373	7,665,111	Philadelphia	32
Rhode Island	Providence, 1636	1790	1,250	68,825	542,610	Providence	2
South Carolina	Charleston, 1670	1788	30,570	249,073	1,515,400	Charleston	7
South Dakota	Sioux Falls, 1856	1889	77,650	328,808	583,888	Sioux Falls	2
Tennessee	Near Blountville, 1769	1796	42,050	105,602	2,184,789	Memphis	10
Texas	Lavaca, 1686	1845	265,780	212,592	3,896,542	San Antonio	16
Utah	Salt Lake City, 1847	1896	84,970	276,749	373,351	Salt Lake City	1
Vermont	Fort Dummer, 1724	1791	9,565	154,465	355,956	Burlington	2
Virginia	Jamestown, 1607	1788	42,450	747,610	2,061,612	Richmond	10
Washington	Waiilatpu, 1836	1889	69,180	349,390	1,141,990	Seattle	3
West Virginia	Romney, 1762	1863	24,780	442,014	1,221,119	Wheeling	5
Wisconsin	Green Bay, 1669	1848	56,040	305,391	2,333,860	Milwaukee	11
Wyoming	North Pass, 1867	1890	97,890	60,705	145,965	Cheyenne	1
Total, States and Territories			3,621,840		92,228,531		Total: 391
Total, Colonial Possessions			131,804		8,871,469		
Total, United States and Possessions			3,753,644		101,100,000		

CHRONOLOGY

From the Year One Thousand

1453. Constantinople captured by the Turks.
1492. Columbus discovers San Salvador, August 12.
1497. Vasco da Gama reaches India.
John Cabot discovers North America, June.
First voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.
1507. The new world called America.
1513. Balboa discovers the Pacific Ocean.
Ponce de Leon reaches Florida.
1541. De Soto discovers the Mississippi.
1580. Sir Francis Drake completes voyage around the world.
1583. Sir Humphrey Gilbert attempts to colonize Newfoundland.
1584. English explore Virginia.
1585. Raleigh sends colony to Roanoke Island.
1587. Raleigh sends second colony to America.
1606. London and Plymouth companies formed.
1607. Settlement at Jamestown, May 13.
1609. Henry Hudson explores the Hudson River.
1615. Champlain reaches Lake Huron.
1619. First slaves brought to Virginia.
First assembly of House of Burgesses, July.
1620. Settlement at Plymouth, December 21.
1623. Dutch settle at Manhattan.
1629. Charter granted to Company of Massachusetts Bay.
1630. Settlement at Boston, August.
1634. Settlement at St. Mary's, Md., under direction of Lord Baltimore.
1635–6. Settlements at Windsor, Wethersfield, and Hartford, Conn.
1636. Settlement at Providence by Roger Williams.
1637. Pequot war.
1638. Swedes settle Delaware.
1639. Connecticut Constitution adopted.
1643. New England Union formed.
1647. Peter Stuyvesant becomes governor of New Netherland.
1653. Settlement at Albemarle, N. C.
1655. Dutch conquer New Sweden.
1663. Carolina given to eight proprietors.
1664. New Netherland conquered by the English, September.
New Jersey granted to Carteret and Berkeley.
1665. Settlement at Elizabethtown, N. J.
1670. Settlement at Charleston, S. C.

1673. Marquette and Joliet explore the Mississippi.
1674. New Jersey divided.
1675–6. King Philip's war.
1676. Bacon's rebellion.
1679. New Hampshire made a royal province.
1681. Pennsylvania granted to William Penn.
1682. Philadelphia founded.
La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi.
1684. La Salle attempts to colonize Louisiana.
1686. Sir Edmund Andros becomes governor of New England.
1687. Andros demands Connecticut charter.
1689. Restoration of Massachusetts charter.
King William's war begun.
1692. Massachusetts becomes a royal colony.
1693. William and Mary College founded.
1697. King William's war closed by treaty of Ryswick.
1699. Settlement at Biloxi, Miss.
1700. Yale College founded.

The Eighteenth, Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries.

1718. Settlement at New Orleans.
1729. North and South Carolina divided.
1733. Settlement at Savannah, February.
1738. Princeton College founded.
1748. Ohio Company formed.
1749. French take possession of Ohio Valley.
1750. First expedition of Ohio Company.
1752. Georgia becomes royal province.
1754. Battle at Fort Duquesne.
French and Indian war begun.
1755. Braddock's defeat, July.
1757. William Pitt becomes Secretary for Foreign Affairs.
1758. Battle of Ticonderoga, July.
Capture of Louisburg, July.
Capture of Fort Duquesne, November.
1759. Capture of Fort Niagara, July.
Capture of Ticonderoga, July.
Battle of the Plains of Abraham, September 13.
Surrender of Quebec to Wolfe, September 18.
1763. French and Indian war closed by treaty of Paris, February.

1765. Parliament passes the Stamp Act, March.
Patrick Henry's Resolution against the Stamp Act.
1766. Stamp Act repealed.
1767. Parliament taxes tea, etc.
1770. Boston Massacre, March 5.
1773. Boston Tea Party, December 16.
1774. First Continental Congress, September 5.
First settlement in Kentucky by Daniel Boone.
1775. Battle of Lexington and Concord, April 19.
Congress elects Washington commander-in-chief of army, June 15.
Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17.
1776. Declaration of Independence, July 4.
Battle of Long Island, August 27.
Battle of Trenton, December 26.
1777. Battle of Princeton, January 3.
Surrender of Burgoyne, October 17.
1777–8. Winter quarters at Valley Forge.
1778. Treaty of alliance with France, February 6.
British evacuate Philadelphia, June 18.
Clarke captures Kaskaskia.
British capture Savannah, December 29.
1779. Vincennes captured, February 24.
Capture of Stony Point, July 16.
1780. Clinton overruns the South.
Battle of Camden, August 16.
Arnold's treason, September.
Death of André, October 2.
Battle of King's Mountain, October 7.
1781. Battle of Cowpens, January 17.
Battle of Guilford Court-house, March 15.
Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, Va., October 19.
1783. Treaty of peace, September 3.
1787. Constitution of the United States signed, September 17.
1789. Washington inaugurated President, April 30.
1790. Rhode Island ratifies the Constitution.
1793. Washington issues neutrality proclamation.
1795. Cotton-gin invented.
1797. John Adams inaugurated President, March 4.
1799. Death of Washington, December 14.
1800. Treaty with France.
1801. Thomas Jefferson inaugurated President.

1803. Purchase of Louisiana.
1804–6. Lewis and Clark explore the Columbia River to the Pacific.
1807. Invention of steamboat by Robert Fulton.
1809. James Madison inaugurated President.
1812. War with Great Britain declared, June.
Battle between the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere*, August.
Battle between the *Constitution* and the *Java*, December.
Capture of the *Chesapeake*, June.
Massacre at Fort Mims, August.
Battle of Lake Erie, September.
1814. Washington burned, August.
Treaty of peace, December.
1815. Battle of New Orleans, January.
1817. James Monroe inaugurated President.
1818. Seminole war.
1819. Purchase of Florida.
1820. Missouri Compromise.
1823. The Monroe Doctrine.
1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated President.
Erie Canal completed.
1826. Deaths of Jefferson and Adams, July 4.
1828. High Tariff Bill.
1829. Andrew Jackson inaugurated President.
1830. Webster-Hayne debate.
1831. Invention of reaping machine (patented 1834).
1832. New protective tariff.
Ordinance of nullification, November, by S. C.
1833. Compromise tariff.
1836. Texas declares independence.
1837. Martin Van Buren inaugurated President.
1841. William Henry Harrison inaugurated President.
Death of President Harrison, April.
1842. Webster-Ashburton treaty, August.
1843. Immigration to Oregon.
1844. First electric telegraph invented by Morse.
1845. Florida admitted.
Annexation of Texas.
James K. Polk inaugurated President.
1846. Oregon treaty.
Battle of Palo Alto, May.
Mexican war declared, May.

1846. Conquest of California.
Capture of New Mexico.
1847. Battle of Buena Vista, February.
Battle of Vera Cruz, March.
Capture of Mexico, September.
1848. Gold discovered in California.
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February.
1849. Zachary Taylor inaugurated President.
1850. Webster's speech, March.
Death of President Taylor, July.
Compromise of 1850, September.
Fugitive slave law.
1852. Franklin Pierce inaugurated President.
1856. Formation of Republican party.
1857. James Buchanan inaugurated President.
Dred Scott decision.
First Atlantic cable.
1858. Lincoln-Douglas debates.
1859. First profitable oil well sunk.
John Brown's raid, October.
1860. Abraham Lincoln elected.
South Carolina secedes, December 20.
1861. Six Southern states secede, January.
Confederate States of America formed, February.
Abraham Lincoln inaugurated President, March 4.
Fort Sumter evacuated, April 14.
Four more states secede.
Battle of Manassas or Bull Run, July 21.
1862. Battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*, March 9.
Battle of Shiloh, April 6, 7.
Capture of New Orleans, April 25.
Battle of Williamsburg, May 5.
Seven Days' Battles, June 25–July 1.
Second Battle of Manassas or Bull Run, August 29, 30.
Battle of Antietam, September 17.
Battle of Fredericksburg, December 13.
1863. Emancipation Proclamation, January 1.
Battle of Chancellorsville, May 2, 3.
Battle of Gettysburg, July 1–3.
Capture of Vicksburg, July 4.
Battle of Chickamauga, September 19, 20.

1863. Battle of Chattanooga, November 23–25.
1864. Grant made lieutenant general, March.
Battles of the Wilderness, May 5–7.
Capture of Atlanta, September 2.
Sherman begins march to the sea, November 12.
Capture of Savannah, December 21.
1865. Petersburg captured, April 2.
Fall of Richmond, April 3.
Lee surrenders at Appomattox, April 9.
Death of President Lincoln, April 15.
Johnston surrenders, April 26.
Taylor surrenders, May 4.
Capture of Jefferson Davis, May 11.
Thirteenth amendment ratified, December 18.
1866. Atlantic cable completed, July 27.
1867. Alaska purchased, March.
1868. Impeachment of President Johnson.
Fourteenth amendment ratified.
1869. Ulysses S. Grant inaugurated President.
Pacific railroad completed, May 10.
1870. Fifteenth amendment ratified.
1871. Treaty of Washington, May 8.
1876. Opening of Centennial Exhibition, May.
Invention of the telephone by Bell.
1877. Rutherford B. Hayes inaugurated President.
United States troops withdrawn from the South.
1881. James A. Garfield inaugurated President, March.
Death of President Garfield, September 19.
1885. Grover Cleveland inaugurated President.
1889. Benjamin Harrison inaugurated President.
1893. Hawaiian revolution, January.
Grover Cleveland inaugurated President.
Columbian World's Fair opened, May.
1897. William McKinley inaugurated President.
1898. The *Maine* blown up in Havana, February 15.
War declared with Spain, April 25.
Battle of Manila, May 1.
Merrimac sunk at Santiago, June 3.
Destruction of Cervera's fleet, July 3.
Hawaiian Islands annexed, July 7.
Surrender of Santiago, July 17.

Porto Rican campaign.
Surrender of Manila, August 13.
1899. Treaty of peace ratified, February 6.
Philippine insurrection.
Hawaii becomes a territory, April.
1900. President McKinley reëlected President, November.
1901. Pan-American Exposition, May 20.
President McKinley assassinated, September 6.
Theodore Roosevelt takes oath of office, September 14.
1902. Cuba becomes an independent republic, May 20.
1903. Completion of Pacific cable.
Alaskan boundary decision, October 17.
Department of Commerce and Labor established.
1904. Treaty with Panama ratified, February 23.
1905. President Roosevelt inaugurated President.
1906. Earthquake in San Francisco.
Pure Food Law passed.
1909. William H. Taft inaugurated President.
Payne-Aldrich Tariff enacted.
1910. Postal Savings Banks established.
1912. New Mexico and Arizona became States.
1913. Parcel Post established.
Woodrow Wilson inaugurated President.
Underwood-Simmons Tariff enacted.
Currency Bill passed.
Income Tax amendment ratified.
Seventeenth Amendment ratified.

Index.

Abolition Party, organized, 255.
Abraham, heights of, 116; plains of, 117, 118.
Adams, John, minister to England, 101; becomes Vice-President, 154; becomes President, 182.
Alaska, purchase of, 288.
Albemarle, colony of, 92.
Albemarle, Duke of, 92.
America, discovery of, 19; naming of, 28.
Ann, the, 98.
Antietam, see Sharpsburg.
Anti-Federalist Party, 181, 182.
Appomattox Courthouse, scene of Lee's surrender, 282, 283.
Ark, the, 83.
Armada, the Spanish, 48.

Ashburton Treaty, 236.
Augusta (Ga.), founding of, 99.

Bainbridge, Commodore, 199.
Balboa, as outlaw, escapes to Darien, 37; searches for gold, 38, 39; discovers the Pacific, 39; condemned to death, 38.
Ball, Mary, 144.
Baltimore, Lords, see Calvert.
Barron, Commodore, 198, 199.
Beasley, Major, 203.
Beauregard, General, attacks Sumter, 274.
Beauvoir, 255.
Bell, Alexander Graham, birth of, 294; comes to Boston, 295; early experiments and discoveries of, 295; invents telephone, 295; present home of, 296.
Berkeley, Lord, 88.
Bill of Abominations, the, 244.
Biloxi, 110.
Bladensburg, 199.
Boone, Daniel, birth and early life of, 121, 122; explores Kentucky, 122, 123; captured by Indians, 123; experiences in North Carolina and Kentucky, 124; at Point Pleasant, 124, founds Boonesborough, 124; portrait of, 125; defends Boonesborough, 126; goes to Louisiana, 127; last years and death of, 128.
Boonesborough, 124, 125, 126.
Booth, Wilkes, 270.
Boston, founding of, 63.
Boston Tea Party, 140.
Braddock, General, 112, 113, 146, 147.
Bradford, William, goes to Holland with Separatists, 61; comes to New England, 61; elected governor of colony, 62, 63; death of, 63.
Brandywine, battle of the, 150.
Bridgewater, Duke of, 188.
Brown, John, 277.
Bryan, Rebecca, wife of Daniel Boone, 122.

Buena Vista, 221, 222.
Bull Run, see Manassas.
Bunker Hill, battle of, 150.
Burgoyne, General, 150, 151.
Burnside, A. E., 275; defeated at Fredericksburg, 279.

Cabot, John, early life of, 30; settles in England, 31; voyages west with son, 31; discovers Newfoundland, 31, 32; called "High Admiral," 32; death of, 32.
Cabot, Lewis, 31.
Cabot, Sanzio, 31.
Cabot, Sebastian, early life of, 31; sails for China, 32; discovers North America, 33; serves King of Spain, 33; returns to England, 33.
Calhoun, John C., birth and early life of, 241, 242; admitted to the bar, 243; enters public life, 243; opposes Bill of Abominations, 244; supports Nullification Ordinance, 245; death and burial of, 246.
Calhoun, Patrick, 241.
Calvert, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore, 83; proprietor of Maryland, 83; establishes colony in Maryland, 83, 84.
Calvert, George, birth and early life of, 81; becomes Catholic, 82; made Lord Baltimore, 82; plants colony in Newfoundland, 82; visits Virginia, 82; receives grant of present Maryland and Delaware, 82, 83; death of, 83.
Calvert, Leonard, 84.
Cambridge (Mass.), old elm at, 150.

Canary Islands, discovery of, 18.
Cape Breton, discovery of, 31.
Carden, Captain, 196.
Carolina, North, origin of, 95.
Carolina, South, origin of, 95.
Carolinas, the, original grant of, 92; early history of, 95; division of, 95.
Carpet-baggers, 272.
Carteret, Sir George, 88.
Carver, John, 61, 62.
Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia, 297.
Cervera, Admiral, sails for West Indies, 303; surrender and capture of, 305.
Champlain, the explorer, 103.
Chancellorsville, battle of, 279.
Charles II., King of England, comes to throne, 82; gives land grants to George Calvert, 82; renews grant to Cecil Calvert, 83; grants land to William Penn, 89; grants Carolinas to proprietors, 92.
Charleston, founding of, 92; capture of, 152.
Charlestown, founding of, 63.
Chesapeake, the, 198.
City of Mexico, fall of the, 222.
Clarendon, colony of, 92; Earl of, 92.
Clark, George Rogers, birth and early life of, 159, 160; settles in Kentucky, 124, 160; captures Kaskaskia, 161; conquers Northwest Territory, 162, 163; death of, 163.
Clay, Henry, birth and early life of, 225, 226; as a public speaker, 227; as a lawyer, 227; as U. S. Senator, 227, 228; as Secretary of State, 228; supports Missouri Compromise, 228–230; offers Omnibus Bill, 231; death of, 231; character of, 231, 232.
Clayborne, William, 84.
Clermont, the, 190, 191.
Cleveland, Grover, 299.
Clinton, General, 152.
Columbus, early life of, 14, 15; marriage

of, 15; plans sailing enterprise to India, 15; obtains aid from Spain, 16, 17; departs from Palos, 17; voyage of, 18; discovers New World, 19; returns to Spain, 20, 21; other voyages of, 21, 22; death of, 23.
Compensation Bill, the, 228.
Confederate States of America, the, 257.
Confederation, the Articles of, 170.
Constitution, the, 198.
Constitution of the United States, adoption of, 142; amendments to, 270.
Constitutions, Fundamental, 93, 94, 95.
Continental Congress, 149.
Conventicle Act, 88.
Cornwallis, General, 152, 153.
Cowpens, battle of the, 152.
Cromwell, Oliver, 130.
Cuba, discovery of, 20; rebellion of, against Spain, 299, 300; becomes independent, 307.
Custis, Martha, wife of George Washington, 147, 148.
Custis, Mary, wife of Robert E. Lee, 277.
Custis, Washington Parke, 277.

Da Gama, Vasco, 30.
Dare, Virginia, 47, 48.
Darien, Balboa reaches, 37.
Davenport, John, comes to Connecticut, 73; founds New Haven, 74.
Davis, Jefferson, birth and early life of, 257; enters politics, 257, 258; in Mexican war, 258, 259; in the U. S. Senate, 259, 260; as Secretary of War, 259; retires from Senate, 261; as president of Confederate States, 261; captured near Irvinville, 261; as prisoner and exile, 262, 263; death and burial of, 263.
Decatur, Stephen, portrait of, 192; birth and early life of, 193, 194; in Tripolitan war, 194, 195; in war of 1812, 196-198; sails into Mediterranean, 198; death of, 198, 199.
Declaration of Independence, drafting of, 179, 180.
De Grasse, Count, 152.
Delaware, early history of, 89.
Delaware, Lord, 58.
Delaware River, first settlement on, 79.
De Leon, Ponce, early life of, 35; joins second expedition of Columbus, 35; governs Haiti, 35; conquers Porto Rico, 36; discovers Florida, 36; death of, 37.
Democratic-Republican Party, origin of, 182.
De Soto, Fernando, ambitions of, 39, 40; goes to Peru, 40; governs Cuba and Florida, 40; searches for gold, 40, 41; treats Indians cruelly, 41; discovers the Mississippi, 41; death of, 41; fate of the followers of, 42.
De Triana, Rodrigo, 19.
Dewey, George, 298; sent against Spanish fleet, 300; birth and early life of, 300, 302; enters U. S. Navy, 302; victory of, at Manila Bay, 303; made Admiral, 303.

Dinwiddie, Governor, 146.
Discovery, the, 53.
Dorchester Heights, fortification of, 150.
Dove, the, 83.
Drake, Sir Francis, 46.
Dunmore, Governor, 124.
Dwight, Dr., of Yale, 242.

Ebenezer (Ga.), founding of, 99.
Edison, Thomas A., birth and early life

of, 288–291 ; learns telegraphy, 291 ; invents automatic repeater, 291 ; perfects telegraph, 292 ; invents an electric light, 292–294.
Elizabeth, Queen, 45, 46, 48.
Ellsworth, Miss, 250.
Emancipation Proclamation issued, 269, 270.
Endicott, John, 63.
Endymion, English frigate, 196.
Eutaw Springs, battle of, 152.

Fairfax, Lord, 145, 146.
Farragut, Admiral, 276 ; captures New Orleans, 280 ; quoted, 302.
Fauquier, Governor, 177.
Federalist Party, origin of, 182.
Ferdinand, King of Spain, 16, 19, 23.
Fillmore, Millard, President, 223, 236, 239.
Florida, discovery and naming of, 36 ; scene of battle between Indians and Ponce de Leon, 37 ; invasion of, by Oglethorpe, 99, 100.
Forrest, N. B., 275.
Fort Alamo, 212, 213.
Fort Duquesne, 112, 147.
Fort Christiana, 79.
Fort Donelson, 280.
Fort Harrison, 218, 219.
Fort Henry, 280.
Fort Mimms, 203, 204.
Fort Raleigh, 47.
Fort Sumter, 274.
Franklin, Benjamin, birth and early life of, 165–167 ; publishes almanac, 168 ; makes scientific discoveries, 168 ; opposes Stamp Act, 168, 170 ; signs Declaration, 170 ; as ambassador to France, 170–172 ; elected president of Pennsylvania, 172 ; as representative at Convention of 1787, 172–174 ; last years and death of, 174.
Frederica (Ga.), founding of, 99.
Fredericksburg, battle of, 279.
French and Indian war, 112–119, 146.
Fulton, Robert, birth and early life of, 187, 188 ; builds steamboat, 189, 190 ; death of, 190.

Garrison, William Lloyd, 255.
Gazette, the, 168.
Genoa, 13, 14.
George II., King of England, 98.
Georgia, beginnings of, 98 ; progress of, 99.
Gettysburg, battle of, 280.
Ghent, treaty of, 198.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 45, 46.
God Speed, the, 53.
Good Hope, Cape of, 30.
Gore, Hon. Christopher, 235.
Grant, U. S., 276 ; put in command of Federal troops, 280, 281 ; earlier military successes of, 280 ; birth and early life of, 281 ; in campaign against Lee, 281, 282 ; receives Lee's surrender, 282–284 ; as President, 285 ; death and burial of, 286.
Gridley, Jeremiah, 131, 133.
Guerrière, English frigate, 198.
Guilford Courthouse, battle of, 152.

Haiti, 20, 22, 35.
Half Moon, the, 76.
Hamilton, Alexander, 156.
Hamilton, governor of Illinois, 161, 162.
Hanks, Nancy, 265.
Hanover Courthouse, 137.
Harper's Ferry, 277.

Hartford, founding of, 73.

Hayne, Colonel, 237, 238.
Hennepin, 107.
Henrietta Maria, Queen, 83.
Henry VII., King of England, 30, 31, 33.
Henry Patrick, birth and early life of, 135, 136; becomes a lawyer, 136; argues Parsons' Case, 136–138; protests against Stamp Act, 138; introduces resolutions at Virginia Convention, 141; made commander-in-chief of Virginia forces, 141; becomes governor of Virginia, 141; prophesies Revolution, 142; last years and death of, 142, 143.
Hermitage, the, 203.
Hill, A. P., 275.
Hobson, Lieutenant, at Santiago, 304, 305.
Hooker, Joseph, 275; defeated at Chancellorsville, 279.
Hooker, Thomas, comes to Boston, 72; founds colony of Connecticut, 72, 73.
Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 204.
Houston, Sam, at Horseshoe Bend, 208, 209; birth and early life of, 209; becomes governor of Tennessee, 210; marriage of, 210; befriends Indians, 211; removes to Texas, 212; in Texan war, 212, 213; becomes president of Texas, 214; becomes governor of Texas, 215; death of, 215.
Howe, General, at Brandywine, 150; evacuates Philadelphia, 152.
Howell, Varina, 257.
Hudson Bay, discovery of, 77.
Hudson, Henry, sent out by London Company, 75, 76; enters service of Dutch East India Company, 76; discovers Hudson River, 76; discovers Hudson Bay, 77; fate of, 77.
Hudson River, discovery of the, 76.
Huguenots, 93.
Hull, Captain Isaac, 198.
Hutchinson, Mrs. Ann, 71.

Intrepid, the, 194, 195.
Irving, Washington, 16.
Isabella, Queen of Spain, 16, 17, 19, 21.

Jackson, Andrew, the elder, 201.
Jackson, Andrew, birth and early life of, 201, 202; in war of 1812, 203–206; as President, 206, 207; death of, 207.
Jackson, Robert, 202.
Jackson, Thomas J. ("Stonewall"), 275; statue of, 278; killed at Chancellorsville, 279.
James, Duke of York, 79, 80.
James I., King of England, 48, 49, 52; grants charter, 53; town named in honor of, 54.
James River, naming of, 53, 54.
Jamestown, founding of, 54.
Jefferson, Jane, 176.
Jefferson, Peter, 176.
Jefferson, Thomas, birth and early life of, 176, 177; as a lawyer, 177; marriage of, 177, 178; as a member of House of Burgesses, 178, 179; as author of Declaration of Independence, 179, 180; originates bill for religious freedom, 180; as minister to France, 181; becomes Washington's Secretary of State, 181; politics of, 181, 182; as President, 182–184; last years and death of, 184–186.
John, King of Portugal, 15.
Johnson, impeachment of, 272.

Johnston, Albert Sidney, 274; at Pittsburg Landing, 280.
Johnston, Joseph E., 274; portrait of, 277; wounded at Richmond, 279.
Johnston, Sarah, 266.
Joliet, 104.
Jones, John Gabriel, 160.

Kaskaskia, 161, 162.
Kennedy, John P., 249.

Lafayette, General, 152.
Lane, Ralph, 46.
La Salle, Cavalier de, comes to Canada, 105; birth and early life of, 106; explores Great Lakes, 106, 107; reaches mouth of Mississippi, 108; founds Louisiana, 108; returns to France, 108; plants French colony in Texas, 109; death of, 109, 110.
La Taneria, 258.
Lawrence, Captain, 198.
Lee, Fitzhugh, 275; quoted, 283; at funeral of Grant, 286; appointed consul general to Cuba, 299.
Lee, Robert E., portrait of, 274; birth and early life of, 276; marriage of, 277; in Mexican war, 277; superintendent at West Point, 277; captures John Brown, 277; becomes commander-in-chief of Virginia forces, 278; present at State Convention, 278; succeeds Johnston, 279; at second Manassas, 279; at Antietam, Fredericksburg, Chancellorsville and Gettysburg, 279, 280; in campaign against Grant, 281, 282; surrenders, 282–284; last years and death of, 284, 285; character of, 285.
Lewis, General Andrew, 124.
Lincoln, Abraham, portrait of, 265; birth and early life of, 266–268; practises law, 268; enters politics, 268; elected President, 269; issues Emancipation Proclamation, 269; assassination of, 270; character of, 271.
Lincoln, General, 153.
Lincoln, Thomas, 265. 266.
Livingston, Robert, 182, 189.
Locke, John, frames "Fundamental Constitutions," 93, 94; birth and early life of, 94; flees to Holland, 94; returns to England, 94; death of, 94.
London Company, the, 53, 56, 58.
Long Island, battle of, 150.
Longstreet, James, 275.
Louis XIV., King of France, 108.
Louisburg, siege of, 114, 115.
Louisiana, naming of, 108; purchase of, 127, 182–184.
Ludwell, Philip, 95.

McClellan, George B., 275; driven back from Richmond, 279.
McCormick, Cyrus Hall, birth and early life of, 252; manufactures reapers, 252, 253; invents reaper, 253; character of, 253, 254.
McCormick, Robert, 252.
McDonough, Captain, 198.
Macedonian, English frigate, 196.
McKinley, William, becomes President, 298; death of, 307.
McLean, Wilmer, 282.
Madison, James, 184.
Maine, the U. S. battleship, destruction of, 300
Manassas, first and second battles of, 279.
Manhattan Island, first settlement on, 78.
Manila, surrender of, 303.
Manila Bay, battle of, 302.

Marquette, Father, searches for the Mississippi, 104; death of, 104, 105.
Marquette River, 105.
Maryland, grant of, 83; founding and early history of, 84.
Massachusetts Bay colony, 64, 65.
Mayflower, the, 61, 62.
Meade, George C., 275; at Gettysburg, 279
Merrimac, an American collier, 305.
Mexico, treaty with, 222.
Miles, General, 306, 307.
Mississippi, the discovery of, 39, 41.
Missouri Compromise, 229, 230.
Monmouth Courthouse, battle of, 52.
Monroe, James, signs treaty with France, 182, 183; as President, 184.
Montcalm, General, 116, 118.
Monterey, battle of, 221.
Montojo, Admiral, 302.
Morse, Samuel F. B., birth and early life of, 247, 248; visits Europe, 248; invents telegraphic instrument, 248, 249; presents bill to Congress, 249; completes telegraph line, 250; later years of, 250.
Mount Vernon, 145, 148, 155, 156.

Napoleon, 182, 183.
Navigation acts, 130.
Newfoundland, discovery of, 31, 32.
Newfoundland, attempts to colonize, 45, 46.
New Amsterdam, settlement of, 78.
New Hampshire, settlement of, 74.
New Haven, colony of, 74.
New Jersey, settlement and division of, 88.
New Netherland, 78, 79.
New Orleans, settlement of, 110; battle of, 204, 205; capture of, 280.
New Sweden, 79.
New York, founding of, 80.
Nina, the, 17.
Northwest Territory, 162, 163.
Nullification Ordinance, 245.

Oglethorpe, James, early life of, 97; plans to found colony in America, 97, 98; receives land grant and money for enterprise, 98; elected governor of proposed colony, 98; founds Georgia, 98; invades Florida, 99, 100; last years and death of, 100, 101.
Okeechobee Swamp, battle of, 219, 220.
Omnibus Bill, 231.
Oregon Region, the old, 236.
Otis, James, birth and early life of, 131; defends pirates, 131, 132; defends New England against search system, 132, 133; last years and death of, 133, 134.
Osceola, 219.
Osolooteka, 211.

Pacific Ocean, discovery of, 37.
Parcel Post, 310.
Parsons' Case, 136–138.
Payne-Aldrich Tariff, 309.
Penn, Admiral, 87, 88, 89.
Penn, William, birth and early life of, 86, 87; becomes a Quaker, 87; brings colony to West New Jersey, 88; founds Pennsylvania, 89; helps to establish Delaware, 89; later years of, 90.
Pennsylvania, settlement of, 89.
Pequots, war with, 71.
Perry, Captain Oliver H., 198.
Personal Liberty Acts, passage of, 255.
Petersburg, abandoned, 282.
Philadelphia, founding of, 89.
Philadelphia, the, 194, 195.
Philip, Indian chief, 72.

Pickett, General, 279.
Pilgrims, the, 61.
Pinta, the, 17, 18, 19.
Pinzon, Martin and Vicente, 17.
Pitt, William, 113, 114.
Pittsburg Landing, battle of, 280.
Plymouth, landing at, 62; united to Massachusetts, 74.
Plymouth Company, the, 60.
Pocahontas, 55, 56.
Polk, Leonidas, 275.
Pope, General, at second Manassas, 279.
Point Pleasant, battle of, 124.
Pokanokets, the, 72.
Porto Rico, conquered by De Leon, 35, 36; surrendered to United States, 307.
Portsmouth, settlement of, 71.
Portugal, Columbus visits, 15; Columbus departs from, 16.
Powhatan, 56.
Preble, Commodore, 194.
President, the, 196, 197.
Princeton, battle of, 150.
Providence (R. I.), founding of, 70.
Puritans, the, 63.

Quakers, the, 86.
Quebec, founding of, 103; siege of, 115–119.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, birth and early life of, 44; at court of Queen Elizabeth, 45; sends out first colony, 46; sends out second colony, 47; marriage of, 48; execution of, 49, 50.
Raleigh Tavern, 178.
Randolph, Isham, 176.
Ratcliffe, 57.
Rathbone, Major, 270.
Reaper, invention of, 252, 253.
Republican Party, origin of, 256.
Rhode Island, founding of, 71.
Richmond, seven days' fighting around, 279; abandoned by Lee, 282.
Rives, William C., 248.
Roanoke Island, 46, 48.
Robertson, James, 121.
Rochblave, Governor, 161.
Rolfe, John, 56.
Roosevelt, Colonel, at Santiago, 306; as President, 306.

St. Anthony's Falls, 107.
St. Augustine, building of, 44.
St. Lawrence, Gulf of, 31, 32.
St. Mary's, founding of, 84.
Salem, settlement of, 63.
Sampson, Admiral, blockades Cuban ports, 304; at Santiago, 304.
San Jacinto Bay, battle of, 212.
Santa Anna, 212, 213, 221, 222.
Santa Maria, the, 17.
Santiago, surrender of, 305.
Savannah, capture of, 152.
Scalawags, 272.
Schley, Commodore, 303.
Scott, Dred, 256.
Scott, General Winfield, 222.
Separatists, the, 60, 61.
Sevier, John, 121.
Shafter, General, attacks Santiago, 305.
Shaftesbury, Earl of, 92, 93, 94.
Shannon, English frigate, 198.
Sharpsburg, battle of, 269, 279.
Sherman, William T., 275.
Skelton, Mrs., 177, 178.
Smith, Captain John, birth and early life of, 51; adventures of, 52, 53; sails with London Company, 53; as ruler of the colony, 55–57; Pocahontas saves life of, 56; injured by gunpowder, 58; returns to England, 58; death of, 58.

Smith, E. Kirby, 275.
Society of Friends, see Quakers.
Spain, war with, 299–307.
Speedwell, the, 61.
Spotsylvania Courthouse, battle of, 281, 282.
Stamp Act, 135, 138, 140.
Standish, Miles, 63.
Stansberry, William, 211.
State-rights, 181.
States, admission of, 214; 288, footnote.
Stephens, Alexander H., 256, 257.
Stewart, companion of Daniel Boone, 123.
Stuart, J. E. B., 275.
Stuyvesant, Peter, early life of, 78; governor of New Amsterdam, 78; makes New Sweden part of New Netherland, 79; surrenders to English, 79; last years and death, 80.
Susan Constant, the, 53.

Tarleton, Colonel, 152.
Taylor, Colonel, 217, 218.
Taylor, Colonel Zachary, 257.
Taylor, Sarah Knox, 257.
Taylor, Zachary, birth and early life of, 217, 218; in war of 1812, 218, 219; at Okeechobee Swamp, 219, 220; at Monterey and Buena Vista, 221, 222; elected President, 223; death and burial of, 223, 224.
Tecumseh, 203.
Telegraph, invention of, 248–251.
Telephone, invention of, 295, 296.
Texas, Republic of, 214; State of, 215.
Thomas, George H., 275.
Trenton, battle of, 150.
Tripoli, war with, 192–195.
Toscanelli, 24.
Underwood-Simmons Tariff, 311.
United States, the, 196.

Valley Forge, 151.
Vespucius, Americus, birth and early life of, 24; goes to Spain, 25; sails to West Indies, 25; visits South America, 26 commands expedition of 1502, 27; fourth voyage of, 27; has maps drawn, 27, 28; New World named after, 28; death of, 28.
Vicksburg, capture of, 280.
Vincennes, 162, 163.
Virginia, naming of, 46; University of, 185.

Waddell, Mr., 241.
Washington, Augustine, 144.
Washington, George, with General Braddock, 112; birth and early life of, 144, 145; as a surveyor, 146; at Fort Duquesne, 147; marriage of, 148; at Mount Vernon, 148, 149; as member of Continental Congress, 149; made commander-in-chief, 149, 150; early campaign of, 150; at Valley Forge, 151, 152; at Monmouth Courthouse, 152; in New York, 152; at Yorktown, 153; as president of Philadelphia convention, 154; as President of the U. S., 154–156; last years and death of, 156.
Washington, Martha, 148.
Watt, 188, 189.
Wayles, John, 177.
Webster, Colonel, 233, 234, 235.
Webster, Daniel, birth and early life of, 233–235; practises law, 235, 236; removes to Massachusetts, 235; as Secretary of State, 236, 239; negotiates Ashburton Treaty, 236, 237; as U. S. senator, 237, 238, 239; death of, 239; quoted, 246.

Wesley brothers, the, 99.
West, Benjamin, 188.
Wethersfield (Conn.), founding of, 73.
Weyler, General, 299.
White, John, 47, 48.
Whitefield, George, 99.
Whitman, Rev. Dr. Marcus, 237.
Whitney, Eli, 187.
William and Mary, sovereigns of England, 94.
Williams, Roger, birth and early life of, 67; comes to New England, 67; joins Pilgrims at Plymouth, 68; pastor at Salem, 68, 69; exiled, 69; secures land from Indians, 69; founds Providence, 79; receives charter of Rhode Island, 71; averts war with Pequots, 71; last years and death of, 71, 72.
Wilson, Woodrow, becomes President, 311.
Windsor (Conn.), founding of, 73.
Wingfield, Edward Maria, 55.
Winthrop, John, comes to New England, 63, 64; leader of the Massachusetts colony, 64; death of, 64; character of, 65.
Wolfe, James, 112; birth and early life of, 113, 114; made brigadier general, 114; attacks Louisburg, 115; returns to England, 115; as major general, charged with siege of Quebec, 115; captures Quebec, 115–119; death of, 119.
Wright, Silas, 250.
Wythe, George, 177, 226.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 413 060 6